



**CIHM  
Microfiche  
Series  
(Monographs)**

**ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches  
(monographies)**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1993**

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

**L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.**

- ☐ Coloured pages/  
Pages de couleur
- ☐ Pages damaged/  
Pages endommagées
- ☐ Pages restored and/or laminated/  
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- ☒ Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/  
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- ☐ Pages detached/  
Pages détachées
- ☒ Showthrough/  
Transparence
- ☒ Quality of print varies/  
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- ☐ Continuous pagination/  
Pagination continue
- ☐ Includes index(es)/  
Comprend un (des) index
- Title on header taken from: /  
Le titre de l'en-tête provient:
- ☐ Title page of issue/  
Page de titre de la livraison
- ☐ Caption of issue/  
Titre de départ de la livraison
- ☐ Masthead/  
Générique (périodiques) de la livraison

**This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.**

A horizontal number line starting at 10x and ending at 32x. The line is divided into 12 equal segments by vertical tick marks. Above the line, the following values are labeled: 10x, 14x, 18x, 22x, 26x, and 30x. Below the line, the following values are labeled: 12x, 16x, 20x, 24x, 28x, and 32x. There are empty boxes in the segments between the labeled values. Specifically, there are 3 boxes between 10x and 12x, 3 boxes between 12x and 14x, 3 boxes between 14x and 16x, 3 boxes between 16x and 18x, 3 boxes between 18x and 20x, 3 boxes between 20x and 22x, 3 boxes between 22x and 24x, 3 boxes between 24x and 26x, 3 boxes between 26x and 28x, 3 boxes between 28x and 30x, and 3 boxes between 30x and 32x. A small curved arrow points to the box between 18x and 20x.

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

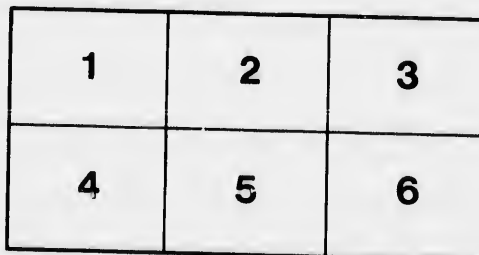
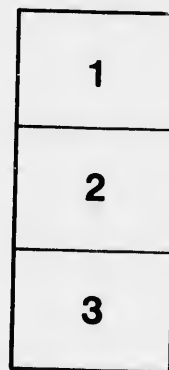
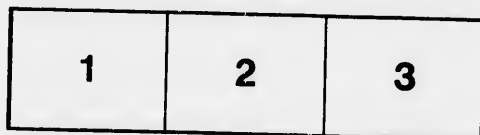
National Library of Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol → (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ▼ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole → signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ▼ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.



100

L

A SYS

THE

Auth

**PRINCIPIA LATINA.—Part IV.**

---

**AN INTRODUCTION**

TO

**LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.**

CONTAINING

A SYSTEMATIC COURSE OF EXERCISES ON THE SYNTAX,

WITH

THE PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX, EXPLANATIONS OF SYNONYMS,  
AND AN ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

BY

**WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.**

*Authorized by the Minister of Education for High Schools and Colleges  
Institutes of Ontario,*

**Toronto:**  
**CANADA PUBLISHING COMPANY.**  
(LIMITED).

1879.

PA2087

S62

1277

## PREFACE.

---

THE object of this Work is to supply a series of progressive and systematic Exercises upon the principal rules of the Latin Syntax; but in order to make the Work complete in itself, and available for those who use different Grammars, there are prefixed to each Exercise the Syntactical rules which the Exercise is designed to illustrate and enforce. There is likewise given at the beginning of each Exercise an explanation of Synonymous words, with passages in which they occur, so that the pupil may, at an early period in his studies, learn to discriminate their use and employ them correctly. It is believed, from practical experience, that the present Work will prove a useful *Introduction* to Latin Prose Composition. It does not profess to teach boys to write Latin. That can only be learnt by the translation into Latin of continuous passages, of which a collection is given in the Fifth Part of the *Principia Latina*; but it is necessary to go through previously a systematic course of Exercises upon the Syntax.

In the preparation of the Exercises I have to express my acknowledgments to Mr. Robert G. Ibbs of Leatherhead for much valuable assistance.

---

### EIGHTH EDITION.

SOME words in the English-Latin Vocabulary, omitted in the earlier Editions, are now supplied; and if any other omissions should be found, I should esteem it a favour if Teachers would communicate them to me.

W. S.

*Augsburg*, 1871.

---

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and seventy-nine, by JOHN MURRAY, in the office of the Minister of Agriculture.

---

# CONTENTS.

SECT.	PAGE
I. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE .. .. .	2
II. APPPOSITION .. .. .	2
III. } FIRST CONCORD .. .. .	4-6
IV. } V. SECOND CONCORD .. .. .	7
VI. THIRD CONCORD .. .. .	9
VII. THE NOMINATIVE CASE .. .. .	10
VIII. } ACCUSATIVE OF THE OBJECT .. .. .	12-16
IX. } X. INTRANSITIVE VERBS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE	16
XI. } XII. DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE .. .. .	18-22
XIII. ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE AND ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS .. .. .	22
XIV. ACCUSATIVE OF CLOSER DEFINITION .. .. .	24
XV. CONSTRUCTION OF NAMES OF TOWNS .. .. .	26
XVI. GENITIVE AFTER SUBSTANTIVES—POSSESSIVE GENITIVE.. .. .	28
XVII. PARTITIVE GENITIVE .. .. .	30
XVIII. GENITIVE OF QUALITY .. .. .	33
XIX. GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES .. .. .	34
XX. } GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.. .. .	36-41
XXI. } XXII. DATIVE AFTER VERBS .. .. .	41
XXIII. DATIVE AFTER VARIOUS VERBS .. .. .	43
XXIV. DATIVE AFTER VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS .. .. .	46
XXV. DATIVE AFTER PASSIVE VERBS AND IMPERSONAL VERBS .. .. .	47
XXVI. DATIVE WITH THE VERB <i>Sum</i> AND DOUBLE DATIVE .. .. .	49
XXVII. DATIVE AFTER ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES .. .. .	51
XXVIII. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION AND ORIGIN .. .. .	54
XXIX. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, INSTRUMENT	56

SECT.	PAGE
XXX. ABLATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS AND ADJECTIVES .. .. .	58
XXXI. OTHER VERBS WITH ABLATIVE .. .. .	60
XXXII. ABLATIVE OF QUALITY AND COMPARISON .. .. .	63
XXXIII. ABLATIVE OF MEASURE AND OF TIME .. .. .	65
XXXIV. ABLATIVE OF PLACE .. .. .	68
XXXV. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE .. .. .	70
XXXVI. ADJECTIVES .. .. .	73-77
XXXVII. ADJECTIVES .. .. .	73-77
XXXVIII. COMPARATIVES .. .. .	77
XXXIX. SUPERLATIVES .. .. .	80
XL. THE PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS .. .. .	82
XLI. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS .. .. .	84
XLII. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS .. .. .	87
XLIII. RELATIVE AND CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS .. .. .	89
XLIV. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS .. .. .	92
XLV. THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED PREDICATIVELY	95-100
XLVI. THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED PREDICATIVELY	95-100
XLVII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD .. .. .	101-117
XLVIII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD .. .. .	101-117
XLIX. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD .. .. .	101-117
L. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD .. .. .	101-117
LI. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD .. .. .	101-117
LII. ORATIO OBLIQUA .. .. .	118
LIII. USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH THE RELATIVE PRONOUN .. .. .	121
LIV. USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CONJUNCTIONS .. .. .	124-132
LIV. USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CONJUNCTIONS .. .. .	124-132
LVI. USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CONJUNCTIONS .. .. .	124-132
LVII. THE INFINITIVE MOOD .. .. .	132-140
LVIII. THE INFINITIVE MOOD .. .. .	132-140
LIX. THE INFINITIVE MOOD .. .. .	132-140
LX. PARTICIPLES .. .. .	140
LXI. THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE .. .. .	144
LXII. THE SUPINES .. .. .	148
QUESTIONS ON SYNTAX .. .. .	151
INDEX OF SYNONYMS .. .. .	159
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY .. .. .	163

LA

[77]

\$ 21  
stantiv  
Substa

Ind.  
Hos

\$ 21  
stantiv

Jive  
Fas

\$ 21  
Adject

Omn  
Socr  
the Gree  
Hann

-Nep.  
Obs.  
bē

1. Nāvis  
of dura  
short di

2. Culpa,  
positive  
FR. L.

# AN INTRODUCTION

TO

## LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.

[The numbers at the head of each paragraph refer to the sections in  
Dr. Wm. Smith's Latin Grammar.]

### I.—SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

§ 211. The Subject of a sentence must be either a Substantive or some word (or words) equivalent to a Substantive: as,

*India mittit ebur, India sends ivory.*—Virg.

*Hos ego versiculos feci, I made these little verses.*—Virg.

§ 212. Hence the Infinitive Mood, being a verbal Substantive, is often the Subject of a sentence: as,

*Juvat vidēre Dōrica castra, To see the Doric camp gives joy.*—Virg.

*Fas odiſſe viros, To hate the men (is) right.*—Virg.

§ 213. The Predicate of a sentence may be a Verb, an Adjective, or another Substantive: as,

*Omnia jam fiēt, All the things will now come to pass.*—Ov.

*Sōcrātes Gracōrū sapientissimū (erat), Socrates was the wisest of the Greeks.*—Cic.

*Hannibal Hāmilcāris filiū (fuit), Hannibal was the son of Hāmilcar*—Nep.

Obs. Occasionally an Adverb forms the Predicate after the Verb *esse*: as,  
*bēne, recte est, it is well.*

### SYNONYMS.

1. *Nāvis*, is, *f.*, an ordinary ship for long voyages. *Nāvis onērāria*, a ship of burden. *Scāpha*, ac, *f.*, *Cymba*, ac, *f.* (chiefly poet.), *skiff*, or boats, for short distances merely.

2. *Culpa*, ac, *f.* (a mild expression), a fault of any kind. *Scēlus*, *crī*, *n.*, positive guilt, wickedness. *Flāgitium*, i, *n.*, a disgraceful crime, a scandal.

PR. L.—IV.

B

3. *Timeo*, ul, 2; *mēto*, ul, 3; to fear danger; the former strictly of that which is imminent. *Vēreor*, itus, 2, to respect, reverence:

*Mētubant eum servi, vērebantur libēri, eārum omnes hābēbant, His slaves feared him, his children revered him, and all esteemed him dear.*—Cic.

*Urbs*, is, f., a city in reference to its buildings. *Oppidum*, i, n., a fortress or stronghold, fortified town. *Civitas*, ātis, f., a community living under the same laws; a state.

*Libēraſti et urbem pēriculo, et civitatem mēto, Thou hast freed both the city from danger, and the state from fear.*—Cic.

*Oppidum* and *urbs* are sometimes used of the same place in the same sentence:

*Phārae, urbs Theſſaliæ, in quo oppido, &c., Pharae, a city of Theſſaly, in which town, &c.*—Cic.

### EXERCISE I.

1. The merchant repairs (his) shattered ships.
2. A dark cloud concealed the moon.
3. Miltiades routed a large army of Persians.
4. It is sweet and glorious (*dēcōrus*) to die for (one's) country.
5. To be free-from fault is the greatest consolation.
6. The riches of the Romans were immense.
7. The most populous<sup>1</sup> cities in Numidia were Utica and Carthage.
8. All things come-to-pass (*fiunt*) by fate.
9. These laws will not always be in force.<sup>2</sup>
10. The sun goes down, and the mountains are shaded.
11. A famine was then raging.
12. If you are in-good-health, it is well.
13. The Athenian generals landed<sup>3</sup> in Sicily.
14. The papyrus is produced in Egypt.
15. He always feared (*imperf.*) death.

<sup>1</sup> *Crēber*, bris, bre, another form of *crēber*.

<sup>2</sup> To be in force, *vāleo*, ul, 2.

<sup>3</sup> To land, *appello*, pūli, pulsum, 3:

(intrans.) with ad or in (with *Acc.*): originally transitive, with navem in the *Acc.* as object.

### II.—APPOSITION.

§ 214. Sometimes the Subject is enlarged by the addition of another Substantive descriptive of it. The latter Substantive is said to be in *Apposition* with the former, and is put in the same Case, generally in the same number, and, if possible, in the same Gender.

*Thēmistōcles, impēratōr Persico bello, Græciam servitūte libērāvit, Themistocles, commander in the Persian war, delivered Greece from bondage.*—Cic.

*Scēlērūm inventor Ūlysses, Ulysses, contriver of wicked deeds.*—Virg.

*Ōleæ Minerva inventrix, Minerva, inventor of the olive.*—Virg.

*Ut ōmittam illas omnium doctrinarum inventrices Athēnas, To say nothing of the famous Athens, inventresses of every branch of learning.*—Cic.

*Obs.* In the case of substantives possessing a twofold form, as *māgister*, *māgistra*; *minister*, *ministra*; *inventor*, *inventrix*; and the like, the Masculine form is used in apposition with Masculine Substantives, and the Feminine with Feminines, as in the preceding examples.



read

§ 215. When the Substantive in Apposition is not of the same Gender or Number as that to which it refers, the Predicate usually follows the Gender and number of the original subject: as,

Tulliola, *dilectiolae nostrae*, mūnusculum tuum flāgitat, Tullia, my little darling, clamours for your present.—Cic.

But when the Substantive in apposition is *urbs*, *oppidum*, *civitas* or a similar word, the Predicate is made to agree therewith: as,

Volstani, *oppidum* Tuscōrum, *concremātum est* fulmine. Volstini, a fortified town of the Tuscans, was consumed by lightning.—Plin.

§ 217. Sometimes simple Apposition takes place where in English we should use the words "as" or "when:" as,

Defendi rempublicam iuvenis, I defended the commonwealth as (or when) a young man.—Cic.

Nemo fere saltē sobrius, nō. Forte insanit, Hardly any one dances when sober, unless, perchance, he is out of his mind.—Cic.

SYNONYMS.

1. Tyrannus, i, m., an irresponsible ruler, a despot (not necessarily a tyrant in the English sense of the word):

Tyrannus fuerat appellatus, sed justus, He had been called a tyrant, but a just one.—Nep.

Rex, régis, m. (from rēgo), a king, or in a more general sense a master, a ruler.

Rex convivii, ruler of a feast.

Memor actae non illo rēgo puēritiae, Remembering his boyhood, spent under no other master.—Hor.

2. Interficio, fēci, fectum, 3, a general expression, to slay (in whatever way, from whatever motive). Nēco, avi, atum, 1, to destroy by wicked or cruel means. Occido, idi, isum, 3 (from ob and caedo), to cut down as in open battle. Trūco, i, avi, atum, 1 (from trux, trūcis, and caedo), to kill cruelly, to slaughter.

3. Mārus, i, m., any sort of wall, irrespective of its use. Pāries, ētis, m., a partition-wall inside a house. Moenia, ium, n. pl., city-walls, a defence against foes (from mūnō, to fortify).

4. Divitiæ, arum, f., gāzæ, arum, f. (poet. word), riches (as a means of self-gratification). Opes, um, f. pl., wealth (as the means of obtaining influence).

5. Reus, i, m., in good writers an accused, but not necessarily a guilty person:

Si hībēres nōcentem reum, If you had a guilty defendant.—Cic.

Nōcens, entis, part. and adj., and sons, sentis, both signify guilty:

Sentes condemnant reos, They condemn the guilty defendants.—Plaut.

6. Socius, i, m., one bound by a common interest, a partner, companion. Sōdalis, is, m., a comrade, a good friend, a table companion. Amicus, i, m., a friend who sincerely loves. Socius is generally construed with an objective, Sōdalis with a subjective genitive or possessive pron.: as, socius percūlli, culpae, &c.—but sōdalis meus, master, &c.

PHRASES.

Eng. To storm;

Lat. To take by force, vi cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3.

He does it unwillingly, by compulsion;

He does it unwilling—being compelled (invitus cōactus).

## INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE.

### EXERCISE II.

1. Dionysius the tyrant throughout his whole life was-in-fear-of (feared) plots. 2. Numantia, a populous city in Spain (say of Spain), was taken by Scipio. 3. Alexandria, a wealthy city of Egypt, was founded by Alexander the Great. 4. Aemilius the consul, with (his) army was slain. 5. Deïdces, king of Media, fortified (his) citadel with seven walls. 6. Riches, the incentives to (*gen.*) evil (deeds) are dug out (of the earth). 7. Lysander, the Spartan general, took Lampsacus. 8. O harp, the ornament of Phoebus! 9. (My) Pollio, (thou) noted defence for sorrowing culprits (*dat.*)! 10. Gades, a town in Spain, was founded by the Phoenicians. 11. Our friend Aesop, your beloved (*delictive*), is dead. 12. The aborigines, a rustic race of men, came into Italy. 13. The wise man does nothing unwillingly, nothing by compulsion. 14. Cato, (when) an old man, began to write history. 15. Friendship was given by nature (to be) the assistant of virtue.

### III.—FIRST CONCORD.

§ 219. *The Nominative Case and Verb.*—A Verb agrees with its Subject or Nominative Case in Number and Person: as,

*Conon magnas res gessit, Conon achieved great exploits.*—Nep.  
*Magnus hoc bello Themistocles fuit, Themistocles was great in this war.*—Nep.

*Athenienses omnium civium suorum potentiam extimescebant, The Athenians stood in great dread of the predominance of any of their fellow-citizens.*—Nep.

§ 220. When two or more Substantives form the joint Subject, the Verb is put in the Plural Number: as,

*Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnare visi sunt, Castor and Pollux were seen to fight on horseback.*—Cic.

*Syphax regnumque ejus in potestate Romanorum erant, Syphax and his kingdom were in the hands of the Romans.*—Liv.

*Vita, mors, divitiæ, paupertas, omnes homines vehementissime permovent, Life, death, riches, poverty, have very great influence upon all people.*—Cic.

Obs. When the Subject consists of two Singular Substantives which together form but one idea, the Verb is in the Singular: as,

*Senatus populusque Romanus intelligit, The senate and people of Rome are (lit. is) aware.*—Cic.

*Tempus necessitasque postulat, Time and necessity demand.*—Cic.

### SYNONYMS.

1. *Proelium*, *l.*, an engagement, action, or skirmish. *Pugna*, *ac*, *f.* (fr. root pug, whence pugil, and pugno), generally a close engagement, but often in a general sense for any kind of contest or battle. *Acies*, *ci*, *f.*, generally a pitched battle; properly the front line of an army, resembling the edge of an instrument.

# FIRST CONCORD.

5

2. **Frustrā**, in vain, said of a man who has gained nothing by his toil:  
*Suspēre frustra lābōrem, To undertake labour* - *Lucan* § *Ym.* - *Cic.*  
**Nēquidquam**, of one who has not accomplished his purpose:  
*Nēquidquam auxilium implōrāre, To beg in vain for help.* - *Caes.*  
**Irritus** refers to the object, not the subject: *irritum facere, to render a thing useless or ineffectual.*
3. **Pēto**, *ivi*, *itum*, 3; **rōgo**, *avi*, *atum*, 1; general terms for to ask or beg, whether as a request or a demand. **Postūlo**, *avi*, *atum*, 1, to demand or claim as a right:  
*Postulābat mās quam pētebat, He rather demanded than requested it.* - *Cutr.*  
**Flāgitō**, *avi*, *atum*, 1, to demand energetically, with eagerness and clamour.  
**Posco**, *pōposci*, 3, to ask as a right, as a price or salary.
4. **Incōlūmis**, *e*, and **intēger**, *gra*, *grum* (from *in*, *tango*), *univert*, untouched.  
**Salvus**, *a*, *um*, *sospes*, *ilis*, *safe* (after exposure to accidents dangerous to life or person).
5. **Pōtus**, *ūs*, *m.*, *drink*. **Pōtio**, *ōnis*, *f.*, the act of drinking. **Pōtatio**, *ōnis*, *f.* (frequentative to *pōtio*), a drinking-bout, drunkenness.

## EXERCISE III.

1. Crassus waged war in Asia. 2. Caesar engaged in battle with the Helvetii. 3. The Carthaginians in vain sought peace from the Romans. 4. Most of the soldiers come out (*excedo*) of the battle unhurt. 5. The Cimbri and Teutons asked for territory from (ex) the Senate. 6. Hunger and thirst are (Sing.: v. § 220, *Obs.*) driven away by food and drink. 7. Ulysses inhabited Ithāca. 8. Some nations live on fish (*abl.*) and the eggs of birds. 9. Truth often begets hatred. 10. The Athenians founded twelve cities in Asia. 11. Xerxes, king of the Persians, invaded Greece. 12. You<sup>1</sup> drink wine, but we<sup>1</sup> drank water.

<sup>1</sup> The personal pronouns must be expressed, when they are emphatic.

## IV.—FIRST CONCORD—(continued).

§ 221. When Subjects having a common Predicate are of different Persons, the First is preferred to the Second, and the Second to the Third.

*Si tu et Tullia lux nostra vāletis, ego et snāvisshmus Cicerō vālemus, If you and my darling Tullia (= ye) are well, so am I and my sweetest Cicero (= so are we).*—*Cic.*

§ 222. When the Subject is a Collective Substantive ("Noun of Multitude"), or a word implying plurality, the Verb is sometimes put in the Plural, especially in the poets: as,

*Tūm fērant plācentque novum pia turba Quirinum, Let the pious people offer incense and propitiate the new (deity) Quirinus.*—*Ov.*

*Dēsctum scgētem magnā vis hōmīnum simul inmissa cortibus fūdere in Tiberim, A large body of men was set to work to reap the corn and empty it from baskets into the Tiber.*—*Liv.*

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Fari* (1 pers. sing. not found; but *fāris, fāre, fatur*, etc.), properly to use articulate speech: hence *infans* = non *fans*, unable to speak. *Dico*, xi, ctum, 3, to express one's ideas in order. *Lōquor*, ctus sum, 3, to speak as an intelligent being: hence

*Pēdēsdne lōcutae, infandum, And (dumb) animals spoke (like men), horrible prodigy!*—Virg.

2. *Pūto*, avi, ctum, 1, prop. to lap, to *cren* up, to bring into shape: hence to regard a thing on all sides, consider attentively, to think. *Arbitror*, atus sum, 1, to judge with the authority of an arbitrator. *Ōpīnor*, atus sum, 1, expresses mere opinion or conjecture, in opposition to actual knowledge. Parenthetically, *ŏpīnor* implies diffidence in expressing an opinion:

*Sed ŏpīnor, quiescimus, But, I suppose, we must be quiet.*—Cic.

3. *Rivus*, i, m., a small stream of water. *Flūvius*, i, m., *flūmen*, inis, n., a stream as opposed to stagnant water. *Flūmen* (from *fluō*), also an abundant flow whether of water or anything else: as,

*Flūmen verbōrum. a flow of words.*—Cic.

*Amnis*, is, m. (esp. p. st.), a great river.

4. *Amoenus*, a, um (kinor 1), pleasant, agreeable to the eye, used especially of the country. *Suāvis*, e, pleasant to the smell. *Dulcis*, e, pleasant to the taste, sweet, delicious. *Jūcundus*, a, um (jūvo and adjectival term. *cundus*), in general sense, pleasant, delightful.

5. *Acē*, cris, ere, eager, zealous in a good sense. *Vēhēmēns*, tis (prob. = *ve-mens*, not reasonable), violent, zealous, in a bad sense, as from heat or passion.

6. *Dēcipio*, cēpi, ceptum, 3, to deceive (intentionally). *Falle*, fesseli, falsum, to lead into an error or mistake. *Fraudo*, avi, ctum, 1, to cheat, defraud.

## PHRASES.

Eng. *You and I*;

“ *Many a battle*;

“ *Every tenth man*;

“ *All the best men*;

Lat. *I and you.*

“ *Many battles*: multa proelia.

“ *Each tenth man*: decimus quisque.

“ *Each best man*: optimus quisque.

## EXERCISE IV.

1. Neither you nor I have<sup>1</sup> done this. 2. You and I speak most openly to-day. 3. You and your mother think this, (but) I do not. 4. You and he praise the streams of the lovely country (*rus*). 5. Both you and they have waged many a war. 6. Part (of them) are gone away (*Plur.*).<sup>2</sup> 7. Another band of Gauls crossed the Alps, and settled where Verona now is. 8. Some straggled over (*per*) the country, some make-for (*pēto*) the neighbouring cities. 9. The husband said one (*aliud . . aliud*) thing, and the wife another. 10. Every tenth man was chosen. 11. A great part were wounded or slain. 12. All the best men are<sup>3</sup> the most zealous defenders of liberty. 13. Part of them cover (*lit. load*) the tables.

<sup>1</sup> Plural: St. L. G. 569.

<sup>2</sup> Use the Perfect Tense, which is frequently expressed in English by the

Present Indicative of the verb to be and the past participle.

<sup>3</sup> Singular.

## V.—SECOND CONCORD.

§ 223. *The Substantive and Adjective.*—An Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case: as,

*Jam pauca arātro jūgēra rēgiæ  
Mōles rēlinquent,*

*Ere long the princely piles will leave few acres for the plough.*—Hor.

— *nēque te [silēbo] mētuenē certā*

*Phoebe adgittā,*

*Nor will I hold my peace of thee, Phoebus; to be dreaded for thine unstriking shaft.*—Hor.

§ 224. In like manner, the Perfect Participle used in forming the Perfect Tenses of the Passive Voice agrees in Gender and Number with the Subject of the Verb: as,

*Omnium assensu comprobāta oratio est, The speech was approved by the assent of all.*—Liv.

*Neglectum Anxuri praesidium (est), The garrison at Anzur was not looked after.*—Liv.

§ 225. When an Adjective or Participle is predicated of two or more Subjects at once, it is put in the Plural Number.

(1.) If the Subjects are *persons*, though of different genders, the Adjective is Masculine: as,

*Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt, My father and mother are dead.*—Ter.

(2.) If the Subjects are *things* without life, and of different genders, the Adjective is Neuter: as,

*Secundae res, honores, imperia, victoriae fortuita sunt, Prosperity, honours, places of command, victories are accidental.*—Cic.

*Labor voluptasque societate quadam inter se conjuncta sunt, Labour and enjoyment are linked together by a kind of partnership.*—Liv.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Cerno, cravi, crētum*, 3 (in the sense of "to see," no perf. or sup.), properly *to separate, to distinguish by the senses or the eyes: hence to behold clearly, to distinguish one object from another. Video, vidi, visum*, 2, signifies *to see with the eyes, to see because nothing obstructs the vision:*

*Aut videt, aut vidisse putat lumen, He either sees or fancies that he has seen a light.*—Ov.

*Gravis*, *e*, *heavy, weighty*. Often figuratively: as,

*Gravis vino et somno, Overcome with wine and sleep.*—Liv.

*Gravis testis, a credible witness.*—Cic.

*Tibi gravis sum, I am troublesome to you.*—Cic.

*Vereor ne tibi gravis sim, I am afraid of being troublesome to you.*—Cic.

*Onerosus*, *a, um, too heavy, burdensome. Onerarius*, *a, um, fit for burden or carriage.*

3. *Fidélis, e, faithful, sincere.*

*Conjux fidélissima, a most faithful wife.—Cic.*

*Fidus, a, um, trusty, naturally true-hearted.*

4. *Sāpiens, tis, wise, judicious :*

*Sāpientissimū esse dicitur eum, cui quod ōpus sit, ipsi vēniat in mentem, They say that he is the wisest man, to whose own mind occurs whatever may be necessary.—Cic.*

*Prūdēns (= prōvidēns), foreseeing, sagacious :*

*Prūdēns impendētium malōrum, Foreseeing impending disorders.—Cic.*

5. *Appello, āvi, ātum, 1, to name ; also to speak to :*

*Quis Deus appellandus est ? What deity must be addressed ?—Cic.*

*Vōco, āvi, ātum, 1, to call or name in calling ; also, to summon.*

*Qui sāpientes et hābentur et vōcantur, Who are both thought and called wise.—Cic.*

*Vōcāre ad coenam, to invite to dinner.—Cic.*

*Cito, āvi, ātum, 1, to summon or quote :*

*Auctōres citāre, To quote authors.—Liv.*

*Nōmīno, āvi, ātum, 1, to name or mention (for distinction) :*

*Nēfas hābent Mercurium nōmīnāre Aegyptiī, The Aegyptians hold it as an abomination to mention the name of Mercury.—Cic.*

6. *Ānimus, i, m., the mind as the seat of the passions. Mens, tis, f., the intellect, the reason. Ānīma, ae, f., the vital principle, life*

7. *Mors, tis, f., natural death. Lētum, i, n. (chiefly poet.), prop. oblivion (perhaps fr. λήθη), also means natural death. Nex, ūcis, f., a violent death, as a passive to caedes. Ōbitus, exītus, ūs, m., decease, softer expressions for death, like the Eng. "departure."*

8. *Dēleo, ēvi, ētum, 2, prop. to blot out : hence, to destroy :*

*Jam scripsēram, dēlere nōlūi, I had already written and was reluctant to blot it out.—Cic.*

*Oblitēro, āvi, ātum, 1, to erase by scraping ; hence to destroy the remembrance of.*

*Ābōleo, ēvi, ētum (ab, ōleo, to grow), destroy, to do away with.*

9. *Sīno, īvi, ītum, 3, to permit, i.e. not to put a hindrance in the way of. Permitto, īsi, īssum, 3, to give permission. It implies that a man has the right to give it. Indulgeo, si, tum, 2, to permit or grant, from forbearance or fondness ; to indulge. Conniveo, xi, 2, to allow a thing by conniving (winking) at it.*

#### PHRASE.

Eng. *Contrary to each other ;*

Lat. *Contrary between themselves, inter se contrāria.*

#### EXERCISE V.

1. A trusty friend is discerned in an uncertain matter. 2. Brutus and Cassius stirred up a great war. 3. Ninus was the first king of the Assyrians. 4. Gold is the heaviest of all metals. 5. What animals are the most faithful of all? The dog and the horse. 6. The Spanish grapes are the sweetest. 7. Mithridates was overcome in war by Pompey. 8. Aesop was not (*haud*) undeservedly esteemed wise. 9. Phocion, the Athenian, was surnamed the good. 10. In a free state the tongue and the mind ought to be free. 11. A

kindn  
and th  
did no  
the las

§ 2  
with

Eng  
you, ca  
Nu  
anima

Ob

§ 2  
stanti

Relat

Oae

Caesar

Lē

virtuti

to desp

§ 2

propo

and id

Tin

quam u

difficul

1. Sāce

Mi

Some

Eng

Sanc

Sar

Sar

Sar

Sacr

san

kindness and an injury are contrary to each other. 12. The wall and the gate were struck by lightning.<sup>1</sup> 13. Juventas and Terminus did not allow themselves to be removed. 14. Of all things death is the last (*neut.*).<sup>2</sup> 15. A thousand ships were destroyed.

<sup>1</sup> Say, touched from heaven, do coelo.

<sup>2</sup> See St. I. G. 227.

## VI.—THIRD CONCORD.

§ 228. *The Relative and its Antecedent.*—The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person: as,

*Ego, qui te confirmo, ipse me non possum, I who am encouraging you, cannot (encourage) myself.*—Cic.

*Nullum animal, quod sanguinem habet, sine corde esse potest, No animal, which has blood, can be destitute of a heart.*—Cic.

*Obs.* The Case of the Relative is determined by its relation to its own clause, which is thus treated as a separate sentence: as,

*Arbores sēret diligens agricōla, quārum adspiciet baccam ipse nunquam, The industrious husbandman will plant trees, the fruit of which he will himself never set eyes on.*—Cic.

*NOTE.*—Here the Relative *quarum* is governed by the Substantive *baccam* in the Relative sentence.

§ 229. When the Relative has for its Predicate a Substantive of different gender from the Antecedent, the Relative usually agrees with the Predicate: as,

*Caesar Gomphi pervēnit, quod (not qui) est oppidum Boeotiae, Caesar came to Gomphi, which is a town of Boeotia.*—Caes.

*Lēvis est animi, justam glōriam, qui (not quae) est fructus vēræ virtutis honestissimus, repudiāre, It is characteristic of a worthless mind to despise just glory, which is the most honourable fruit of true virtue.*—Cic.

§ 230. When the Relative has for its Antecedent a whole proposition, the latter is treated as a Neuter Substantive, and *id quod* is generally used in preference to *quod* alone: as,

*Timōleon, id quod difficilīus putātur, multo sapientius talitē secundum, quam adversam fortunam, Timoleon,—a thing which is thought the more difficult,—bore prosperity much more wisely than adversity.*—Nep.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Sācer, ora, orum, sacred, belonging to the gods; opp. to Prōfānus*

*Miscere sēra prōfānis, To mingle the sacred with the profane.*—Hor.

Sometimes in a bad sense, *accursed*;

*Ego sum mālus, ego sum sācer, I am wicked, I am accursed.*—Ter.

*Sanctus, a, um, holy, inviolable, strictly conscientious; opp. to pollūtus:*

*Sancti lēgati, Inviolable ambassadors.*

*Sanctae Virgines, Holy (vestal) Virgins.*—Hor.

*Sanctus Jūdex, An incorruptible judge.*—Cic.

*Sacrōsanctus a, um (sācer, sancio) increases the idea of sanctus; that which cannot be violated with impunity.*

2. *Perpētūus*, a, um, *lasting, enduring*; relatively, with reference to a definite period, as life. *Sempiternus*, a, um, *enduring, absolutely*, with reference to time itself—as long as time lasts, *everlasting*. *Aeternus*, a, um, *without beginning or end, eternal*:

*Deus beatus et aeternus, The blessed and eternal God.*—Cic.

3. *Dōceo*, ui, etum, 2, *to teach*. *Edōceo*, *to make one learn* *Perdōceo*, *to teach perfectly*. *Erūdio*, iui, itum, 4 (e, rūdis), lit. *to bring from a rough condition, to initiate in knowledge, to instruct*:

*Stādīdōsos dōcendī erūdiunt et dōcent, Those who are eagerly desirous of learning, they educate and teach.*—Cic.

4. *Possum* (pōtis sum), pōtūi, irr., *I am able*, because I have sufficient power, as from strength or position. *Queo*, 4, irr., *I am able*, because circumstances allow me to do it:

*Posse plūrimū grātia apud illūquem, To have very great influence with any one.*—Cic. (*Quire plūrimū would not do.*)

5. *Polleo*, 2 (pondus), *to have considerable means, to be weighty or influential*. *Vāleo*, ui, 2, *to be strong*, as when in good health, *to be equal* to an undertaking.

6. *Tūmultus*, ūs, m. (same root as *tūmeo*), as distinguished from *bellum*, i, n., is a war of a more terrible character, and is used generally to denote a war within Italy, or against the Gauls. As distinguished from *turba*, ae, f., *confusion*, it expresses more, and signifies *tumult*.

#### EXERCISE VI.

1. We are taught by the lessons which are contained in the Holy Scriptures. 2. Helen, who excited a most serious war, was the daughter of Tyndareus. 3. Many towns, which in former times were flourishing, are now overthrown and destroyed (*perf.*). 4. The burden which is well (*bene*) carried is light. 5. The foundation of enduring fame is justice, without which nothing can be praiseworthy. 6. There is no pain which length of time does not diminish (*subfunctive*). 7. Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia, was in great commotion. 8. Two consuls were slain in battle, a thing which in no war had happened before. 9. Cumae, which city was then occupied by the Greeks, is in Italy. 10. There is an abundance of those things which men deem (to be) of first importance (*lit. first*). 11. Caius freed his country from a tyrant, a thing which many have wished (to do). 12. This foreseeing, sagacious, intelligent animal, which we call man.

<sup>1</sup> Use *ui*, ea, id: St. L.G. 372.

#### VII.—THE NOMINATIVE CASE

§ 231. The Nominative Case is used to denote the Subject of a Sentence: as,

*Ego rēges ejeci, vos tyrannos intrōdūctis, I expelled kings, ye are bringing in despots.*—Auct. ad Her.

§ 232. The Nominative is also used as descriptive of the subject after the following kinds of Verbs:—

(1.)  
isto, fr

(2.)  
māneo

(3.)  
nōmin  
called];

(4.)  
hābeor

(1.)  
once.—J

(2.)  
entire.—

(3.)  
king.—E

called rel  
(4.)  
seemed su

stances, s

1. Grātio  
m., com

2. Tristis  
moereo,  
Quid  
solata as

3. Pōpūlu  
spective  
Pōpūli  
Plebs,  
Rōma

mons, an  
Vulgus  
ignora

4. Dives,  
or estate  
Auctori  
Lōcūpi

Cōma (o  
Crinis, i  
head. F  
head of N

5. Pōsta, i  
is, m. and  
scotchygo



(1.) Verbs which signify to *be* or to *become*: as, *sum, existo, fio, evādo* (to issue, turn out) *nascor* (to be born), etc.

(2.) Verbs which denote a state or mode of existence: as, *māneo* (to remain), *dūro* (to endure), etc.

(3.) Passive Verbs of naming, making, appointing: as, *nōmīnor, dicor, appellor* [also *audio*, in sense of to be called]; *creor, fio, designor, instituor*, etc.

(4.) Verbs signifying to seem or be thought: as *videor, hūbeor, existimor, dūcor*, etc.: as,

(1.) *Nemo repente fit turpissimus*, No one becomes utterly base all at once.—*Juv.*

*Nemo nascitur dives*, No one is born rich.—*Sen.*

(2.) *Munitiōnes integre manebant*, The fortifications remained entire.—*Cæs.*

(3.) *Numa Pompilius rex creatus est*, Numa Pompilius was made king.—*Eutr.*

*Iustitia erga deos religio dicitur*, Justice towards the gods is called religion.—*Cic.*

(4.) *Satis altitudo muri exstructa videbatur*, The height of the wall seemed sufficiently raised.—*Nep.*

*In rebus angustis animosus et fortis appare*, In trying circumstances, show thyself courageous and manly.—*Hor.*

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Oratio*, *ōnis*, *f.*, a set speech, a harangue (usually of an orator). *Sermo*, *ōnis*, *m.*, common familiar talk (of any person).

2. *Tristis*, *e*, *ead*, expressing sorrow in the countenance. *Moestus*, *a*, *um* (fr. *moereo*, akin to *miser*), sorrowful in soul:

*Quid vos moestas tamque tristes esse conspicio*, Why do I behold you disconsolate and thus crest-fallen?—*Plaut.*

3. *Pōpulus*, *i*, *m.*, the multitude composing a nation, a people, collectively, irrespective of rank or birth:

*Pōpulus Rōmānus*, The Roman people.

*Plebs*, *plēbs*, *f.*, also *plēbes*, *ēi*, the common people, opposed to the patricians: *Rōma triplex* *ēquitātu, plēbe, sēnātu*, Rome, thrice mighty in knights, in commons, and in senators.—*Aus.*

*Vulgus*, *i*, *m.* and *n.*, generally in a bad sense, the ill-bred commonalty, the rude ignorant multitude.

4. *Dives*, *tis*, *rich*, as opposed to poor; *wealthy*. *Lōcuples*, *ētis*, *rich in lands or estates*, opposed to *ēgēnus*, *a*, *um*, *needy*. Sometimes figuratively:

*Auctor vel testis lōcuples*, A credible author or witness.—*Cic.*

*Lōcuples oratio*, An ornate speech.—*Cic.*

5. *Cōma* (*κόμη*), *ae*, *f.*, a head of hair, generally with the accessory idea of beauty.

*Crisis*, *is*, *m.*, hair, opposed to baldness. *Cāpillus*, *i*, *m.* (*cāput*), hair of the head. *Plūs*, *i*, *m.*, a single hair or bristle. *Cæsāries*, *ei*, *f.*, usually a man's head of hair, flowing hair.

6. *Pōeta*, *ae*, *m.* and *f.*, a poet, prop. one who makes verse (*ποιῆται*). *Vātes*, *is*, *m.* and *f.*, a religious expression—the poet as a sacred person, a bard, a soothsayer. The oracles were delivered in verse, hence poets were called Vates.

7. *Similis Allicijus et similis Allici.* With a Gen. *similis* refers rather to internal, moral, likeness. With a Dative to external, physical resemblance: *Populum Rōmānum mājōrum similem esse, That the Roman people resembled its ancestors (in character).—Cic.*  
*Pāro simillimus amni, Exactly like a clear river (in appearance).—Hor.*

## PHRASE.

Eng. *Among the most prosperous;* Lat. *Prosperous along with the first (en primis).*

## EXERCISE VII.

1. Custom is a second<sup>1</sup> nature. 2. Clearness is the chief excellence of speech. 3. This old man seems to be sad. 4. After Hostilius, Ancus Martius was appointed king by the people. 5. The people of Crotōna (*Crotōnienses*) were reckoned among the most prosperous in Italy. 6. The mind, not the edifier of a man, ought to be called rich. 7. Justice towards the gods is called religion, towards one's parents piety. 8. The nation of the Seythians has been always thought to be very ancient. 9. The lion is called the king of quadrupeds. 10. The hair of the ancient<sup>2</sup> Germans is said to have been flaxen. 11. Homer is deservedly called the king of poets. 12. Children are generally supposed to be like their parents. 13. Thou wast called (*audio*, active) king and father. 14. Many dreams turn out true. 15. Greece always wished to be first (*princeps*) in eloquence. 16. The army remained entire. 17. The sun appears to be larger. 18. This entire world is rightly regarded as one commonwealth of mankind. 19. Hercules and Bacchus are reported<sup>3</sup> to have been kings of the East. 20. Tullius and Antonius are declared consuls.

<sup>1</sup> Alter, ŕra, ċrum.

<sup>2</sup> Vetus, ŕris.

## VIII.—ACCUSATIVE OF THE OBJECT.

† § 234. The Accusative denotes the *Direct Object* of an action.

Transitive Verbs of all kinds, both Active and Deponent, govern the Accusative: as,

*Deus mundum aedificavit, God built the world.—Cic.*

*Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur, Glory follows virtue like a shadow.—Cic.*

*Nulla ars imitari solertiam naturae potest, No art can imitate the ingenuity of Nature.—Cic.*

Obs. 1. Active Transitive Verbs which govern the Accusative case are capable of becoming Passives, the object of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Nominative of the subject, and the subject of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Ablative of the Instrument or Agent: if the Agent is a living being, the Preposition *a* or *ab* is prefixed: as, *magister puerum laudat, The master praises the boy, becomes in the Passive, puer a magistro laudatur, The boy is praised by the master.*

Obs. 2.  
only  
In  
fort  
N  
shal  
Obs. 3  
tive

D § 235.  
times fo  
sense to

Hac n  
dream.—I  
Verissim

Obs. T  
emp

D § 236.  
sative b  
them.  
note a s  
mourn on  
I shudder

Sēquā  
the cruelty  
Amore  
Contrē

Here  
involve  
respectiv

1. Accipio.  
Exclpio.  
arms. R  
Suscipio  
back to a

2 Sāgitta,  
Aptāre

Tēlum, i, n  
generally  
a dart, al

Alēxan  
ander wa  
his shin.—

3. Vēnēnu  
Pāssyrio  
Virus, i, n.  
Virus p

**Obs. 2.** But the Verbs which govern any other case can be used in the Passive only impersonally: as,

*Invidetur praestanti flōrentique fortunae, Eminent and flourishing fortune is envied.*—Cic. (Lit., *Envy is felt by men for eminent fortune.*)

*Non parcetur lābōri, Labour shall not be spared.*—Cic. (Lit., *There shall be no sparing for labour.*)

**Obs. 3.** The principal apparent exceptions to the Government of an Accusative by Transitive Verbs will be found at § 291.

§ 235. *Cognate Accusative.*—Intransitive Verbs are sometimes followed by an Accusative of cognate or kindred sense to themselves: as,

*Hac nocte mirum somniāvi somnium, This night I dreamt a strange dream.*—Plaut.

*Vēriissimum jūrāntum jūrāre, To swear a most true oath.*—Cic.

**Obs.** This construction is especially used when an Attributive Adjective is employed.

§ 236. Other intransitive Verbs often govern an Accusative by virtue of some transitive meaning implied in them. This is often the case with those verbs which denote a state of mind, like *lūgeo*, *I mourn*, *lūgeo aliquid*, *I mourn on account of something*; *horreo*, *I shudder*, *horreo aliquid*, *I shudder at something*, &c.: as,

*Sēquāni Ariōvisti crudelitatem horrēbant, The Sequani shuddered at the cruelty of Ariovistus.*—Caes.

*Amōro aliquam dēpērire, To be dying of love for some one.*—Plaut.

*Contrēmere hastam, To tremble at the lance.*—Virg.

Here *horreo*, *dēpēreo*, *contrēmo* (strictly intransitive Verbs), involve the transitive meanings, *to dread*, *to love*, *to fear*, respectively. This idiom is most frequent in the poets.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Accipio*, cēpi, ceptum, 3, *to take what is offered*, generally into the hand. *Excipio*, ēpi, eptum, 3, *to take*, i. e. *catch*, *what is flying*, generally into the arms. *Rēcipio*, cēpi, ceptum, 3, *to take into one's care*, as into the bosom. *Suscipio*, cēpi, ceptum, *to undertake a duty or task imposed* (to put one's arm or back to a burden).

2. *Sāgitta*, ac, f., *an arrow*:

*Aptāre nervo sāgittas, To fit the arrows to the bowstring.*—Virg.

*Tēlum*, i, n. (prob. fr. *τηλόθεν*), a generic term for any kind of offensive weapon, generally of a missile character. *Spicūlum*, i, n. (from *spica*, an ear of corn), a dart, also used of the triangular head of an arrow or javelin:

*Alexander sāgittā ictus est, quae in medio crūre reliquerat spicūlum, Alexander was wounded by an arrow which had left its point behind in the middle of his shin.*—Curt.

3. *Vēnenum*, i, n., a drug, medicine, or poison. Sometimes used of dyeing drugs. *Assyrio fūctur lāna vēneno, The wool is stained with Assyrian dye.*—Virg.

*Virus*, i, n., *poison*, *venom*. Sometimes an offensive stench:

*Virus palūis, The smell from the stagnant marsh.*—Col.

4. **Effugio**, ūgi, itum, 3, to escape, not merely fly from (like ἀποφεύγω).  
Vincula effugere, to escape from imprisonment.—Hor.
- Subterfugio, ūgi, itum, 3, to get away secretly, to give the slip (like ἀποδιδράσκω).  
Aufugio, ūgi, itum (ab ūgio), to fly from. Diffugio, ūgi, itum, 3, to fly in all directions (diversim fugere).
5. **Pōtestas**, ūtis, f. (fr. posse), power, lawful authority, as of a magistrate. **Pōtentia**, ae, f., unconstitutional power, predominance. A person in authority is said to be in pōtestate. **Ditio**, ōnis, f., power, jurisdiction:  
In ditione alicujus esse, To be under a man's authority.—Cic.
6. **Bestia**, ae, f., an unreasoning animal. **Bellua**, ae, f. (also bēlua), a great beast. **Fēra**, ae, f., a wild beast. An elephant or hippopotamus would be bellua, but a lion or tiger, fēra.
7. **Vēnērōr**, ūtus sum, 1, to pray to; hence, to venerate. **Cōlo**, cōlū, cultum, 3, prop. to cherish; hence to regard with honour, worship. **Rēvērēor**, ūtus sum, 2, to stand in awe of, to show respectful fear.
8. **Māre**, is, n., the sea, as opposed to land. **Aequor**, ōris, n. (aequus), properly a level plain surface, the expanse of the sea when calm. **Pontus**, i, m., the deep sea. **Frētum**, i, n., a narrow part of the sea, a strait.
9. **Sēcūris**, is, f. (sēcō), a butcher's cleaver, to chop meat; an (executioner's) axe. **Ascia**, ae, f., a carpenter's axe to cleave wood.

## EXERCISE VIII.

1. I have received your letter. 2. Daedalus moved his wings.  
3. Romulus created a hundred senators. 4. I will sing no songs.  
5. I do not fear death. 6. If we follow (*fut.*) nature as our guide, we shall never go astray. 7. Barbarous nations dip their arrows in poison. 8. Hear much (*pl.*), speak little (*pl.*). 9. Themistocles did not escape the animosity<sup>1</sup> of his fellow-citizens. 10. Pompey restored the tribunitian power of which Sulla had left the image without the reality. 11. The Egyptians consecrated almost every species of beasts: the Syrians worship a fish. 12. They are free-born, of whose ancestors none<sup>2</sup> has served in slavery (*acc.*). 13. They run the same course of life. 14. It is better to live one's life moderately and modestly. 15. Nor does he shudder-at the stormy sea. 16. The field seems to mourn-for its master. 17. The Roman matrons mourned-for him as (for) a parent. 18. He fears the Parthian and the icy Scythian. 19. He trembles and shudders-at the rods and axes of the dictator.

<sup>1</sup> Invidia.<sup>2</sup> Nemo, inis, e.

## IX.—ACCUSATIVE OF THE OBJECT.—(continued.)

- § 238. All Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions circum, per, praeter, trans, super, and subter, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Timotheus Peloponnesum circumvēhens Lacedaemona popūlatus est,  
Timotheus sailing round Peloponnesus, laid waste Laconia.—Nep.

Hannibal Alpes cum exercitu transiit, Hannibal crossed the Alps with an army.—Nep.

× § 238  
with t  
with a  
an Acc

Nāve  
Urbe  
Nēm  
Sociē  
Modē  
Quan  
Gauls su  
Nēm  
Nep.

× § 240  
compou  
an Acc  
Equit  
the senate

1. Mons,  
mountai  
ridges.

Praer  
Monte  
Collis,  
Agger,

2. Ruina,  
is, f. (ste  
Strage

3. Nonnu  
not often  
Nonnu  
Interd  
Alqua

4. Rēgio, i  
subdued

Stella  
a provin  
Plāga, a  
Plāga i

5. Aveo (no  
us, with  
one has h  
be willing  
tum, 3, t  
show it by

× § 239. Many Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions *ad* and *in*, and some compounded with *ante*, *con*, *ex*, and *prae*, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

*Naves Genuam accesserunt*, The ships reached Genoa.—Liv.

*Urbem invadunt*, They fall upon the city.—Virg.

*Neminem conveni*, I have met no one.—Cic.

*Societatem coire*, To form a partnership.—Cic.

*Modum excedere*, To exceed the limit.—Cic.

*Quantum Galli virtute ceteros mortales praestarent*, How much the Gauls surpassed the rest of mankind in valour.—Liv.

*Nemo eum in amicitia antecessit*, no one excelled him in friendship.—Nep.

× § 240. Intransitive verbs of rest (*jaceo*, *sedeo*, *sto*, *sisto*), compounded with *circum*, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

*Equites Romani senatum circumstant*, Roman knights stand around the senate.—Cic.

SYNONYMS.

1. *Mons*, *tis*, *m.*, a mountain or range of mountains. *Jugum*, *i*, *n.* (*jungo*), a mountain ridge. *Cacumen*, *inis*, *n.*, a summit: *dorsum*, *i*, *n.*, a back-like ridge. *Mons* often signifies a great heap of anything:

*Praeruptus aquae mons*, A rugged mountainous wave.—Virg.

*Montes auri*, Piles of gold.—Ter.

*Collis*, *is*, *m.*, an easy ascent, a hill. *Tumulus* (*tumeo*), *i*, *m.*, any eminence

*Agger*, *eris*, *m.*, a heap, mound, or terrace (*ad giro*).

2. *Ruina*, *ae*, *f.* (*ruo*), a (violent) falling down, downfall: *ruina*, ruin. *Strages*, *is*, *f.* (*sterno*), an overthrow from without. *Strages*, *havoc*, butchery. *Strages ruinae similis*, A slaughter near akin to entire ruin.—Liv.

3. *Nonnunquam*, sometimes, with the idea of frequency. *Interdum*, at times, not often. *Aliquando*, now and then, more than once:

*Nonnunquam facta*, Things done at short intervals.

*Interdum facta*, At lengthened intervals.

*Aliquando facta*, At very lengthened intervals.

4. *Régio*, *onis*, *f.* (*régere*), a vast extent of country. *Próvincia*, *ae*, *f.*, a country subdued by arms or otherwise:

*Sicilia prima omnium próvincia appellata est*, Sicily was the first of all called a province.—Cic.

*Plága*, *ae*, *f.*, a district, clime, or tract either of earth or heaven:

*Plága lactes coeli*, The milky way.

5. *Aveo* (no perf. or sup.) 2, to long for, to strive after, especially for what pleases us, with some degree of impatience. *Désidéro*, *avi*, *atum*, 1, to desire what one has had, but now feels the loss of: hence to regret. *Vólo*, *vólui*, *velle*, to be willing, have a mind for. *Opto*, *avi*, *atum*, 1, to wish, prefer. *Cúpio*, *ivi*, *itum*, 3, to desire (most general term). *Gestulo*, *ivi*, 4, to desire eagerly, and show it by gestures.

6. *Cognosco*, ōvi, itum, 3, to learn (something before unknown). *Agnosco*, ōvi, itum, 3, to recognize (something known before):  
*Vetērem Anchisen agnoscit amicum*, He recognizes his old friend Anchises.—Virg.  
*Intelligo*, exi, ectum, 3, to discern by means of reflection. *Dignosco*, ōvi, ōtum, 3, to distinguish. *Re-cognosco*, ōvi, itum, 3, to bring to remembrance: *Cognoscere de aliqua re*, To take cognizance of something.—Cic.  
*Cognoscere ex aliqua re*, To know by something.—Cic.
7. *Magnus*, a, um, great, opposed to *parvus*, without any accessory notion. *Grandis*, e, great, with the idea of strength and full growth. *Ingenus*, ntis, of extraordinary size. *Immanis*, e (prob. fr. in; not, and *manus* = bonus), huge, exciting fear. *Vastus*, a, um, vast, irregular in form, out of bounds: *Vastus animus*, A mind of extravagant aims.—Sall.
8. *Sēnātus*, ūs, m., the senate—either the senators or (by meton.) the place where they met:  
*In sēnātum vēnit*, He came into the senate.—Cic.  
*Sēnātus convōcātus erat*, The senate had been convened.—Cic.  
*Cūria*, ae, f., the building where the senators assembled:  
*Venit in cūriam sēnātus frēquens*, A full assembly of senators came into the senate-house.—Cic.  
*Very rarely of the senate itself.*  
*Cūria iūbet*, The senate wills it.—Cic.

## PHRASES.

Eng. The midst of the city;	Lat. The middle city (urbs mēdia).
" As he speaks;	" (Often) speaking (part.)
" Young men of Rome;	" (Often) Rōmāna iuventus.
" Those who are prosperous;	" The prosperous (participle).

## EXERCISE IX.

1. The river Eurōtas flows round Sparta. 2. The Euphrates goes through the midst of Babylon. 3. The Romans climbed over the ruins of the wall. 4. The rivers flowed beneath the walls. 5. The people are wont sometimes to pass-by the worthy. 6. Pythagoras went-over many barbarous regions (lit. of barbarians) on foot. 7. Thirty tyrants surrounded Socrates and could not<sup>1</sup> break his spirit. 8. I long to have-an-interview-with<sup>2</sup> those whom I myself (ipse) have known. 9. The young men of Rome approach the walls. 10. A great fear suddenly came-upon the soldiers. 11. Both you and I have exceeded (the bounds of) moderation. 12. A crowd of friends surrounds the prosperous. 13. The Roman knights stand round the senate. 14. Six lictors surround him as he speaks.

<sup>1</sup> And . . not, nēque.<sup>2</sup> Convēnio, vēni, ventum, 4, with acc.

## X.—INTRANSITIVE VERBS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

- § 241. These five Impersonal Verbs. *pūdet*, it shameth; *laedet*, it wearieth; *poenitet*, it repenteth; *pīget*, it grieveth; and

# INTRANSITIVE VERBS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE. 17

*misérēt, it pitieth (affects with pity)*; take an Accusative of the person whom the feeling affects. The object of the feeling is put in the Genitive: as,

*Mē piget stultitiae meae, I am vexed at my folly.*—Cic.

*Timōthei post mortem pōpūlū judicīi sui poenituit, After the death of Timotheus the people repented of their judgment.*

Obs. The Object (or cause) of the feeling is sometimes expressed by an Infinitive Mood or clause: as,

*Non me vixisse poenitet, I repent not having-lived.*—Cic.

*Quintum poenitet, quod animū tuū offendit, Quintus is sorry that he has wounded your feelings.*—Cic.

§ 242. In like manner *dēcet, it is becoming*, and *dēdēcet, it is unbecoming*, take an Accusative of the Person: as,

*Orātōrem minime dēcet irasci, It very ill becomes a speaker to lose his temper.*—Cic.

Obs. In like manner the Impersonals *jūvat, it delights*; *lātet, fallit, fūgit, praetērit, it escapes (notice)*; *ōportet, it behoves*, take an Accusative of the Person.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Sēnex, is, m., an old man*, one beyond his sixtieth year. *Vētus, eris, ancient*, of old standing. *Grandaevus or longaevus, a, um, very aged.*

2. *Consilium, i, n., counsel, advice, design, project.* *Sententia, ae, f., a (decided) opinion:*

*Dat consilium de animi sententia, He gives advice according to his mind's conviction.*

3. *Poenā (ποινή), ae, f., a satisfaction*, hence *punishment* of any kind, corporal, capital, or by imprisonment, as an atonement for an offence.

*Octo poenarum genera in legibus continentur, Eight species of punishments are contained in the laws.*—Cic.

*Mulota (multa), ae, f., a fine*, originally in cattle, but afterwards in money:

*Mulotare aliquem poenā et mulotā, To visit a man with punishment and fine.*—Cic.

4. *Peccatum, i, n., a transgression*, what a man knows to be wrong. *Dēlictum, i, n., a fault*, strictly of omission. *Culpa, ae, f., fault.*

5. *Paupertas, atis, f., humble or poor circumstances*, not actual want of the necessities of life. *Egestas, atis, f., destitution, extreme poverty.* *Indopia, ae, f., scarcity, need of help.* *Penuria, ae, f., scarcity, dearth.*

6. *Simulo, avi, atum, i, to pretend what does not exist.* *Dissimulo, avi, atum, i, to conceal what does exist:*

*Spem vultu simulat, In his features he feigns a hopeful look.*—Virg.

*Dissimulat metum, He conceals his fears.*—Hor.

7. *Homo, inis, m. and f., a man, a human being*, including both sexes. *Vir, vtri, m., a man (not a woman)*; hence, *a husband*. Frequently a distinguished man.

*Vir bonus, rather than bonus homo.*

EXERCISE X.

1. You are ashamed of your negligence. 2. I am vexed at the morals of the state. 3. Your enemies repent of their intemperance. 4. I pity that old man. 5. I am entirely weary of life. 6. God never repents of his first design. 7. I am not only vexed-at but also ashamed of my folly. 8. Men pitied their punishment not more than the crime by which (*abl.*) they had merited punishment. 9. He repeats his sin<sup>1</sup> who is not ashamed of it.<sup>2</sup> 10. Many are ashamed of poverty, even (though) honourable. 11. Myrtle does not misbecome a servant. 12. It by no means becomes an orator to be angry: to pretend (to be so) does not misbecome him. 13. Anxious speech becomes not a philosopher. 14. It becomes a pretor to have not only temperate hands, but also eyes. 15. It will delight me to have perished by the hands of men. 16. Priam eluded the watch-fires (*ignes*) and the camp hostile to Troy. 17. It behoves me to do this. 18. But it does not escape you how difficult this is (*subjunct.*).

<sup>1</sup> Say, sins twice.

<sup>2</sup> Say, of (his) sin.

XI.—DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE.

§ 243. Verbs of *teaching* and *concealing* take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person: *as, doceo. I teach* (with its compounds); *cēlo. I conceal, hide from*: *as,*

*Quis mūsicam docuit Epāminondam, Who taught Epaminondas music?—Nep.*

*Non cēlavi te sermōnem hōmīnum, I have not kept from you the men's discourse.—Cic.*

*Obs. Accusative after a Passive Verb.*—When a Verb of teaching, &c. is turned into the Passive, the thing taught may still remain in the Accusative: *as,*

*L. Marcius omnes militiæ artes edoctus fuerat, Lucius Marcius had been taught all the arts of war.—Liv.*

§ 244. Some verbs of *asking, entreating, and demanding* take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person: *as, interrōgo and percontor, I ask*; *oro, I entreat, rōgo, I ask or entreat*; and *posco (reposco), flāgito, I demand*: *as,*

*Lēgātī Verrem simūlācrum Cērēris rēposeunt, The envoys demand back from Verres the statue of Ceres.—Cic.*

*Caesar frumentum Aeduos flāgitābat, Caesar kept demanding corn of the Aeduī.—Cæsar.*

SYNONYMS.

1. *Jūventūs, ætās, f., the time of youth, by meton. those in a state of youth*:

*Ibiq̄ue jūventūtem excrevit, And in those pursuits he spent his early life.—Sall.*  
*Omnis jūventūs convēnērāt. All the young men had assembled together.*

Jūve  
The  
jūven  
Jū  
Circ  
2. Imā  
lis),  
Simi  
an in  
—a b  
usual  
Sim  
dēfect  
cnele  
+ Aevu  
(in ge  
time.  
Ter  
time.  
Temp

Eng  
"  
"

1. Th  
(and) f  
nerva in  
instruct  
taught u  
me. 7.  
8. They  
not tric  
friends,  
legions,  
the mili  
of (per)  
demande  
14. The  
15. The  
larly<sup>1</sup> a  
nothing  
demands



*Juventa*, ae, *f.*, the season of youth. *Juventas*, atis, *f.*, the goddess of youth. The goddess of youth is however sometimes expressed by either *juventus* or *juventa*:

*Juventutis aedes* in *Circo Maximo*, The temple of the goddess of youth in the *Circus Maximus*.—*Liv.*

2. *Imāgo*, inis, *f.* (root *im-*—whence *Imitor*—or, with a sibilant, *sim*, whence *similis*), a likeness, a copy of a thing whether in sculpture or painting, or in idea. *Simulacrum*, i, *n.* (*simule*), any figure made to resemble something else: esp. an image. *Effigies*, ei, *f.* (*effingere*), not used of painting, but of sculpture—a bust. *Stātua*, ae, *f.* (*stare*), allied in meaning to *simulacrum*—the latter usually means the sacred figure of a god; the former the statue of a man:

*Simulacra deorum immortalium depulsa sunt*, et *stātuae veterum hominum dejectae*, The images of the immortal gods were cast out, and the statues of the ancients thrown down.—*Tac.*

3. *Aevum*, i, *n.* (*aion*), a very long space of time, an age. *Tempus*, oris, *n.*, time (in general); also a point of time, an epoch—hence an opportunity, a seasonable time.

*Tempore*, et in *tempore advenis*, You come seasonably, and at the very nick of time.—*Ter.*

*Tempestas*, atis, *f.*, an entire space of time—a period, a season (*καιρός*).

## PHRASES.

Eng. *Lastly*;

„ *I hide this from you*;

„ *To make great demands*;

Lat. *At the last*, ad extremum.

„ *I hide you this*.

„ *To demand great things*.

## EXERCISE XI.

1. The wise man will teach his sons justice, frugality, temperance, (and) fortitude. 2. I hide these things from Alcibiades. 3. Minerva instructed Cicero in all accomplishments (arts). 4. Catiline instructed the young men in wicked deeds. 5. Philosophy has taught us all things. 6. My son has not concealed these things from me. 7. I did not conceal from you the conversation of Ampius. 8. They are ridiculous who teach others what they themselves have not tried. 9. We ought not to conceal our opinion from our friends. 10. Porcius Cato was asked his opinion. 11. The Latin legions, by long association, had been made-familiar-with (*edocere*) the military tactics (*militia*) of the Romans. 12. Cicero, by means of (*per*) the ambassadors, had been taught everything. 13. He demanded of the parents a price for (*pro*) the burial of their children. 14. They demanded from him the statue of Ceres and Victory. 15. The people demanded corn of me. 16. This, lastly, I particularly ask of you. 17. No one will ask you my age. 18. (For) nothing beyond do I importune the gods—nor do I make greater demands of my powerful friend.

<sup>1</sup> *Magnopere*.

<sup>2</sup> *Flagito*: see Phrases.

## XII.—DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE—(continued).

- A § 245. *Factitive Accusative*.—Verbs signifying to make or appoint, to name, to reckon or esteem, and the like, take after them a double Accusative—one of the Object and the other of the Predicate to that object (*Factitive Acc.*): as,

Ancum Martium rēgem.—Liv. *Ancus Martius king.*

Cicēronem ūniversa civitas cōsulem (*Fact. Acc.*) dēclārāvit, *The whole state declared Cicero consul.*—Cic.

Rōmulus urbem ex nōmine suo Rōmam (*Fact. Acc.*) vōcāvit, *Romulus called the city Rome from his own name.*—Eutr.

Contempsit Sicūlos, non duxit (eos) hōmīnes (*Fact. Acc.*), *He despised the Sicilians; he did not take them for human beings.*—Cic.

Λ Obs. The *Factitive Accusative* becomes a *Predicative Nominative* after the *Passive* of the above verbs: see § 232.

- Δ § 246. *Transitive Verbs compounded with trans and circum*, as *transjicio*, *transduco*, *transporto*, to carry across, and *circumdūco*, to lead around, take after them a double Accusative, one of the person, and the other of the thing crossed: as,

Agēsilaus Hēllespontum cōpias trājēcit, *Agessilaus carried his troops across the Hellespont.*—Nep.

Hannibal nōnāgiuta mīllia pēditum Ibērum trādūxit, *Hannibal carried ninety thousand foot-soldiers across the Iberus.*—Liv.

Pompēius Roscillum omnia sua praesidia circūdūxit, *Pompeius led Roscillus round all his entrenchments.*—Caes.

Obs. 1. In such cases one Accusative is governed by the Verb, and the other by the Preposition in composition.

Obs. 2. In the *Passive* one of the two Accusatives remains: as,  
Major multitudo Germanōrum Rhēnum transduclitur, *A greater multitude of Germans is carried across the Rhine.*—Caes.

## SYNONYMS

- Δ 1. Dux, dūcis, m. and f., a leader, a general:

Dux grēgis, the ram.—Virg.

Dux armenti, the bull.—Ov.

Ductor, dūis, m., a guide:

Ductor dūcum, a guide for the chiefs, i.e. commander-in-chief.—Sen.

Imperātor, dūis, m., a commander or emperor. When used in reference to a general it followed his name; when used of the Caesars it preceded it (see St. L. Gr. 937). M. T. Cicēro Imperātor. Imperātor Augustus.

- Δ 2. Occāsio, ōnis, f., an opportunity offered by chance to undertake anything, used in general sense. Opportūnitas, ūis, f., convenience of time, place, or any circumstance whatever enabling one to undertake anything with facility and a good prospect of success:

Opportūnitas temporis, convenience of time.—Cic.

Opportūnitas loci, the favourable nature of the position.—Caes.

2. *Hostis*, is, m. and f., anciently the same as *p̄rēgrinus*, a foreigner, hence, public or foreign enemy in war. *Imp̄ius*, i, m., a private, personal, foe; also used properly to express an enemy of his country.
- Omnibus rēpublicae inimicis esse me acerrimum hostem prae me fero, I openly declare myself a most untiring foe to all enemies of the commonwealth.—Cic.
- Adversarius*, i, m., a generic term for an opponent whether in the field, a court of justice, or in politics; an adversary, a resisting foe.
3. *Dūco*, xi, etum, 3, to lead. *Ducto*, avi, ātum, 1, frequent. of *duco*: to have the lead of (troops): often equivalent to deceive, delude, lead by the nose, in a bad sense:
- Dūcente [not dūctante] deo, Under the guidance of the god.—Virg.
4. *Nōmen*, inis, n., the name of the gens to which a man belonged. *Praenōmen*, inis, n., the name which marked the individual. *Cognōmen*, inis, n., the family name. *Agnōmen*, inis, n., a supplementary name, a name given on account of some exploit. In *Lūcius Cornēlius Scipio Africānus*, *Lucius* is the praenomen, *Cornelius* the nomen, *Scipio* the cognomen, and *Africanus* the agnomen.
5. *Beātus*, a, um, expresses a contented and happy condition of mind, as that of a man who desires no more than he has. *Fēlix*, icis, fortunate, happy, prosperous. *Fortūnātus*, a, um, favoured of fortune:
- Si est enim quod dēsit, ne beātus quidem est, For if he want anything, a man cannot indeed be happy.—Cic.
- Si quis rēpublicae sit infelix, felix esse non pōtest, If a man bring misfortune on his country, fortunate he cannot be.—Cic.
- O fortūnātos nimium, O too highly favoured (husbandmen!)—Virg.
6. *Incendo*, di, sum, 3; *accendo*, di, sum, 3; *inflammo*, avi, ātum, 1; all signify to set on fire, to burn. *Incendēre*, from within, to destroy by burning: *accendēre*, at a single point, to set light to, to kindle a lamp or candle. *Inflammare*, to put into a blaze either from within or without. *Succendo*, si, sum, 3, to set on fire from beneath, as a funeral pile. *Crēmo*, avi, ātum, 1, to destroy by burning: *concrēmo*, to reduce to ashes.

## PHRASES.

Eng. Time for an action, etc.;

Lat. Time of an action, tempus actionis  
also tempus agendi, or ad agendum." Not only, but even;  
" Much;" Non solum, sed (vērū) etiam.  
" (Often) Many things, multa.

## EXERCISE XII.

1. The Romans appointed Q. Fabius general. 2. All the centuries declared Sulla (to be) consul. 3. They call the convenient time for an action, an opportunity. 4. They decide (*iudico*) Antonius to be not only not consul, but even an enemy. 5. He considers him (to be) an enemy. 6. He called the city Antioch from (*ex*) the name of his father Antiochus. 7. You will not rightly call (*put. perf.*) him happy who possesses (*partic.*) much. 8. They appoint Licinius Calvus tribune of the soldiers. 9. They appointed patricians as tribunes of the soldiers with consular power. 10. He leads his army over the Rhone. 11. Caesar sets the town on fire and leads his army across the Loire. 12. Caesar leads the cavalry over the bridge. 13. He had conveyed a large part of the cavalry over the river. 14.

The Helvetii had already conveyed three parts<sup>1</sup> of their forces across the river. 15. In those ships he transported his soldiers over the river. 16. Ho (*eho*)! slave (*puer*), lead that (*iste*) man round these rooms.

<sup>1</sup> When the numerator of a fraction | the ordinal for the denominator is only one less than the denominator | often omitted.

### XIII.—ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE AND ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.

§ 247. Names of Towns and small Islands are used in the Accusative without a Preposition after Verbs signifying *Motion towards*. For examples, see § 259 in the Appendix on the Construction of names of Towns.

§ 249. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are put in the Accusative, answering to the questions—*How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How thick? as*,  
Pædem e villâ adhuc egressi non sumus, *As yet we have not stirred one foot from the (country) house.*—Cic.  
Quaedam bestiolæ unum diem vivunt, *Some insects live but one day.*

—Cic.  
Pæicles quadrāginta annos præfuit Athēnis, *Pericles governed Athens for forty years.*—Cic.

Campus Marāthon ab Athēnis circiter millia passuum dēcem abest, *The plain (of) Marathon is distant from Athens about ten thousand paces.*—Nep.

Milites aggrem lātum pēdes trēcentos triginta, altum pēdes octōginta extruxerunt, *The soldiers constructed a mound 330 feet wide and 80 feet high.*—Caes.

(Without the Adj. *latus, altus*, the Genitive would have been used: see § 274.)

§ 250. The Accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an Interjection: as,

*Me caecum*, qui haec ante non viderim, *My blindness not to have seen this before!*—Cic.

*O vim maximam erroris*, *O the enormous power of error!*—Cic.

*Eheu mē miserum*, *O hapless me!*

*Pro deorum atque hominum fidem!* *In the name of gods and men!*

—Cic.

*En quattuor aras*, *Lo, four altars.*—Virg.

Obs. 1. But *en* and *ecce* are quite as frequently found with the Nominative: as,  
*Ecce tuae litterae* (sc. *sunt*) *de Varrone*, *There is your letter about Varro.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. *Hei* and *vae* are construed with the Dative: as,

*Vae victis*, *Woe to the conquered.*—Liv.

*Hei misero mihi*, *Woe to wretched me.*—Ter.

1. Opp  
Co

from

2. Am

Ampl

plus

Ne

eleg

No

more.

3. Trah

Tign

build

Ne

The p

Ut

sailor

4. Ferm

near

Paen

expre

1. D

city of

woman

August

tant fro

nearly

from th

cubits

were th

rate spe

erected

guardia

written

15. Em

gods, a

from w

man!

1 Ut al

always R

SYNONYMS.

1. Oppugno, avi, atum, to assault. Obsideo, edi, essum, 2 (ob sideo), to besiege: Conscilium ab oppugnanda urbe ad obsidendam versis, Their plan having changed from an assault upon the city to besieging it.—Liv.

2. Amplius, magis, plus, are all comparatives, and imply superiority. Amplius is used of extent, quantity, duration. Magis relates to quality, and plus to number.

Nec videtur quicquam magis elegans, Nor does anything appear to be more elegant.—Cic.

Noctem non amplius unam falle dolo, Delude her for just one night, no more.—Virg.

3. Trabs, trābis, f., or Trābos, is, f., is a long narrow beam, like a pole. Tignum, i, n., one shorter and thicker, like a block. The cross-beams of a building are trābes:

Nexae trābes aere, Cross-beams bracketted together with brass.—Virg.

The poets sometimes use trabs of a ship:

Ut trābe Cypriā Myrtōum pavidus nauta sēct mēre, That he, as a craven sailor, should, in a bark of Cyprian timber, plough the Myrtoan deep.—Hor.

4. Fērmē and Fērē are used to save the accuracy of an expression, like our about, near about (less or more), as nearly as can be stated. Prōpē is nearly, not quite. Paenē is opposed to plānē; almost. Both Prōpē and Paenē often qualify an expression, which may be hyperbolic.

PHRASE.

Eng. He used to do it;

Lat. (often) Faciebat. x

EXERCISE XIII.

1. Dionysius was tyrant of Syracuse thirty-eight years. 2. The city of Troy was besieged for ten years because of (ob with acc.) one woman. 3. The elephant is said to live two hundred years. 4. Augustus used to sleep not more than seven hours. 5. Zama is distant from Carthage a journey of five days. 6. Saguntum was situated nearly a mile from the sea. 7. He carried a rampart, six feet high, from the camp to the water. 8. Antiöchus constructed a moat six cubits deep (and) twelve wide. 9. Those armed-with-a-spear (hastātī) were the first line (acies), distant from each other (inter se) a moderate space. 10. Upright beams, distant from each other two feet, are erected in the earth. 11. O wicked man! 12. O wolf, excellent guardian, as the saying is, for the sheep! 13. O the affectionately written letter of Brutus! 14. O once happy Roman generals! 15. Eminent man and distinguished citizen! 16. In the name of the gods, a disgraceful crime! 17. Ah luckless man! 18. Woe is me; from what hopes have I fallen! 19. O abandoned and audacious man! 20. Woe is me, I am afraid to speak!

<sup>1</sup> Ut alunt, or quod alunt. The phrase! the sentence—it never stands first. always follows one or more words in | <sup>2</sup> Genitive.

## XIV.—ACCUSATIVE OF CLOSER DEFINITION.

Δ § 251. The Accusative is used, especially by the Poets, after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to indicate the part of the Subject specially referred to: as,

Hannibal, *adversum fémur graviter ictus*, cecidit, *Hannibal fell severely wounded in the fore part of the thigh.*—Liv.

Equus tremít artus, *The horse trembles in its limbs.*—Virg.

Fémur nuda brachia et lacertos, *Women with both the lower and upper part of the arm bare.*—Tac.

Trájectus pēdes, *With the feet pierced.*—Virg.

Obs. In prose, the Ablative is more generally used: as,

Pēdibus aeger, *Diseased in the feet.*—Cic.

Capti oculis talpae, *Moles maimed in the eyes (i.e. blind).*—Virg.

Δ § 252. Sometimes, by a Greek idiom, a Passive Verb is used in a middle sense, and made to govern an Accusative: as, induor, amictor, *I clothe, put on myself*; exuor, *I strip off (from myself)*; cingor, accingor, *I gird on myself*; and the like: as,

Inútile ferrum cingitur, *He girds on the bootless steel.*—Virg.

Andrógei gáleam induitur, *He puts on the helmet of Androgeus.*—

Obs. On this principle must be explained Horace's,

Suspensi lóculos tábúlamque lacerto, *With their satchels and tablets swinging at their elbow. (Suspensi, having fastened to themselves: ἀντηρμένοι.)*

Δ § 254. The Accusative is used adverbially in the expressions magnam (maximam) partem, *for the most part*; vicem, *on account of*; sēcus, *sex*; cōtēra, *in other respects*; nihil, *not at all*: as,

Suēvi maximam partem lacte atque pēdore vivunt, *The Suevi for the most part live on milk and cattle.*—Cic.

Tuam vicem saepe dōleo, *I often grieve on your account.*—Cic.

Libērōrum cāpitum virile sēcus ad dēcem millia capta, *Ten thousand free persons of the male sex were taken.*—Liv.

Vir cōtēra ēgrēgius, *A man excellent in other respects.*—Liv.

## SYNONYMS.

Δ 1. Ico, 1ci, ictum, 3, properly to strike, to reach with a blow, chiefly by throwing; especially ictēre foedus, to strike a treaty. Verbēro, āvi, ātum, 1, to beat, batter. Fērio (percuasi, percussus), 4, to strike by a violent blow:

Arīste mūrū fērire, *To strike a wall with the ram.*

Percūtio, usui, usum, 3 (supplies the deficiencies of fērio), to shake with a blow, strike violently:

Fulmine percūti, *To be shaken by lightning, by a thunderbolt, whereas fulminectus means only, reached or struck by lightning.*—Cic.

Lēviter ictus is more correct than lēviter percussus.

ION.

the Poets,  
indicate the

Iannibal fell

g.  
the lower and

Virg.

e Verb is  
accusative:  
I strip off  
and therg.  
ulrogueus.—and tablet  
tees: amp-expres-  
vicem, on  
, not at

vi for the

ic.  
thousandbrowing;  
to beat,

e with on

fulmine

1. Brachium (ῥαχίον), *i. m.*, the arm; especially, from the elbow to the wrist. Laceratus, *i. m.*, the arm from the shoulder to the elbow:

Laudat brachia et mēdos mēdia plus parte laceratos, *He praises her arms, and the upper part bore more than half way down.*—Ov.

Ulna, *ac, f.*, the whole arm from the shoulder to the hand, serving as a measure —an ell. Cūbitus, *i. m.*, the elbow.

2. Saucio, *āvi, ātum, 1*, to wound in any way. Vulnēro, *āvi, ātum, 1*, to wound by cut or thrust.

Servi nonnulli vulnērāntur, ipse Rubrius in turbā sauciātur, *Some of the slaves are wounded, Rubrius himself gets a blow in the crowd.*—Sall. fr.

Laedo, *ei, sum, 3*, to hurt in any way.

3. Glādius, *i. m.*, the usual term for a sword. Ensīs, *is, m.*, rather a poetical term. Livy once uses it in the same sense as glādius. Glādius, *is, m.*, a broad, cutting sword. Sica, *ae, f.*, a dagger, (†scāre) generally the unfair secret weapon of the assassin. Pūgio, *ōnis, m.* (pungēre), a dagger or short sword, often worn by magistrates and others.

4. Vincūlum, *i. n.* (vincire), anything that binds:

Linea vincūla, *ties made of flax.*—Virg.

Cātēna, *ae, f.*, an iron or metal chain:

Stridor tractae cātēnae, *The rattling of a chain trailing along (the floor).*—Virg.

Lāqueus, *i. m.*, a string with a running knot, or halter:

Collum in lāqueum insēre, *To put the neck into a halter.*—Cic.

5. Amīcio, *teul, ictum, 4*, to clothe, used exclusively of outer garments. Induo, *ui, ātum, 3*, to put or draw on (clothes). Vestio, *ivi, itum, 4*, of clothes for the protection or ornament of the body:

Pallium quo amictus, soccos quibus indutus est, *The cloak in which he was enveloped, and the shoes which he had put on.*—Cic.

## PHRASES.

Eng. The same as;

- " His leg was struck;  
" I especially care for this;  
" To make this boast;  
" Twice or thrice, not more;  
" Two or three times, or more;  
" This is for the most part;  
" Many of the male sex;

Lat. The same which.

- " He was struck (as to) his leg (acc.).  
" I care for this alone (unum).  
" To boast this (neut).  
" Bis terve.  
" Bis terque. [(acc.).  
" This is (as to) the most part  
" Many the male sex (acc.).

## EXERCISE XIV.

1. He was struck with a stone on the right knee. 2. He was wounded in both arms<sup>1</sup> by the downfall of the bridge. 3. Apollo, with his fair<sup>2</sup> shoulders clothed with a cloud. 4. Lo the Trojan boy, with his honourable head uncovered! 5. With his temples still bare, to his side he had girt (accingo) his sword. 6. The Trojan women stand round with their hair dishevelled, according to custom. 7. Seven virgins clothed themselves in a long robe. 8. He puts on the robe that he had before put off. 9. She had one foot free<sup>3</sup> from fetters. 10. He encourages his companions, and puts on his armour. 11. He returned clad in the spoils<sup>4</sup> of Achilles. 12. I especially remind you of this one thing.<sup>5</sup> 13. In other respects<sup>6</sup> I agree with Crassus (lat.). 14. Those admonitions<sup>7</sup> which we get from nature. 15. She is able

to make the same boast as Cyrus. 16. He attacks him (while) making this boast. 17. This one thing you aim at, to avert from the state the efforts of Antonius. 18. I received letters from you not more than two or three times at-most.\* 19. Our speech consists in great part of iambs (*abl.*). 20. You are angry on our account. 21. A multitude of people of the male and female sex. 22. Bocellus in other respects was ignorant of the Roman people (*gen.*).

- <sup>1</sup> Sing. *Both*, *uterque*.  
<sup>2</sup> *Candens*, *ntis*: say, clothed (*anilet-*  
*us*) as to his fair shoulders.  
<sup>3</sup> *Exūta* erat, with acc.  
<sup>4</sup> *Exūtiās* indūtus.

- <sup>5</sup> *Hoc* *anum*: St. L. G. 253.  
<sup>6</sup> *Cetera*.  
<sup>7</sup> Say, those (*things*) which we are un-  
*monished*.  
<sup>8</sup> *Summum*.

# XV.—CONSTRUCTION OF NAMES OF TOWNS.

§ 257. In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive, if the Substantive be of the First or Second Declension and Singular; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition: as,

*Rōmæ* Consules, *Athēnis* Archontes, *Carthāginis* Suffētes, sive iudices, quotannis creabantur, *At Rōmæ* Consule, *at Athēnis* Archōnē, *at Carthage* Suffētes, or judges, were elected annually.—Nep.

*Tibere* Rōmānū amo, *When at Tivoli* I am in love with Rome.—Hor.

*Thēbis*, *Argis*, *Ūlūbris*, *At Thebes*, *Argos* (*Argē*), *Ulnbrae*.—Hor.

*Dionysius* Cōrīnθi puēros docēbat, *Dionysius* taught boys at Corinth.—Cic.

§ 258. After the same manner are used the following Substantives: *dōmi*, at home; *hūmi*, on the ground; *rūre*, more frequently *rūri*, in the country; *militiāe*, *belli*, in the field: as,

*Vir dōmi* non solum sed etiam *Rōmæ* clārus, *A man* famous not only at home (in his own country) but also at Rome.—Liv.

*Non eādē dōmi* quae *militiāe* fortuna erat plēbi Rōmānæ, *The Roman commons* had not the same good fortune at home as in the field.—Liv.

*Vir dōmi* bellique fortissimus, *A man* most valiant at home and in the field.—Vell.

*Forte* evēnit ut *rūri* (or *rūre*) essēmus, *It so happened* that we were in the country.—Cic.

*Obs.* *Dōmi* is also used with *meae*, *tuæ*, *suae*, *nostrae*, *vestrae*, and *aliēnae*; but if any other Adjective or a Possessive Substantive is used with it, the preposition *in* is more common, as *in illā dōno*; *in dōno publico*; *in dōno Cæsaris*.

§ 259. In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without a preposition: as,



Curius primus éléphantos quátuor Rōmanū dñxit. *Curius first brought four elephants to Rome.*—Entr.

Pausaniam cum classe commūni Cyprium atque Hellespontum misērunt. *They sent Pausanias with the combined fleet to Cyprus and the Hellespont.*—Nep.

Obs. The poets use the same construction with the names of countries, and Substantives generally: as,

Itāliam vēnit, *To Italy he came.*—Virg.

Verba réfers aures non pervēnientia nostras, *Words thou repeatest which reach not to our ears.*—Ov.

§ 260. The Accusatives *dōmum*, home; and *rus*, to the country, have the same construction as Names of Towns: as,

Sēmel égressi, nunquam *dōmum* révertēre, *Having once gone abroad, they never returned home.*—Cic.

Ego *rus* ibo, atque ibi manēbo. *I will go into the country and remain there.*—Ter.

§ 261. In answer to the question *Whence?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative without a preposition: as,

Dionýsius Plātōnem *Āthēnis* arcessivit, *Dionysius sent for Plato from Athens.*—Nep.

Dēmātrātus, Tarquīnii régis pāter, Tarquīnios *Cōrintho* fugit, *Demetratus the father of King Tarquinius fled from Corinth to Tarquinii.*—Cic.

Obs. In the same way are used *dōmo*, from home; *rūre*, from the country.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Mōrior*, mortuus sum, 3, to die in any way. *Oppēto*, ivi, itum, 3 (with mortem sometimes expressed, but generally understood) is used of a death which might have been, but has not been, avoided, e.g. in battle, or in any hazardous enterprise:

Quels ante ōra pātum contigit oppētēre, *Whose happy lot it was to die in sight of their fathers.*—Virg.

*Occido*, cidi, cāsum, 3, properly to fall down, as from exhausted strength, used figuratively for to die. *Obeo*, ii, itum, 4, properly to go through (generally with mortem or some kindred word expressed, though it is sometimes understood), hence, to die.

2. *Cēlēber*, bris, bre, and *Inclýtus* (-itus), a, um (poet.), denote celebrity, but are generally used of things, not of persons. *Clārus*, a, um, illustris, e, and *uóblis*, e, denote distinction, as for birth or achievements. The *clārus* is celebrated for his deeds, the *illustris* for his rank and character, the *nóbilis* for his family connexions.

3. *Vivo*, vixi, victum, 3, to live, opposed to *mōri*.

*Vitam degēre*, to spend one's life:

Sēnex putat se annum vivēre posse, *The old man fancies he may live a year.*—Cic.

Quod rēliquum est vitæ in ōtio Rhōdi degam, *What remains of life I will spend in retirement at Rhodes.*—Cic.

1. *Sālūbris*, *e*, used of things only, *wholesome, healthy in a medical sense*. *Sālūtāris*, *e*, in the most general sense, *what tends to preserve health or fortune*. Of persons *serviceable, advantageous*:

*Civis bēnēficus et sālūtāris*, *A kind-hearted and serviceable citizen*.—Cic.

*Sālūtāris littera*, *The saving letter*, i. e. *the letter A*, being the first of the word *absolve*, which was written on the voting tablets for a man's acquittal.—Cic.

3. *Prōficeor*, *sectus eum*, 3 (*probably from facere*), to set out upon a journey. *Iter facere* and *peregrinari* to make the journey, travel. *Iter facere*, to travel either at home or abroad; *peregrinari* abroad only:

*Haec studia pernoctant nobiscum, peregrinantur, rusticantur*, *These pursuits abide with us at night, when travelling, and when in our country retreat*.—Cic.

## EXERCISE XV.

1. The library at Alexandria was formerly most famous.
2. The emperor Severus died (*deceit*) at York a very aged man.<sup>1</sup>
3. Tarquinius Superbus died at Cumae.
- Archimedes, a most distinguished mechanic, lived at Syracuse.
5. Artemisia, wife of Mausolus, made that (*ille*) noble sepulchre at Halicarnassus.
6. Timoleon overthrew from the foundations the citadel which Dionysius had fortified at Syracuse.
7. The most honourable abode for old age (*gen.*) was at Lacedaemon.
8. Quinctius determined to spend his life in the country.
9. The old man died at his own home.
10. The bodies of young men are more healthy on service than at home.
11. The mother of Darius assumed a mournful garb, and threw her body on the ground.
12. Ambassadors were sent to Athens.
13. The Jews were carried away captive to Babylon.
14. The consul Laevinus led his legions to Agrigentum.
15. M. Livius removed into the country and remained there many years.
16. They will return home after a few days.
17. He who now goes from the country of the Veneti (*Venetii*) to Neapolis crosses the Apennine mountains.
18. Timoleon sent for colonists from Corinth.
19. Caesar departed from Tarragona and came thence to Marseilles.
20. Pompey went from Luceria to Canusium, and thence to Brundisium.
21. He returned from the country to Rome.

<sup>1</sup> *Admōdum senex*.

## XVI.—GENITIVE AFTER SUBSTANTIVES—POSSESSIVE GENITIVE.

- § 263. *General Rule*.—The Genitive is used to denote the dependence of any one Substantive upon another: as,

*Bellum Pyrrhi*, *The war of or with Pyrrhus*.

*Simulatio amicitiae*, *The pretence of friendship*.

*Navis auri*, *A ship of*, i. e. *laden with, gold*.

(But a ship [*made*] of gold would be *navis aurea* or *navis ex auro facta*.)

- § 264. Hence the Genitive depends upon *causā*, *grātiā*, *ergō*, for the sake (of), which are Ablatives. The Genitive usually stands before these words: as,

sense. *Salva*  
ith or fortune.

en.—Cic.

the first of the  
equittal.—Cic.  
on a journey.  
eere, to travel

These pursuits  
retreat.—Cic.

s. 2. The  
Tarquinus  
ished me-  
olus, made  
overthrew  
fortified at  
2.) was at  
the country.  
young men  
of Darius  
a ground.  
re carried  
is legions  
y and re-  
a few  
(*Venetis*)  
a sent for  
gona and  
aceria to  
from the

SSIVE

ote the  
s,

o facta.)

ā, ergo.  
usually

*Voluptates omittuntur majorem voluptatum adipscentiarum causa,*  
*Pleasures are neglected for the sake of obtaining greater pleasures.—Cic.*

*Dolores suscipiuntur majorem dolorum effugientiarum gratia,*  
*Sufferings are submitted to for the sake of avoiding greater sufferings.—Cic.*

*Si quid contra alias leges hujus legis ergo factum est,*  
*If anything has been done against other laws for the sake of this law.—Cic.*

§ 265. The Genitive denotes the Possessor, or the person  
or thing whereto anything belongs :—

*Graves Cyclopum officinae,* *The heavy forges of the Cyclops.—Hor.*

*In umbris Heliconis oris,* *In the shady regions of Helicon.—Hor.*

§ 266. The Possessive Genitive is frequently used after  
the verb *sum*, when in English the word *property* (belonging  
to), *duty*, *mark*, *characteristic*, or the like, is expressed :—

*Omnia sunt victoris,* *All things are (the property) of the conqueror*  
(i. e. belong to the conqueror).—Liv.

*Militem est duci parere,* *It is (the duty) of soldiers to obey the general.*  
*Nihil est tam angusti animi quam amare divitias,* *Nothing is (the*  
*characteristic) of so petty a mind as the love of riches.—Cic.*

*Cujusvis hominis est errare,* *It is (the part) of any man to err.—Cic.*

*Obs.* This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns :  
thus we must say, *meum est*, *it is mine* or *my duty* ; *tuum est*, *it is thine* or  
*thy duty* ; not *mei*, *tui est*.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Dens*, i, m., *God, the Supreme Being.* *Divus*, i, m., generally a hero who after  
death received divine honours. *Nūmen*, inis, m. (from obsol. *nuo*), *the power*  
or *will of the god*, used by the poets for the divinity itself :

*Divus Caesar,* *The divinely-honoured Caesar.—Tac.*

*Aquarum nūmen Neptūnus,* *Neptune, the divinity presiding over water.—Ov.*

2. *Ēdūco*, xi, etum, 3, *to lead or draw out* :

*Cōpias in āiem ēdūcere,* *To lead forth an army to battle.—Nep.*

*Ēdūco*, āvi, ātum, 1, *to educate*, whether in a physical or moral sense. *Ērūdio*.

*Ivi*, itum, 4, *to free from ignorance, instruct.*

3. *Obēdio*, ivi, ātum, 4 [ob and audio], *to obey*, whether it be an equal, a superior,  
or an inferior ; to do what one is desired, from whatever motive, whether choice  
or necessity. *Pāreo*, ul, itum, 2, *to obey (habitually)*, esp. of obedience rendered  
to a master or a parent ; it is near akin therefore in meaning to *servire* :

*Jam dōmīti ut pāreant, nondum ut serviant,* *Already reduced to obedience,*  
*though not yet to actual servitude.—Tac.*

4. *Sūpēro*, āvi, ātum, 1, primarily *to surmount*, *to rise above*, then *to surpass* in  
any way : hence, *to conquer, subdue.* *Vinco*, vici, victum, 3 (probably equivalent  
to *vi sūpērare*), originally *to conquer in battle, to subdue resistance by force* ; *to*  
*surmount, surpass, physically or intellectually.* Hence *vincere*, as distin-  
guished from *sūpērare*, implies exertion, intellectual or physical, to conquer  
opposition : the former often denotes a mere temporary superiority, the latter  
a defeat more decisive and permanent.

## EXERCISE XVI.

1. Honour is the reward of valour. 2. Juno was the wife of  
Jupiter. 3. Helen was the cause of the Trojan war. 4. The

unlucky Phaëthon fell down from the chariot of the sun. 5. Riches are the incentives to (of) wicked deeds. 6. Pan is the god of Arcadia. 7. The father of the winds directs the ship. 8. Thebes became (the property) of the Roman people by the right of war. 9. Everything belonged to the enemy (*say*, was of the enemy, *plur.*). 10. It is (the duty) of a good shepherd to shear his sheep, not to flay (them). 11. As<sup>1</sup> it is the part of parents to educate their children well, so it is (the duty) of children to reverence (their) parents and obey them (*dat.*). 12. Do what it is your duty to do. 13. It is your-duty (*vestrum*) to determine what is (*subj.*) best for the state.<sup>2</sup> 14. It is your duty to provide that. 15. Antiochus, king of Syria, determined to take possession of Egypt. 16. The Romans, among the conditions of peace, demanded the surrender of Hannibal. 17. Orodes, the brother of Mithridates, took possession of the vacant sovereignty. 18. It belongs to a commander (*say*, is of a commander) to overcome not less by strategy (*consilium*) than by the sword. 19. Everything which belonged to the woman becomes the property of the husband (*vir*) under the name<sup>3</sup> of dower. 20. Your duty is to reckon nothing as (*pro*) certain.

<sup>1</sup> *As...so, ut...ita.*<sup>2</sup> *Dat.*<sup>3</sup> *Under the name, nōmine (abl.)*

## XVII.—PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

§ 269. The Genitive is used after Substantives, to denote the whole whereof a part is taken : as,

*Magna vis auri, A great quantity of gold.—Cic.*

*Mōdus tritici, A peck of wheat.—Cic.*

*Multaque pars mei vitabit Lybīnam, And an ample part of me shall evade the tomb.—Hor.*

§ 270. The Partitive Genitive is often found after the Neuter of Adjectives and Adjective Pronouns used substantively.

These Adjectives are :

*tantum, quantum, aliquantum,  
multum, plus, plurimum,  
nihil,\* minus, minimum,  
dimidium, paulum, reliquum.*

\* *Nihil* is however always a Substantive.

The Pronouns are :

*hoc, idem, illud, id,  
quidquam, aliquod, and quid.*

They are used as Substantives only in the Nominative and Accusative, and must not depend upon Prepositions : as,

5. Riches  
the god of  
8. Thebes  
right of war,  
the enemy,  
his sheep,  
lucate their  
nce (their)  
duty to do.  
(.) best for  
Antiochus,  
16. The  
rrender of  
possession  
er (say, is  
ium) than  
oman be-  
of dower.

*Pius virum, More of strength.*—Sen.

*Quidquam novi, Anything new.*—Cic.

*Nihil humanarum rerum, No human affairs.*—Cic

*Quantum incrementi Nilus capit, tantum spei in annum est, So much*  
*rise as the Nile undergoes, just so much hope is there for the harvest.*  
Sen.

§ 271. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Adverbs of Quantity,\* Place, or Time, used Substantively: as,

*Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum, Plenty of eloquence, little enough of wisdom.*—Sall.

*Ubinam gentium } Where in the world?—Cic.*  
*Ubi terrarum }*

*Eo miseriarum, To such a pitch of wretchedness.*—Sall.

*Postea loci, Afterwards.*—Liv.

*Inde loci, Thereupon.*—Lucr.

\* These Adverbs are:

satis,	enough.	abunde,	} abundantly.
parum,	too little.	assatum,	

§ 272. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Comparatives and Superlatives: as,

*Major juvenum, (Thou) elder of the youths.*—Hor.

*Maxime principum, Greatest of princes!*—Hor.

*Gracorum oratorum praestantissimi, The most eminent of Greek orators.*—Cic.

Obs. Instead of the Genitive, the Prepositions *ex, de,* and in certain cases *in,* inter, are used: as,

*Acerrimus ex omnibus nostris sensibus est sensus videndi, The keenest of all our senses is the sense of sight.*—Cic.

*Croesus inter reges opulentissimus, Croesus, wealthiest among kings.*—Sen.

§ 273. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Numerals, and Pronouns or Adjectives implying a number: as,

*Primi juvenum, First of the youths.*—Virg.

*Consulum alter, one of the two consuls.*—Liv.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Frumentum*, i, n., a general word for all manner of bread-corn. *Triticum*, i, n., wheat:

*Frumentum triticum, Corn consisting of wheat.*—Mart.

2. *Victus*, us, m., things to support life, sustenance.

*Vita*, ae, f., life:

*Vita brevis est, Life is short.*—Cic.

*Victus tenuis, Slender means of subsistence.*—Cic.

*Vita* also refers to the public, and *victus* to the private, *Mis* of a man:

*Splendidus non minus in vita quam in victu, Magnificent as much in his public as in his private life.*—Nep.

3. *Caro*, carnis, f., flesh in a general sense as opposed to bone; and as food. *Viscera*, um, n. (seldom viscus, *eria*, n. sing.), the fleshy substance between the skin and the bones, also in a limited sense the inner parts of the body.

4 Crēbar, bra, brum, frequent, in quick succession; rather too often than too seldom. Frēquens, tis, often occurring, frequent, common. Of an assembly crēber would imply that it was closely packed, inconveniently so. Frēquens, that it was full, numerously attended:

Frēquentes senātōres, the senators in great numbers.

Crēbri senātōres, the senators closely seated together (as from lack of room).

Crēbri hostes cādunt, The enemy fall thick.—Plaut.

Frēquens senātus convēnit, A full senate assembled.—Cic.

5. Pēcus, pēcōris, n., cattle collectively, a herd, particularly of small animals, as sheep, pigs, &c. Pēcus (rare in Nom. Sing.), pēcūdis, f., a single head of cattle, generally a sheep.

6. Antīquus, a, um, ancient, opposed to nōvus. Vētus, ōris, old, old-standing, opposed to rēcens:

Antīquus hōmo, a man of ancient times.

Vētus vinum, old wine.

Antīqui āmīci, friends of years gone by.

Vētēres āmīci, friends of many years' standing.

From the fact that what is old is generally cherished by us, antīquus is sometimes used, in the comparative degree, like canus:

Nihil antīquius āmīcitiā nostrā est, Nothing is more cherished than our friendship.—Cic.

## PHRASES.

Eng. Ten bushels a-piece;

" Their food consists of;

" A man of good disposition;

" Much, very much;

" The battle of Cannae;

" Abundance of wine;

Lat. Dēni mōdū.

" Consists in (followed by abl.).

" Prōbae indōlia, or prōbā indōlia.

" Multum, permultum, plurimum, with gen.

" The Cannensian battle, Pugna Cannensis.

" Vini afflitim, abundance, etc.

## EXERCISE XVII.

1. Fulvius Flaccus carried in triumph thirty-one pounds<sup>1</sup> of gold.
2. Caesar divided among the people (*dat.*), man-by-man, ten bushels a piece of corn, and the same number of (*tōtūdem*) pounds of oil.
3. The greater part of their food consists of milk, cheese, and flesh (*abl.*).
4. There is an infinite multitude of people (*homines*), very numerous buildings, and a great number of cattle.
5. A change of soil and climate has (in it) much pleasure.
6. Men look down upon and despise those in whom there is no (*nihil*) valour, no spirit, no sinew (*plu.*).
7. The colonists taken (*deduco*) to Capua found a considerable quantity of vessels (*vasculum*) of ancient workmanship (*opus*).
8. In truth there is (*inest*) very great strength.
9. He summons all in whom there was an abundance of audacity.
10. Because it was (now) the close of the day the battle was not commenced; but when (*ubi*) the greater part of the night had elapsed, they assail the camp of the enemy.
11. Sufficient renown was won by the battle of Cremona (use *adj.*).
12. The matter is in-hand (*in mētibz*), but you are far away (*longe gentium*).
13. Wherever these (*masc.*) are, there is the whole defence of the republic.
14. The matter is in the same position<sup>2</sup> in which you left it.
15. Tarquin, the seventh and likewise (*idem*) last of the Roman kings, conquered the Volsci

16. The most eminent<sup>3</sup> kings of the Persians were Cyrus and Darius the son of Hystaspes. 17. Cyrus left wine in abundance. 18. Caesar had obtained abundance of power and renown.

<sup>1</sup> *Secundo* (*indecl.*) *triginta unum*. <sup>2</sup> *Say, place* (*locus*). <sup>3</sup> *Excellent, ntis*.

## XVIII.—GENITIVE OF QUALITY.

† § 274. When a Substantive of quality, quantity, or description, has an Adjective joined with it, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative (see § 318): as,

(*Vir*) *priscae ac nimis dārae sēvēritātis*, *A man of antique and excessively rigorous severity*—Liv.

*Ager quātuor jūgerum*, *A farm of four acres*.—Liv.

*Vir maximi corpōris*, *A man of very great stature*.—Nep.

† *Obs.* The Genitive and Ablative can never be used without an Adjective: thus, *a man of talent* is *hōmo ingēnōsus* (not *hōmo ingēni*); but *a man of great talent* is *hōmo magni ingēni*.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Quōtīdie*, every day, is used of things that are daily repeated. In (*singūlos*) *dies*, daily, of those which from day to day are making advance.

*Quōtīdie vel pōtius in singūlos dies breviores littēras ad te mitto*, *I send you daily shorter letters, or rather which from day to day become shorter*.—Cic.

In *dies plūra agitabat*, *Day by day he kept revolving more schemes in his mind*.—Sall.

*Singūlis diēbus*, Every day of a finite determinate period.

2. *Rīpa*, ae, f., a bank, as of a river; *Littus* (*litus*), ōris, n., the shore of the sea. *Littus*, the line which separates the land from the sea—the strand. *Ōra*, ae, f., the coast (of the land).

*Circa ripam flūminis Pādī et littēra mārīs Adriatīcī*, *About the banks of the river Po and the shores of the Adriatic Sea*.

*Ōra Tuscorū quoque per litus extenditur*, *The coast of the Etrurians which stretches along the shore*.—Plin.

3. *Firmus*, a, um, strong from position, immovable, opposed to *lābans*, tis, tottering. *Vālidus*, a, um, strong, able to perform, opp. to *imbēcillus*, a, um, feeble, powerless. *Rōbustus*, a, um (*rōbur*), robust, sturdy, durable.

*Accūsator firmus et vērus*, *an unflinching and truthful accuser*.—Cic.

*Sōlidus*, a, um (*sōlum*), that which resists a shock, or the influence of time.

*Sōlida cōlūmna*, a solid column.—Cic.

4. *Rūmor*, ōris, m., intelligence of a dark uncertain kind, not authentic; a report that goes about. *Fama*, ae, f., a report of more importance and stability; information as opposed to ocular demonstration.

5. *Ēgrēgius*, a, um (*quāsi o grēge electus*), chosen out of the flock. *Eximius*, a, um (*ex emere*), select, set apart, eminent.

PE. L.—IV.

D

6. *Fides*, *f.*, the keeping of one's word; also the reliance which others place in us for the exercise of this quality, confidence, faith. *Fidēlitās*, *ātis*, *f.*, faithful adherence to those to whom we have once devoted ourselves, fidelity. *Fidūcia*, *ac*, *f.* (*fidus*), and *confidentia*, *ac*, *f.*, the trust we place in others, assurance. *Audācia*, *ac*, *f.*, daring (usu. of a bad kind), as contemning all danger or restraint.

*Quae bona sunt fidūciam faciunt, divitiarū audāciam*, Things that are good give rise to hopeful confidence, but riches to reckless daring.—Sen.

7. *Intelligo*, *exi*, *ectum*, 3, to understand by means of reflection. *Sentio*, *si*, *aum*, 4, to perceive, by the senses or the mind.

## PHRASES.

Eng. To accuse a man of this;

„ This word pleasure;

Lat. *Id aliquem accusare* (or as in Eng.).

„ *Luere tot voluptatibus* (Cic.).

## EXERCISE XVIII.

1. The ship of *Percus* is said to have been of unusual size.
2. The Athenians choose two generals: *Pericles*, a man of approved valour, and *Sophocles*.
3. Of this matter both *I* and *Calvisius*, a man of great judgment, accuse you daily.
4. There was between *Labienus* and the enemy a stream, of difficult passage (*abl.*), and with rugged banks (*abl.*).
5. Nor can all be of so firm and enduring a soul against unfavourable report.
6. *Socrates* had seen in his dreams a woman of extraordinary (*extrinſus*) beauty.
7. *Cimon*, the Athenian, was a man of the greatest liberality. He was a general of incredible valour, great in war, nor less in peace.
8. The slave of *Panopion* was a man of admirable fidelity.
9. There was in the Roman army *L. Marcius*, a young man of the highest spirit and ability.
10. The statue of *Augustus* was five feet and three quarters<sup>1</sup> (high).
11. We sometimes see clouds of the colour of fire (*igneus*).
12. They fortify the camp with a rampart twelve feet (in height).
13. The plunder of the town was made up of (suit) slaves (*nom.*) and things of trifling value.
14. You possess a man of remarkable modesty, well-known valour, and approved fidelity.
15. *Epicūrus* understands not what this word pleasure signifies (*subj.*).

<sup>1</sup> Three quarters, *dōdrans*, *ntis*, *m*.

## XIX.—GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

- § 276. Adjectives signifying capacity; also of desiring, experience, remembering, participating, fullness, and their opposites, govern a Genitive of the Object: as,

*Thēmistocles peritissimos belli navālis Athēnienses fecit*, *Themistocles made the Athenians the most skilful in naval war*.—Nep.

*Omnes immēnōrem bēnēficii odērunt*, All hate the man who is unmindful of kindness.—Cic.

*Ira impetens sui est*, Anger is incapable of governing itself.—Sen.



*Homo particeps est rationis et cogitationis, Man is partaker of reason and thought.—Cic.*

*Bestiæ rationis et orationis expertes sunt. Beasts are destitute of reason and speech.—Cic.*

*Plenum Bacchi pectus, A bosom (soul) full of Bacchus.—Hor.*

*Virtutis compos, Possessed of virtue.—Cic.*

The following Adjectives follow the above rule and govern the Genitive :—

1. <i>avarus,</i>	<i>covetous.</i>	<i>rudis,</i>	<i>unskilled.</i>
<i>avidus,</i>	<i>greedy.</i>	<i>insolens,</i>	} <i>unaccustomed.</i>
<i>avidus,</i>	<i>eager.</i>	<i>insolitus,</i>	
<i>avidus,</i>	<i>foul.</i>	<i>insuetus,</i>	} <i>master of.</i>
<i>studiosus,</i>	<i>disdainful.</i>	<i>compos,</i>	
<i>studiosus,</i>	<i>jealous.</i>	<i>impos,</i>	<i>not master.</i>
<i>invidus,</i>	} <i>fearful.</i>	<i>potens,</i>	<i>powerful.</i>
<i>timidus,</i>		<i>impotens,</i>	<i>not powerful.</i>
<i>pavidus,</i>	<i>liberal.</i>		
<i>liberalis,</i>	<i>lavish.</i>	3. <i>memor,</i>	<i>mindful.</i>
<i>profusus,</i>	<i>stingy.</i>	<i>immemor,</i>	<i>unmindful.</i>
<i>parcus,</i>		<i>curiosus,</i>	<i>careful.</i>
2. <i>peritus,</i>	<i>skilled.</i>	<i>incurius,</i>	<i>careless.</i>
<i>imperitus,</i>	<i>unskilled.</i>		
<i>consciens,</i>	<i>conscious.</i>	4. <i>particeps,</i>	<i>participating.</i>
<i>inscius,</i>	} <i>ignorant.</i>	<i>consors,</i>	<i>sharing.</i>
<i>nescius,</i>		<i>exors,</i>	} <i>not sharing.</i>
<i>præscius,</i>	<i>foreknowing.</i>	<i>expers,</i>	
<i>gnarus,</i>	<i>knowing.</i>	<i>inops,</i>	<i>weak.</i>
<i>ignarus,</i>	<i>not knowing.</i>		
<i>prudens,</i>	<i>foreseeing.</i>	5. <i>plenus,</i>	<i>full.</i>
<i>imprudens,</i>	<i>not foreseeing.</i>	<i>inanis,</i>	<i>empty.</i>

Verbal Adjectives in *az* follow the above rule: as, *edax*, devouring; *capax*, holding.

§ 277. Many Imperfect Participles become Adjectives, and, according to the above rule, govern the Genitive, though as Participles they govern the Case of their Verbs: thus *pätiens* (*adj.*) *lâborum* signifies *capable of enduring hardships*; *pätiens* (*part.*) *lâbores*, (*actually*) *enduring them*: as,

*Epaminondas adeo fuit veritatis diligens, ut ne joco quidem mentiretur, Epaminondas was so careful of truth that he would not tell a lie even in sport.—Nep.*

*Alieni appetens, sui profusus, Covetous of what belonged to others, lavish of his own.—Sall.*

SYNONYMS.

1. *Sænectas, title, f.; sænecta, ac, f. (poet.), old age, as a definite period of life. Sænium, i, n., infirm old age, dotage.*

2. *Vinum, i, n., wine. Merum, i, n., prop. an adjective with vinum understood, pure, unmixed wine. Tëmëtum, i, n., an old word for wine, probably for strong heady wine. From this is derived the Eng. word abstemious.*

*Ut scirent an tëmëtum olerent, hoc tum vino nomen erat, That they might know whether they smelt of temetum,—this was at that time the name for wine.—P.L.*

- 2 3. *Pérītus*, a, um, experienced, skilful. *Erūdītus*, a, um, educated, learned.  
*Erūdītus est qui omnibus bonis artibus pólītus est, An erudite man is one who is accomplished in all liberal sciences.—Cic.*  
*Doctus*, a, um, learned, accomplished.  
*Ilmo doctus vel etiam usu pérītus, A man learned or even skilful from experience.—Cic.*
4. *Álii*, others, different persons. *Cēteri*, all the others of the same class, the rest.  
*Rēliqui*, the others of whom some have been before named. *Álii* with *curcti* or *omnes*, is equivalent to *cēteri*.

## PHRASES.

Eng. The island of Pharos;	Lat. <i>Insula Phāros.</i>
" I did this as a boy;	" I a boy did this.
" He is the only one who does it;	" He alone does it.

## EXERCISE XIX.

1. The Romans were always eager for glory and greedy of renown.  
 2. Even now be mindful of coming old age. 3. Many men are more eager for contention than for truth. 4. The island of Pharos is not capable-of-containing a large city. 5. Pythagoras calls (those) eager (*stúliōsus*) for wisdom, philosophers. 6. That nation is by-no-means (*hauđquāquam*) negligent of religion (*pl.*). 7. He is able-to-take (*capax*) a great quantity<sup>1</sup> of food and wine. 8. The sun with intense heat (*ardor*) was scorching the bodies of the Gauls, by no means capable-of-enduring the heat (*aestus*, *pl.*). 9. You have a leader mindful of you, forgetful of himself. 10. The soldier, forgetful of difficulties, advances against the line of the enemy. 11. The nature of man is greedy of novelty. 12. We are by nature most tenacious of those things which we learnt as boys. 13. Pyrrhus was skilful in war, and eager for nothing except power.<sup>2</sup> 14. This animal, which we call man, is the only (one) out of so many kinds of living-creatures (*animans, ntis*) (which is) partaker of reason and thought; of which (things) all the rest (*n. pl.*) are destitute. + 15. Man, who is partaker of reason and speech, is more excellent than the beasts which are destitute of reason and speech. 16. Trebatius is come, a man very fond of both (*utroque*) of us.

<sup>1</sup> Say, much.<sup>2</sup> Nullius rei cupidus nisi imperii.

## XX.-- GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

## GENITIVE AFTER TO REMEMBER OR TO FORGET.

§ 278. Verbs signifying to remember or to forget usually govern the Genitive: as,

*Anīmus mēmīnit prætēritōrum, The mind remembers the past.—Cic.*

*Nec unquam obliviscar illius noctis Nor shall I ever forget that memorable night.—Cic.*

## 2. GENITIVE AFTER TO ACCUSE, CONDEMN, AND CONVICT.

§ 279. The Genitive is used after Verbs of *accusing, condemning, and acquitting*, to denote the Charge: as,

*Accusatus est prōditionis, He (Miltiades) was accused of treason.*—Nep.

*Caesar Dolābellam rēptundarum postulāvit, Caesar impeached Dolabella for extortion.*—Cic.

*Judex absolvit injuriarum eum, The judge acquitted the man of wrong-doing.*—Auct. ad Her.

*Absens prōditionis damnatus est, He (Theuistocles) was brought in guilty of treason in his absence.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. Instead of the Genitive we also find the Ablative with *de*: as,

*Appius de pēcūnis rēptundis est postulatus, Appius was impeached for extortion.*—Cic.

This is the only admissible construction in the case of *vis, violence*: as, *de vi postulare, damnare, &c.*

Obs. 2. The Genitive is also used with the Adjectives signifying *guilty, innocent, condemned*: as, *reus, noxius, innocuus, insens, manifestus*, and the like.

§ 280. The Genitive is sometimes used to denote the punishment to which a person is condemned: as,

*Cāpitis hōmīnem condemnare, To condemn a man to death.* Cic.

*Octupli damnari, To be condemned in an eight-fold payment.* Cic.

Obs. The Ablative is also used: as, *cāpite damnare.*—Cic.

## SYNONYMS.

*Facies*, *ei, f. (fācio)*, the natural make or aspect of the countenance, which always remains the same. *Vultus*, *ūs, m.*, the countenance, the looks. By the face, which is unchangeable, we distinguish one man from another; by the countenance, which is changeable, we learn the emotions of the mind:

*Rēcordāmini faciē, et illos ejus fletos simillātosque vultus, We remember his face, and those features in it which were feigned and assumed.*—Cic.

*Facies* is however sometimes used for the whole figure.

3. *Mēmīni*, 3 (= *in mēmōria tēno*), denotes a state of mind. *Rēmīniscor*, *n. perf. 3*; and *Rēcōrdor*, *ātus sum, 1*; *I remember*, denote an act of the mind. The first implies that a thing is retained in the mind without having been forgotten, the two last that it is recalled after being driven from one's thoughts. *Rēmīnisci* denotes the act as momentary; *Rēcōrdari* denotes it as of some duration—to dwell on a subject recalled to mind.

3. *Pēriculū, i, n. (Gr. πείρα)*, properly a trial; hence, danger.

*Fac pēriculū in littēris, Test him in letters.*—Ter.

As however the issue of a trial is generally doubtful it came to signify risk or danger.

*Discrimen*, *ims, n. (discerno)*, prop. a distinction or difference. Its special meaning is, a critical conjuncture, a turning point; whereas *pēriculū* means risk or peril which determines a man's fate.

In *pēriculū* ad *discrimen* vōcari, *To be called to danger, and indeed to a crisis.*—Cic.

2. **Prisctinus**, a, um, *former, olden*: used of things which do not decay from age.  
**Priscus**, a, um, *ancient, olden, of former time, by-gone*, used of things which no longer exist.

*Indulata et prisca verba, Words old fashioned and obsolete.—Cic.*

*Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit, This single thing was wanting to maintain the former good-fortune of Caesar.—Caes.*

**Priscus** is moreover a respectful word—speaking of a former age as worthy of honour; a sacred, primitive age, as opposed to the fashion of the day.

**Prisco** more, *in the good old style.*

3. **Faciinus**, ōris, n. (*fācio*), *a bold during action*, generally in a bad sense, unless joined with a qualifying adjective.

*Ad faciinus detecti, chosen for a daring deed.—Cic.*

*Præclari facinoris famam quaerit, He seeks the renown of some illustrious deed.—Sall.*

**Scelus**, ōris, n., *guilt, wickedness.*

*Faciinus est vinciri Rōmānum civem—scelus verberari, That a Roman citizen should be bound is an outrage—that he should be scourged is a crime.—Cic.*

**Flagitium**, i, n., *a disgraceful crime; as, adultery.*

## PHRASES.

Eng. *To condemn to death;*  
 „ *In his absence;*  
 „ *Sorrow for an offence;*

Lat. *To condemn of the head (cōpitis).*  
 „ *Absens.*  
 „ *Sorrow of an offence, penitential*  
*detecti.*

## EXERCISE XX.

1. I remember both the voice and the features of my father, the great Anchises. 2. All forgot their wives and children, nor did they remember the war and (its) dangers. 3. A good man forgets all injuries. 4. Let him remember both the old<sup>1</sup> disaster of the Roman people, and the ancient<sup>2</sup> courage of the Helvetii. 5. He himself will acknowledge, and with some grief call to mind,<sup>3</sup> his crimes. 6. I remember human weakness. 7. The mind remembers the past, it perceives the present, it foresees the future. 8. It is the characteristic<sup>4</sup> of folly to discover the faults of others, to be forgetful of its own. 9. He was accused of murder, and was condemned by the judges to death. 10. Themistocles in his absence was judged-guilty-of<sup>5</sup> treachery. 11. We condemn soothsayers either for folly or for falsehood. 12. Coelius the judge acquitted of injury (*pl.*) him who had wronged the poet Lucilius. 13. These benefits you have from me whom you accuse of treachery. 14. The senate neither acquitted the king of that crime nor convicted him of it. 15. The magistrate condemns them in their absence to a capital punishment.

<sup>1</sup> Vetus, ōris.

<sup>2</sup> Recordor.

<sup>3</sup> Pristinus.

<sup>4</sup> Proprius (*neut.*).

<sup>5</sup> Damno, ōvi, ātum, 1.

## XXI.—GENITIVE AFTER VERBS—(continued).

## 3. GENITIVE OF PRICE OR VALUATION.

§ 281. The Genitive is also used with Verbs to denote *Price* or *Valuation* when not definitely expressed, but indicated by an Adjective of quantity; as *tanti, quanti, plaris, minoris*: as,

*Quanti Chrysogonus docet, At what price does Chrysogonus give lessons?*—Juv.

*Plaris, minoris, vendere, To sell for less or more.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. But a definite price is expressed with the Ablative: see § 316; and even the Ablatives *magno, parvo, plurimo, minimo*, &c. are of frequent occurrence.

Obs. 2. In the same manner are used the Genitives *flocci, pili, nauci, assis*, to denote that a thing is of *no value at all*: especially in the phrases *flocci, pili facere, pendere*, &c., "*not to care a straw for.*"

## 4. GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF FEELING.

§ 282. The Personal Verbs *misereor, miseresco, to pity*; and the Impersonals *miseret, miserescit, miseretur, it causes pity*; *piget, it vexes*; *poenitet, it repenteth*; *pudet, it causes shame*; *taedet, pertaesum est, it causes weariness*, govern the Genitive of the cause of the emotion: as,

*O virgo, miserrere mei, O maiden, have pity on me!*—Ov.

*Me piget stultitiae meae, I am vexed at my folly.*—Cic.

*Nunquam suscepti negotii Atticum pertaesum est, Atticus never tired of a business he had taken in hand.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. With the Impersonals mentioned above, the Subject of the feeling is put in the Accusative: see § 211.

Obs. 2. *Miserror*, and *commiseror* to *commiserate* follow the regular usage of transitive Verbs and govern an Accusative.

## 5. GENITIVE WITH INTEREST AND REFERT.

§ 283. The Genitive is used with the Impersonal Verbs *interest* and *refert, it is of advantage, importance* [rarely with the latter], to denote the Person to whom a thing is of *importance or benefit*: as,

*Quid Milonis intererat interficere Clodium, What advantage was it to Milo that Clodius should be slain?*—Cic.

*Refert compositionis, It is of importance for the right arrangement of words.*—Quint.

Obs. 1. This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns, the Adjective forms *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, being used instead: as,

*Quid tua id refert, What matters that to you?*—Ter.

*Vestra interest commilitones, It is your concern, fellow-soldiers.*—Tac.

Obs. 2. *Refert* is generally used absolutely, very rarely with the Genitive, but less rarely with *mea, tua*, &c.

## 6. GREEK GENITIVE.

§ 284. The Genitive is occasionally used after Verbs and Adjectives of Separation or Removal:

*Dēſine mollium tandem quērēlarum, Cease at length from unmanly repinings.*—Hor. (Gr. παύσθαι ῥόδων.)

*Scēlēris pūrus, Pure from guilt.*—Hor. (Gr. καθαρὸς ἀδικίας.)

*Sōlūtus ōpērum, Released from toil.*—Hor. (Gr. ἀλευμένος πόρων.)

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Emo, emi, emptum, 3, to buy.*

*Bene aut male emere, To buy cheap or dear.*—Cic.

*Emere dimidio cārius, To buy too dear by half.*—Cic.

*Mercor, ūtus sum, 1, properly to buy goods (from merx), to trade.*

*Præſenti pēcūnā, vel Gracā fide, mercari, to trade for ready money.*

*Nundīnor, ūtus sum, 1 (Nundīnae, a market held at Rome every ninth day: nōnus dies), to buy or sell publicly, as at a fair.*

2. *Mancipium, 1, n., Servus, 1, m., and Fāmulus, 1, m., all denote a slave, one who is not free. Mancipium, as a saleable commodity. Servus, as one politically inferior and subservient. Fāmulus, fem. fāmula, as a family possession, a part of the household.*

3. *Hōnestus, a, um, honourable, virtuous. Hōnōrātus, a, um, having received honours.*

*Qui hōnōrem et ſententiis et ſuffrāgis hæptus est, is mihi et hōnestus et hōnōrātus vidētur, He who has obtained distinction by the consent and suffrages of the people seems to me to be both an honourable and an honoured man.*—Cic.

1. *Misēreor, ertus sum, 2, to be moved by a feeling of compassion to acts of sympathy.*

*Misērari, ūtus sum, 1, to feel compassion. to pity a man's misfortunes. Misēresco, 3, is used by the poets for misēreri. By them also misēreri and misēri are sometimes used in the same sense. (But miseror takes acc.)*

5. *Tueor, itus sum, 2, to defend or protect against possible danger, in opposition to negligo, cxi, etum, 3. Dēfendo, di, sum, 3, to defend from an actual attack in opposition to dēsēro, ui, ritum, 3. Those who are incapable of acting for themselves have tūtōres, those whose interests are at stake, dēfensōres. The tuens acts from care and love, to ward off the possible approach of danger. The dēfensens acts with zeal and strength, to surmount a danger already present.*

## EXERCISE XXI.

1. For how much did you buy this horse? Certainly for more than I wished. 2. No amount of silver and gold is to be valued (*æstimanda est*) at a higher rate than virtue. 3. He values at a low rate his father's advice, and cares not a straw for the tears of his mother. 4. The father, who was avaricious, said "I can buy a slave for less." "Buy him," said Aristippus, "and you will then have two." 5. Canius, a covetous and wealthy man, bought the gardens for as much as Pythius wished. 6. To think (*facere*) that which seems useful of more value than what (seems) virtuous is most disgraceful. 7. I shall never repent of my wish, I repent of my resolution. 8. It is incredible how (*quam*) I am weary (*subi.*) of the business. 9. We pity those who, in their absence, have been condemned to death. 10. Pity troubles so great, pity a soul bearing

things undeserved! 11. This is not only to my interest, but also to your own. 12. What does it concern him where you are (*sibi*)? 13. It concerns the magistrates to defend the good, to punish the bad. 14. This seems to have concerned them rather than you.

XXII.—DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

1. DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE.

(*Dativus Commōdi or Incommōdi.*)

§ 288. The Dative may be used after any kind of Verb soever, to signify *for*, *for the good of*: as,

*Dōmus dōmūis aedificātur, non mūrībus, A house is built for its owners, not for the mice.*—Cic.

*Non schōlae sed vitae discimus, We learn not for the school, but for life.*—Sen.

*Non solum nāhis divites esse vōlūmus, We wish not to be rich for ourselves only.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. When *for* signifies in defence of, in behalf of *pro* must be used: as, *mōri pro patriā, to die for one's country*; *dicere pro aliquo, to speak for any one* (i. e. in behalf of any one).

Obs. 2. The Dativus Commōdi is also used after Adjectives: see § 298.

§ 289. Hence some Intransitive verbs, which usually do not govern any case, are constructed with a Dative to express that the action is done with reference to something or somebody. Thus *vāco, to be free*, signifies with the Dative, *to have leisure for a thing, to devote oneself to it*; *nūbo, to cover or veil*, signifies with the Dative, in reference to a woman, *to cover herself or put on the veil for a man*, hence *to marry*; *supplicō, to be a suppliant*, signifies with the Dative *to supplicate, to implore a person*: as,

*Philosophiae semper vāco, I always find leisure to study philosophy.*—Cic.

*Vēnus nupsit Vulcāno, Venus married Vulcan.*—Cic.

*Caesari pro to libentissime supplicābo, I will most willingly supplicate Caesar for you.*—Cic.

Obs. Of course *nūbo* is used only of a woman marrying.

2. DATIVUS ETHICUS.

§ 290. Sometimes the Dative (especially in the case of the Personal Pronouns *mīhi, tibi, sibi, nobis, vōbis*) is used to signify that the matter spoken of is regarded with interest (*ἰδίῳ*) by some person: as,

*Quid mīhi Celsus agit, How does my friend Celsus?*—Hor.

*Hic Marius veniet tibi origine parvā, Here shall come your Marius of stock obscure.*—Sil.

Obs. The Dativus Ethicus is a more delicate shade of the Dativus Commōdi.

## SYNONYMS.

- At 1. *Patris*, *ae, f.*, properly fem. of *patrius*, with *régio* understood—*the country of one's fathers—one's native country*. *Régio*, *ouis, f.*, denotes a large tract or region, including fields and cities. *Rus*, *rûris, n.*, *the country, opposed to the town*.

*Patria quae communis est omnium nostrum parens, Our native land, which is the common parent of us all.*—Cic.

*Quum rus homines eunt, When men retire to their country-seats.*—Plaut.

- At 2. *Affinis*, *is, m. or f.*, a relation by marriage—sometimes a neighbour.

*Ut quisque potentioris affinis erat, sedibus pellebantur, When any were the neighbours of a man more powerful, they were ousted from their homes.*—Sall.

It is sometimes used figuratively, as :

*Affinis culpa, implicated in the fault.*—Cic.

*Pröpinquus*, *a, um, near, near of kin, allied*.

*Cives präpiöres quam päcetrini, et präpinqi quam Alleni sunt, Fellow-citizens are dearer to us than strangers, and relations more so than men of no kin.*—Cic.

3. *Nübo*, *nupel, nuptum, 3, to marry (properly to veil)*, used only of the woman. *Uxorém düco*, *xi, etum, 3, to marry*, used of the man, because the bridegroom fetched his bride from her father's house.

- At 4. *Lex*, *légis, m., a law*. Hence, a bill (*Rögatio*) which has been adopted and has passed into law is a *lex*, a law. *Lex* is therefore a written law. *Jus*, *jûris, n.*, is used of both written and unwritten law, and means "right" in a moral sense, justice.

*Jus gentium, the law of nations, what is right by the common consent of mankind.*

- At 5. *Templum*, *i, n.* (Gr. *temenos*, a sacred enclosure) ; like *Fänum*, *i, n.*, *the temple with its sacred environs*. *Dëläbrum*, *i, n.* (prob. from *déluo*, to wash away), *the shrine*. *Aedes*, *is, f.*, is used of the building only. *Templum* generally signifies a temple of one of the principal gods, *Fänum*, that of an inferior deity, or hero.

## PHRASES.

- At Eng. I have a country, &c. ;  
" She married him ;  
" I have leisure for reading ;  
" What does this mean ?

- Lat. There is a country, &c., to me.  
" She veiled for him—*et nupsit*.  
" Vacat mihi legenda,  
" Quid hoc tibi cult ?

## EXERCISE XXII.

1. The covetous man procures riches not for himself but for others.  
2. Pisisträtus conquered the Megarians for his own, not his country's advantage. 3. We wish to be rich for our children, our relatives, our friends, and especially for the state. 4. Anicia had married M. Servius, the brother of P. Sulpicius. 5. I hate the wise man who is not wise (*sapio*) for himself. 6. Every soil is a country (*patria*) for the brave man, as the sea (is) for fish. 7. He is a just man who gives to every man his own. 8. Octavia, sister of Augustus Caesar, married Antonius. 9. Solon made laws for the Athenians, Lycurgus for the Spartans. 10. I was not born for a single corner—this whole world is my country. 11. Certain men labour not for virtue but for glory. 12. I have leisure for this business alone. 13. What do

those  
are y  
(dexte  
the en  
But s  
17. In  
the ter

§ 2  
a Dati  
Incom

1.  
2.  
rëpugn  
3.  
4.  
5.  
6.  
servio

7.  
8.  
9.  
10.  
11.  
12.  
13.  
14.  
15.  
16.  
17.  
times 6

Höm  
benefit an  
Libe  
should be  
Cic.  
Non  
another f



those statues mean (*volo* : add *dativus ethicus, sibi*)? 14. Whither are you going away so far (*tantum*) to my (*mihi*) right-hand (*dexter*, *nom.*)? Hither direct your course. 15. Wonder seized the enemy as to what the sudden shouting could mean (*subj.*). 16. But suddenly there comes to me your (*dat. eth.*) friend Caninius. 17. In the centre shall be my (*dat. eth.*) Caesar, and he shall possess the temple.

XXIII.—DATIVE AFTER VARIOUS VERBS.

§ 291. The following verbs, apparently transitive, govern a Dative, which in many cases is the *Dativus Commōdi* or *Incommōdi* :

1. *To assist* : *subvĕnio, succurro, auxiliōr.*
2. *To resist, oppose* : *rĕsisto, adversor, obnitor, rĕnitor, rĕpugno, obsum, &c.*
3. *To favour, study (be devoted to)* : *fāveo, indulgeo, stūdeo.*
4. *To envy, be jealous of* : *invidĕo, aemulor* (see *Obs.* 4).
5. *To please* : *plāceo, arrīdeo.*
6. *To serve, obey, benefit* : *pāreo, ōbĕdīo, obtempĕro, servio, prōsum.*
7. *To trust or distrust* : *crĕdo, fīdo, confīdo, diffīdo.*
8. *To spare, refrain from* : *parco, tempĕro.*
9. *To advise, persuade* : *suādeo, persuādeo.*
10. *To flatter* : *ādulor, assentor, blandior.*
11. *To cure* : *mĕdeor, mĕdicor.*
12. *To pardon* : *ignosco.*
13. *To congratulate* : *grātulor.*
14. *To revile* : *mālĕdīco, obtrecto, convicior.*
15. *To be angry* : *irascor, succenseo.*
16. *To protect* : *patrōcinor.*
17. *To command* : *impĕro, impĕrīto, praccīpio*, and sometimes *dōminor, mōdĕror, tempĕro.*

With some others.

*Hōmīnes hōmīnibus plurimum et prōsunt et obsunt, Men very greatly benefit and harm their fellow-men.*—Cic.

*Liber is est existimandus, qui nulli turpitudini servit, That man should be deemed a freeman who is in bondage to no disgraceful passion.*—Cic.

*Non licet sui commōdi causā nōcĕre altĕri, It is wrong to injure another for one's own advantage.*—Cic.

Dēmōsthēnes ejus ipsius artis, cui studebat, primam litteram non poterat dicere, *Demosthenes could not pronounce the first letter of the very art which he was studying*.—Cic.

Antiochus se nec impensae, nec labori, nec periculo parvarum pollicebatur, *Antiochus promised to spare neither expense, labour, nor peril*.—Liv.

Melici toto corpore curando, minime etiam parti midentur, *Physicians, by treating the whole of the body, cure also the smallest part of it*.—Cic.

Probus invidet nemini, *The good man envies no one*.—Cic.

Epicurus Phaedoni turpissime maledixit, *Epicurus maligned Phaedo very grossly*.—Cic.

Quis Isocrati est adversarius impensius (quam Aristoteles), *Who opposed Isocrates more strongly than Aristotle?*

Is aemulamur qui ea habent quae nos habere cupimus, *We are jealous of those who have what we want*.—Cic.

Omnibus gentibus ac nationibus imperare, *To rule over all peoples and nations*.—Cic.

Moderari animo et orationi cum sis iratus, *To govern temper and tongue when you are angry*.—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Passives of these verbs can be used only impersonally: as, mihi invidetur, *I am envied*. See § 234, Obs. 2.

Obs. 2. Jüvo and adjüvo, *I assist*, always govern the Accusative: as, Multum potes nos apud Plancum jüvare, *You are able greatly to help me with Plancus*.—Cic.

Obs. 3. Mëdeor, mëdeor, *I heal*; and këdlor, *I flatter*, have sometimes the Accusative and sometimes the Dative.

Obs. 4. Aemdlor, in sense of to rival, emulate, is always followed by an Accusative:

Me Agamemnonem aemdlari putas, *You fancy I am emulating Agamemnon*.—Nep.

Obs. 5. Jübeo, régis, and güberno are always followed by the Accusative: as, O diva grätum quae régis Antium, *O goddess who rulest thy favourite Antium*!—Hor.

Spërare nos amici jübent, *Our friends bid us hope*.—Cic.

Obs. 6. Some verbs have different meanings, according as they govern the Accusative or Dative: as,

Haec nobis conveniunt, *These things agree with us*.

Convenire aliquem, *To have an interview with any one*.

Mëtuor, timeo te, *I fear you*.

\_\_\_\_\_ tibi, *I am apprehensive for you*.

Consulo te, *I consult you*.

\_\_\_\_\_ tibi, *I consult your interests*.

\_\_\_\_\_ in te, *I take measures against you*.

Prospecto, and providéo te, *I see you at a distance*.

\_\_\_\_\_ tibi, *I consult your interests*.

Caveo te or a te, *I am on my guard against you*.

\_\_\_\_\_ tibi, *I am concerned for your safety*.

Tempéro, modëror Aliquid, *to regulate, arrange*.

\_\_\_\_\_ mihi, trae, &c., *to set bounds to, to check, restrain*.

Ignar  
tion—  
Inactivi  
not acqui

Ineci  
Cic.

Nesci

Succu  
and Op  
to reliev

Succu  
anec, an

Auxilli

Adjüvo

or other

Mülo

Inäim

reäve

1. Irasco  
ward en  
chafe.

Saepti  
Philippu

even ang

Succen

4. Mëdeo:  
the doct  
means o

Eng. I wa

" Almo

" Politi

men

" To con

" I am

1. Not  
cour the  
cient to n  
herself.

are slaves

is service

consulshi

Gauls de

9. All m

condition

it frees it

It is alw

(tempor

SYNONYMS.

12. Ignārus, a, um, ignorant of a thing from inexperience, or want of observation—unacquainted with. Inscius, a, um, ignorant of a thing from mental inactivity, want of study—generally culpably ignorant. Nescius, a, um, simply, not acquainted with a thing, as from not having heard of it.

Inscius omnium rerum et rūdīs, Ignorant of everything, and unpolished.—Cic.

Nescia fātī Dido, Dido unconscious of destiny.—Virg.

13. Succurro, curri, cursum, 3 (prop. to run up to). Subvēnio, vēni, ventum, 4, and opitulāri, ātus sum, 1, all imply that the object needs assistance; hence to relieve those who are in embarrassment.

Succurrit illi Vārēnus, et libōranti subvēnit, Vārenus runs up to his assistance, and helps him in his difficulty.—Caes.

Auxilior, ātus sum, 1, to furnish the object with an increase of strength. Adjūvo, āvi, ātum, 1, to help forward by whatever means, either voluntarily or otherwise.

Mālo auxiliāri, to remedy an evil.

Insāniam hūjus adjūvas, you encourage his madness; insāniae auxiliāri, to restrain it.

14. Irascor, irātus sum, 3, to be angry, but not necessarily to show it by outward emotion. Stōmāchor, ātus sum, 1, to show anger by outward signs, to chafe.

Saepius vidēbam quum irridētem, tum irascentem, etiam stōmāchantem Philippum, I very often used to see Philip both when laughing, when vexed, and even angry.—Cic.

Succenseo, si, sum, 2, to be seriously displeased with.

15. Mēdeor, no perf., 2, to heal, relates to the skill, attention, and judgment of the doctor. Sāno, āvi, ātum, 1, relates to the efficacy of the medicine, as a means of restoring health.

PHRASES.

Eng. I was pleased with this;	Lat. This was pleasing to me.
„ Almost all;	„ Omnes fere.
„ Political change—change of government;	„ Novae res.
„ To consult a man's interest;	„ To consult for a man—consulāre ālienī.
„ I am pardoned;	„ It is pardoned to me—mihi ignoscitur.

EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Not unacquainted<sup>1</sup> with misfortune (myself), I learn to succour the miserable. 2. Fortune gives too much to many, sufficient to none. 3. She is angry with her who has been preferred to herself. 4. Wise men control their desires, which the rest of men are slaves to. 5. Seas and lands obey God. 6. He is a good man who is serviceable to whomsoever he can be, (and) injures nobody. 7. The consulship of Cicero was pleasing to M. Cato. 8. Almost all the Gauls desire<sup>2</sup> political change, and are quickly excited to war. 9. All men naturally (say, by nature) aim-at<sup>2</sup> liberty, and hate the condition of slavery. 10. Philosophy effects this; it heals the mind, it frees it from desires. 11. Doctors cannot cure all diseases. 12. It is always (characteristic) of a wise man to yield to the occasion (temporī cedere); that is, to submit to necessity. 13. Consult you

own interest, provide for that of your country. 14. The older men said this, who were less pleased with this new wisdom. 15. The gods have spared the guiltless armies. 16. I congratulate both you, and the republic because of you. 17. Singly<sup>1</sup> they will not be able to resist us. 18. I am pardoned for this. 19. Vineyards (*arbutum*, i, n.) and the lowly tamarisks delight not all persons. 20. The god who with his trident<sup>2</sup> controls the waves of the sea (*aequoreus*, adj.)

<sup>1</sup> Fem. as said by a woman.

<sup>2</sup> Stūdeo, with dat.

Singuli, ae, s.

<sup>4</sup> Cuspis, Idis, f. lit. point: by the figure synecdoche, St. L. Gr. 605.

#### XXIV.—DATIVE AFTER VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

##### § 292. Verbs compounded with the Prepositions

ad, ante, con, in and inter

ob, post, prae, sub and super

govern the Dative, when the Preposition retains its original force in reference to an object. Transitive verbs have also an Accusative case in addition: as,

*Tu mihi terram in-jice, Fling thou earth on me (my corpse).—Virg.*

*Dolphines altis in-cursant rāmis, The dolphins course against the high branches.—Ov.*

*In-cubuit lōro, She leaned upon her couch.—Virg.*

*Quum prōpēnōdo mūrīs ac-cessisset, When he had almost got up to the walls.—Liv.*

*Caesāri vēnienti oc-currit, He hastens to meet Caesar on his way.—Cæsar.*

*Quum virtūte omnibus prae-stārent, Whereas they (the Helvetii) surpassed all in valour.—Cæsar.*

*Nātura hōmīnis pēcūditibus antē-cedit, The nature of man excels brute beasts.—Cic.*

*Obs.* Some compound verbs, especially *aspergo*, *inspergo*, *circumdo*, have two constructions, namely, either an Accusative of the thing and a Dative of the person, or an Accusative of the person and an Ablative of the thing: as,

*Circumdāre brāchia colio, To put the arms about any one's neck.—Ov.*

*Oppidum vallo et fossā circumdāre, To surround a town with a rampart and moat.—Cic.*

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Fraus*, dis, f., injury, fraud. *Dōlus*, i, m., deceit, treachery, always in a bad sense.

*Fallācia*, ae, f., a stratagem, artifice, intrigue. It mostly signifies deceit in speaking, while *fraus* rather signifies deceit in acting.

2. *Consillium*, i, n., counsel, advice, a plan; hence, a deliberative body. *Con-cillium*, an assemblage, a meeting.

3. *Cāput*, tūs, n., denotes the head, the principal thing.

*Cāput eet ad bēne vivendum sēcūritas, a feeling of security is the chief thing towards living happily.—Cic.*

*Vortex*, isis, m., the highest point, the top or crown of the head.

*Aetnas vertex, the summit of Aetna.—Cic.*

4. Cāp  
of t  
merc  
5. Sar  
oris,  
A  
aton

Eng. S

" M

" T

c. T

" H

1. M

passer

of rig

courag

all oth

audaci

queen.

talent.

also fi

11. M

(expre

slain.

(expre

knowi

under

over a

surrou

sparter

the alt

corn.

<sup>1</sup> Say,

<sup>2</sup> Ing

Δ § 29

Passiv

Ablati

4. *Cāritas*, *ātis*, *f.*, a virtuous affection, resulting from an intelligent enjoyment of the object. *Amor*, *ōris*, *m.*, is a general term for love, pure or impure, a mere passion or emotion.
5. *Sanguis*, *inis*, *m.*, blood while circulating in the body, supporting life. *Crūor*, *ōris*, *m.*, blood when shed, gore.  
*Arma nondum expiātis uncta cruōribus*, Weapons smeared with gore, not yet atoned for.—Hor.

PHRASES.

Eng. <i>Some, others ;</i>	Lat. <i>Alii, ālii.</i>
" <i>More strength ;</i>	" <i>Plus virium.</i>
" <i>To prefer one thing to another ;</i>	" <i>To hold one thing after another—</i> <i>aliquid ālicui rēi posthābēre, or</i> <i>as in Eng.</i>
" <i>To surround a city with a wall ;</i>	" <i>To put a wall around the city—</i> <i>mūrūm urbi circumdāre, or as in</i> <i>Eng.</i>
" <i>He sprinkled me with water ;</i>	" <i>Aquā mīhi aspersit, vel Me āqud</i> <i>aspersit.</i>

EXERCISE XXIV.

1. *P* was present in all dangers. 2. Man's nature surpasses *astute* and other beasts. 3. You always put the appearance of right upon your dishonesty. 4. Some<sup>1</sup> want wisdom, others courage, others opportunity. 5. The Gauls in valour (*abl.*) surpass all other men. 6. In this man there was (*inerat*) no less vanity than audacity. 7. He places a crown on his sister's head and calls her queen. 8. In the nation of the Thebans there is more strength than talent.<sup>2</sup> 9. Not only was he present at these things, but he was also first<sup>3</sup> in them. 10. Fortune sometimes<sup>4</sup> opposes our designs. 11. Manlius preferred the public advantage to affliction for his son (express both ways). 12. As he comes up<sup>4</sup> to help his son, he is slain. 13. I should have preferred your will to my own advantage (express both ways). 14. Who can prefer unknown persons to known, the impious to the religious? 15. Faults creep upon us under the name of virtues. 16. Vulcan is said to have presided over a workshop at Lemnos. 17. Semiramis founded Babylon, and surrounded the city with a wall. 18. That most base man has bespattered me with praises. 19. Pythagoras did not wish to sprinkle the altar with blood. 20. Atticus presented all the Athenians with corn.

<sup>1</sup> Say, *To some is wanting, &c.*  
<sup>2</sup> *Ingēnium.*

<sup>3</sup> *To be first in, praesum, fui, esse,*  
*with dat.* <sup>4</sup> *Dum filio subvenit.*

XXV.—DATIVE AFTER PASSIVE VERBS AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 293 The Dative is often used with the *Perfect Tension* Passive to denote the Agent, instead of *a* or *ab* and the Ablative: *as.*

*Mihi consilium captum jam diu est, My plan has been already long formed*—Cic.

*Cui non sunt auditiæ Demosthænis vigiliæ, Who is there by whom the night-watchings of Demosthenes have not been heard of?*—Cic.

Δ § 294. The Dative is regularly used after the Gerundive Participle with the Verb *esse*, to denote the Agent: as,

*Quod ferendum est molliter sapiendi, Which the wise man must bear gently.*—Cic.

*Semper ita vivamus, ut rationem reddendam (case) nobis arbitremur, Let us always so live as to believe that we must render up an account.*—Cic.

Δ § 295. The Impersonal Verbs *licet*, *it is lawful*; *libet*, *it pleases*; *expedit*, *it is expedient*, govern the Dative: as,

*Licet nemini ducere exercitum contra patriam, It is not lawful for any man to lead an army against his country.*—Cic.

*Ei libebit, quod non licet (ei), It will be his inclination to do that which is unlawful for him.*—Cic.

Obs. After *licet*, &c., we often find a second Dative following the Infinitive Mood *esse*; as,

*Licuit esse Themistocli otioso, Themistocles was at liberty to be inactive.*—Cic.

*Illis timidis et ignavis licet esse, They are at liberty to be timid and cowardly.*—Liv.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Utro* (lit., *beyond*; hence, *more than was to be expected*) and *Sponte* (from *spondeo*) *spontaneously, without being asked*. *Utro* is, however, used of persons only. *Sponte* equally of persons or things.

*Ignis consumptus sua sponte extinguitur, Fire when spent goes out of itself.*—Cic.

*Omnia ei ultro pollicitus sum, Of my own accord I promised him every thing.*—Cic.

2. *Præcor*, *præcatus sum*, 1, *to pray in a calm, orderly manner, with a view to obtain one's wishes*. *Supplico*, *avi*, *atum* (supplex), 1, *to beg on one's knees, with earnestness*. *Obtestor* (ob testis), *atus sum*, 1, *to implore by appealing to all that is dear*. *Obsecro*, *avi*, *atum*, 1 (quasi per sacra rogare), *to beg by everything sacred, to implore passionately*. *Oro* (fr. *os*), *avi*, *atum*, 1, properly *to speak*—hence *orare causam*, *to speak in defence of a cause*. It commonly means *to beg or entreat*:

*Oro obtestorque te pro vetere nostra conjunctione, I beg, may conjure you, by our connection of long standing.*—Cic.

The following should be noted:—

*Præcari aliquem, to entreat any one.*

*Præcari ab aliquo, to pray for something from any one.*

*Præcari aliquid, to pray whether with good or evil feeling for any one.*

*Præcari aliquid malam fortunam, to imprecate bad luck upon a man.*

3. *Licet* (impers.) refers to what is allowed by human law, or established by common usage. *Fas est*, what is allowed by divine law, whether by precept or by the light of conscience. *Concessum est* (concedo, cessi, cessum, 3), nearly equivalent to *licet*. *Placet* (placeo, ui, tum, 2), and *libet* (libuit and libitum est, 2), both signify *it pleases*. The former, in the sense that it is the will of, or the determination of a man; the latter, that it agrees with his inclination.

Qu  
to me  
Qu  
all of  
Pla  
letters

Eng. A  
" I a  
" By

1. O  
must a  
3. You  
must y  
live are  
grieve r  
have re  
craft.<sup>2</sup>  
good m  
Alexan  
she be s  
but also  
gent.  
(is) was  
become  
Of<sup>3</sup> thi  
Nothing  
men to l

<sup>1</sup> Aut.  
<sup>2</sup> To c  
facere, in  
cipere.  
<sup>3</sup> Are,  
skilled work

Δ § 296  
valent t

Mhi e  
Troja

Obs. v  
of a  
S  
nam  
In  
plat  
PR. L.

# DATIVE WITH THE VERB SUM AND DOUBLE DATIVE. 49

Quod tibi libet (=libet) idem mihi libet, *What pleases you is also pleasing to me.*—Plaut.

Quis paria esse fere placuit peccata liborant quum, &c., *They who would have all offenses to be of equal magnitude are in a difficulty when, &c.*—Hor.

Placitum est ut epistolae nomine principis scriberentur, *It was resolved that letters should be written in the name of the sovereign.*—Tac.

## PHRASES.

Eng. *A man must fight, &c.*

" *I am allowed.*

" *By means of.*

Lat. *Pugnandum est, &c. (with Dat. of*

" *Mihi Rect.*

" *Per with Accusative.*

[person].

## EXERCISE XXV.

1. One man (*dat.*) must not fight with (*cum*) two. 2. (We) must always be watchful, for the good (*dat.*) have many snares. 3. You must not refuse what is willingly bestowed. 4. Here, soldiers, must you either<sup>1</sup> conquer or<sup>1</sup> die. 5. The men with whom we must live are of the most different dispositions (*abl.*). 6. Men should grieve more when they have committed an injury<sup>2</sup> than when they have received one. 7. The workman must be trusted in his own craft.<sup>3</sup> 8. For honourable things, not secret things, are sought by good men. 9. The wife of Darius was once only (*tantum*) seen by Alexander. 10. All things are the gift of Ceres; by me (*dat.*) must she be sung. 11. These things are not merely to be prayed-for (*oro*), but also to be done by me.<sup>4</sup> 12. It is not allowed me to be negligent. 13. Why may they not through (*per*) you be free? 14. That (*is*) was the year in which, according-to (*per*) the laws, he might become consul (*acc.*). 15. What pleases you also pleases me. 16. Of<sup>5</sup> this class it has pleased me to speak at some length.<sup>6</sup> 17. Nothing which is unjust is advantageous. 18. It is expedient to all men to be good.

<sup>1</sup> Aut . . . aut: see St. L. G. 570.

<sup>2</sup> To commit an injury, injuriam facere, inferre: to receive one, inj. accipere.

<sup>3</sup> Ars, artis, *f.*: which includes all skilled workmanship.

<sup>4</sup> Begin, Haec mihi non solum, &c.

<sup>5</sup> When of = concerning, use de with *abl.*

<sup>6</sup> Say, to say more things, plura dicere.

## XXVI.—DATIVE WITH THE VERB SUM AND DOUBLE DATIVE.

§ 296. The Verb sum with the Dative is used as equivalent to *habeo*: as,

Mihi est injusta noverca, *I have an unjust stepmother.*—Virg.

Troja huic loco nomen est, *This place has the name Troy.*—Liv.

Obs. When, as in the last example, a name is specified after the verb esse or any similar Verb, it is usually attracted into the Dative also: as, Scipio, cui Africano cognomen ex virtute fuit, *Scipio, who had the surname of Africanus on account of his valour.*—Sall.

In example, quibus nomen erat Raudii, decertavere, *They fought in the plains which have the name (are called) Raudii.*—Vell.

§ 297. A Dative of the Person (Dativus Commodi, § 288) and a Dative of Purpose or Result are used with Verbs signifying to be or become; to give, send or come; to impute or reckon, &c. : as,

Flūmen aliis verborum cordi est, *A flood of words is the gratification of others.*—Cic.

Ampla domus saepe sit domino dedecori, *A spacious house often turns to the disgrace of its owner.*—Cic.

Pausanias rex Laedæmoniorum venit Atticis auxilio, *Pausanias, king of the Laedæmonians, came to the help of the Athenians.*—Nep.

Nec timuit sibi ne vitio quis verteret, *Nor was he afraid that some one might impute it to him as a fault.*—Hor.

Cui bono fuit, *For whose advantage was it?*—Cic.

Obs. The Dative of Result is also used without a Dative of the Person : as, Nec eam rem habuit, religioni, *Nor did he deem that circumstance a religious objection.*—Cic.

Magno odio esse apud Alquem, *To be an object of intense hatred with anybody.*—Cic.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. Völūcer, eris, ere (fr. vōlo, to fly), properly an adjective, with kvjs or some noun understood. It signifies any winged creature, including insects. Avis, is, c., and āles, itis, c. (chiefly poet.), a winged creature. The former is the general term for a bird; the latter usually signifies a large bird, e.g. the eagle or swan. Altes, in the language of the augurs, meant birds whose flight was to be interpreted, as distinguished from oscines, um, c. (os āno), birds whose cry furnished the omen :

Obscaenae vōlucres. *The harpies.*—Virg.

Equus āles, the winged horse (Pegasus).—Ov.

Figuratively also,

Macōni carminis āles, a swan of Homer's strain.—Hor.

2. Innocentia, ae, f. blameless, harmless, or disinterested conduct. Virtus, atis, f., originally valour; hence, becoming or meritorious acts. Integritas, atis, f., a whole condition, one neither maimed nor impaired; in a moral sense, uprightness, sans reproche :

Vir summā integritate et innocentia, *A man of the greatest uprightness and harmlessness.*—Cic.

3. Aeger, gra, grum, disordered, whether mentally or physically. Aegrotus, a, um, ill, unwell; and morbidus, a, um, diseased; indicate bodily sickness almost exclusively :

Aeger ex vulnere, suffering from a wound.—Liv.

Consolantur aegram animi, *They console her when distressed in mind.*—Liv.

In speaking of dumb animals, good authors rather say aeger (or morbidus) than aegrotus :

Et quātū aegros tuas ānīla sues, *And a short cough shakes the diseased swine.*—Virg.

4. Littēra, ae, f. (littēra), a letter of the alphabet. Epistōla, ae, f., or littērae, arum, a letter, an epistle. Littērae also signifies what we call letters; i.e. literature generally. Hāmānitas, atis, f., refinement, refined culture, in the widest sense.

Littēras dāre Alleui, to give (as we say post) a letter to some one, for the purpose of its being conveyed; whereas,

Littēras dāre ad Alquem, to give or post a letter for (i.e. addressed to) somebody.

6. Ad  
any  
3; su  
thing  
extin

Eng. 21

" Th

" H

" To

" To

" To

" To

" To

A  
Sichae  
a hund  
I do th  
5. Wh  
protecti  
Appius  
which  
man ha  
sailors.  
am co  
was als  
trary-to  
a burde  
renown.  
His lieut  
fect) let  
became  
Marcit  
enemy c  
buted to  
noble do  
peoples  
with his

1 Say, t

2 Lève

3 Patres

Diet. Ant.

XXVI

§ 298

§ 288) i



6. *Admo*, *ēmi*, *emptum*, 3; and *eximo*, *ēmi*, *emptum*, 3; both signify *to take away without violence*; whereas *aufero*, *auferē*, *ablātum*, 3; *eripio*, *eripere*, 3; *surrupio*, *urupio*, 3; imply *forcible or illegal removal*. *Admo* is used of things that are good and useful, so that a man is made the poorer; whereas *eximo* implies the removal of an evil, whereby a man is made more comfortable.

PHRASES.

Eng. Two a-piece,	Lat. <i>Bini</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>a</i> .
" This man's wife,	" <i>The wife to this man.</i>
" He gave me this as a present,	" <i>He gave me this for a gift (hoc mihi dono dedit)</i>
" To be of service to a man,	" <i>Utui altui esse.</i>
" To send a letter for him to come,	" <i>To send a letter that he may come (ut with subjunctive).</i>
" To become a matter of religious scruple,	" <i>In religionem cenire.</i>

EXERCISE XXVI.

All birds (*dat.*) have two wings each. 2. Her husband was Sichæus, most wealthy in land (*agri*). 3. Not if I (*dat.*) had (*subj.*) a hundred tongues, a hundred mouths, and an iron voice, could (*subj.*) I do this. 4. Flowers (*dat.*) have not always the same colours. 5. Where licentiousness rules, innocence (*dat.*) has (but) little protection. 6. Attus Clausus, who afterwards had the name of Appius Claudius (*dat.*), fled to Rome (*acc.*). 7. I (*dat.*) have a pipe which Damoetas once gave me as a present. 8. While the sick man has life there is hope. 9. The greedy sea is destruction to the sailors. 10. I have betaken myself to you, Senators,<sup>1</sup> to whom I am compelled to be a burden before being of advantage.<sup>2</sup> 11. This was also an advantage to others. 12. In their case (*his*), contrary-to<sup>3</sup> nature, the body was (a source of) pleasure (*dat.*), the soul a burden. 13. This will prove-to-be (*fut. of sum*) our greater renown. 14. Who will not attribute that to you as a fault? 15. His lieutenants, the quaestor, and his friends, kept-sending (*imperfect*) letters to me that I should come to help him.<sup>4</sup> 16. This thing became a religious scruple with the people. 17. The approach of Marcus, who came to the help of his colleague, took from the enemy (all) delay of the combat. 18. But that which was attributed to me as a crime, not only was not a fault, but (even) a most noble deed. 19. Intestine war<sup>5</sup> has been and will be to very many peoples a greater destruction than foreign wars. 20. Cains Caesar, with his army, marched to the assistance of the province of Gaul.

<sup>1</sup> Say, to her.

<sup>2</sup> Lève praesidium.

<sup>3</sup> Patres Conscripti; see Dr. Smith's Dict. Ant., art. Senate.

<sup>4</sup> Prius quam deui.

<sup>5</sup> Contra, with acc.

<sup>6</sup> Ut venirem et subsidio.

<sup>7</sup> Arma, orum, n. pl.

XXVII.—DATIVE AFTER ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES.

§ 298. The Dative (in many cases a Dativus Commodi, § 288) is used after the following classes of Adjectives:—

1. *Of Utility*: utilis, commodus, fructuosus, &c.
2. *Of Unprofitableness or injury*: inutilis, noxius.
3. *Of Fitness*: aptus, accommodatus, idoneus, conveniens, proprius, &c.
4. *Of Unfitness*: incommodus, inconveniens.
5. *Of Acceptableness*: gratus, jucundus, carus.
6. *Of Displeasure*: ingratus, injucundus.
7. *Of Friendliness*: benignus, amicus, benivolus, fidelis, fidus.
8. *Of Hostility*: inimicus, perniciosus, malevolus, malignus, molestus, iratus, infestus.
9. *Of Similarity and dissimilarity*: similis, dissimilis.
10. *Of Equality and inequality*: aequalis, inaequalis.
11. *Of Proximity*: finitimus, vicinus, propinquus.

Romulus multitudini gratior fuit quam Patribus, *Romulus was more acceptable to (popular with) the multitude than to the Fathers.*—Liv.

Deiotarus fidelis erat Populo Romano, *Deiotarus was faithful to the Roman people.*—Cic.

Patris solum omnibus carum est, *The soil of our country is dear to all.*—Cic.

Siculi Verri inimici infestique sunt, *The Sicilians are unfriendly to, and exasperated against Verres.*—Cic.

Homo alienissimus mihi, *A man most unfriendly to me.*—Cic.

Ingratam Veneri pone superbiam, *Lay aside your arrogance, displeasing to Venus.*—Hor.

Numquid iratus es mihi propter has res, *You are not angry with me for these things, are you?*—Pl.

Idque eo facilius credébatur quia simile vero videbatur, *And the thing was the more readily believed, because it seemed like truth.*—Cic.

Paupertatem divitiis etiam inter homines esse aequalem volumus, *We would have poverty on a level with riches even among men.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. Some of these Adjectives are used as Substantives, amicus, inimicus, finitimus, ceteris, propinquus, &c., and are then constructed with the Genitive.

Obs. 2. Similis and dissimilis are quite as often found with the Genitive: as, Decem similes Nestoris, *Ten men the like of Nestor.*—Cic.  
Impii elves, tui dissimilissimi, *Impious citizens, most unlike yourself.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. An Adjective denoting fitness or utility may take, in addition to the Dative as above, an Accusative of the purpose with ad: as,  
Multas ad res peritiles (nobis) Xenophontis libri sunt, *The works of Xenophon are very useful (to us) for many purposes.*—Cic.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. Bellum, i, n. (orig. duellum from duo), war. Sometimes it is used by the poets for a single fight. Militia, ae, f., the soldier's profession, military service.

Ceu cetera nusquam bella forent, *As though no fighting were going on elsewhere.*—Virg.

Militiae disciplina, *The training for a soldier's life (military discipline).*—Cic.  
Domus militumque, *At home and on service—in the field.*

2. Impi  
a king

Impi

App

tryme

Sim

Reg

Domi

Crat

Princ

De

for the

3. Aequ  
of gre  
another

those c

Aeq

likenes

1. Béné  
i, n., z  
the hig

Amor

Nthi

is noth

affection

✓ En

1. He  
either

of the p  
able thi

4. This  
their mi

for (ad)  
to Then

as old as  
viceable

(lit. near  
12. An

amo),  
the wine

15. One  
good are

them an  
all, flatter

He is of

2. *Impērium*, *suprema power and authority; an empire.* *Regnum*, *royal power, a kingdom.*

*Impērium Rōmānum*, *the Roman Empire; but*

*Appius impērium in suos tēnebāt*, *Appius held supreme sway over his countrymen.*—Cic.

Similarly, *Regnum Gallienum*, *the kingdom of Gaul; but*

*Regnum occipere vōlēbat*, *He designed to seize upon the royal power.*—Caes.

*Dōminātiō*, *absolute tyrannical government.*

*Crūdēlis et sūperba dōminātiō*, *A tyranny relentless and proud.* Cic.

*Principātus*, *us, m., pre-eminence, headship:*

*De principātu inter se contēdebant*, *They were struggling with each other for the supremacy.*—Cues.

3. *Aequālis*, *e*, denotes *inherent equality*. *Pār*, *pāris*, denotes *similarity in point of greatness, power, or value*, which renders one thing a match for, or rival of, another. Hence *aequālia* are things related by common qualities; *pāria*, those of equal importance or degree.

*Aequālis*, also signifies *of the same age, contemporary*. *Similis*, *e*, denotes *likeness, whether external or internal.*

4. *Bēnēvolēntia*, *ae, f. (bēne vōlo)*, is *goodwill* in the widest sense. *Stādium*, *i, n., zeal, zealous attachment, or enthusiasm.* *Fāvor*, *ōris, m.* is *the favour of the higher towards the lower*, as of a judge towards one of the parties in a suit.

*Āmor*, *ōris, m., natural affection, love:*

*Nihil est quod stūdīo et bēnēvolēntiā vel potius amōre effiel non possit*, *There is nothing which may not be effected by zeal and kindly feeling, or rather by affection.*—Cic.

PHRASES.

✓ Eng. *With all his might,*  
 „ *Another's virtue,*

Lat. *Summā et.*  
 „ *Aliēna virtus.*

EXERCISE XXVII.

1. He admired the spirit (*ānīmus*) of the man, (which was) ready either<sup>1</sup> for war or peace. 2. Ascanius, son of Aeneas, was not yet of the proper age for the supreme command.<sup>2</sup> 3. It was an honourable thing for the generals (*dat.*) themselves to engage in the fight. 4. This law, most welcome to the plebs, the fathers resisted with all their might. 5. This thing is unlike that. 6. This man is suitable for (*ad*) that purpose. 7. Aristides was almost equal (in years) to Themistocles. 8. His kind feeling towards the Roman people is as old as himself.\* 9. The land which is suitable for vines is serviceable also for trees. 10. Tullus Hostilius was unlike the last (lit. nearest) king. 11. He made virtue peculiar (*proprius*) to men. 12. An easy and liberal father is unfit for a son in love (*part. of amo*). 13. Dear to the Muses, sadness and fears will I consign to the winds. 14. This speech was not disagreeable to the Gauls. 15. One ungrateful man is injurious to all the unfortunate. 16. The good are greater-objects-of-suspicion\* to kings than the bad, and to them another man's merit is ever formidable. 17. Be (*esto*) kind to all, flattering to none, familiar to (but) few, just to everybody. 18. He is of all (men) of his-own age by far the most handsome, apt at

every undertaking,<sup>5</sup> full of prudence. 19. Naturally<sup>6</sup> we are all disposed<sup>7</sup> to liberality. 20. The degrees of praise are equal to the lowest and the highest men; those of glory, unequal.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vel . . . vel : see St. L. G. 570.

<sup>2</sup> Maturus império.

<sup>3</sup> Ipsus aequalis aetati.

<sup>4</sup> More suspected, suspectiores.

<sup>5</sup> Ad omnes res aptus.

<sup>6</sup> By nature, naturā.

<sup>7</sup> Propensus ad.

<sup>8</sup> Disparēs.

## XXVIII.—ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION AND ORIGIN.

§ 306. The Ablative of Separation is found after Verbs signifying to *separate, remove, deliver from*; but more frequently, especially in Prose writers, with a Preposition: as,

(A.) *Verecundum Baechum sanguineis prohibere rixis, Save ye honest Bacchus from blood stained frays!*—Hor.

*Nodasā corpus prohibere chiragrā, To save the body from the knotty gout.*—Hor.

*Liberare aliquem culpā, To free a man from blame.*—Cic.

*Vercingetorix oppugnatione destitit, Vercingetorix abandoned the siege.*—Caes.

(B.) *Ab oppidis vim hostium prohibent, They ward off the violent attacks of the enemy from their walls.*—Caes.

*Viri boni lapidibus a foro pelluntur. Good citizens were being pelted from the forum with stones.*—Cic.

*Eum ab omni erratione liberavit, He freed it (the world) from all possibility of going astray.*—Cic. (But *libero* is quite as frequent with the abl. alone.)

§ 307. The Ablative is often used after Adjectives denoting *freedom or exemption from* (see also §276): as,

*Robustus animus omni est liber cura, The strong mind is free from all anxiety.*—Cic.

*Fama atque fortunae expertes, Destitute of character as well as fortune.*—Sall.

§ 308. *opus est, there is need*, like verbs of want, governs the Ablative: as,

*Auctoritate nobis opus est, We have need of authority.*—Cic.

*Opus est mature facto, There is need of prompt execution.*—Sall.

§ 310. The Ablative of Origin is found especially after the Participles *natus, born from*: *ortus, oriundus, sprung from*; *genitus, begotten of*; also in the Poets with *satus, editus, creatus, ortus, sprung from or begotten of*: as.

*Jove natus et Maia, Born of Jove and Maia.*—Cic.

*Orte Saturno, O thou offspring of Saturn!*—Hor.

*Quo sanguine cretus, From what blood family sprung.*—Virg.

*Alba triundum sacerdotium, A priesthood that had its origin in Alba.*—Liv.

*Obs.* But *striundus*, and likewise *ortus* when it refers to more remote origin, are more frequently used with a Preposition: as,

*Hippocritēs et Epicydes, nāti Carthāgine, sed striundi ab Syracūsīs, Hippocrates and Epicydes, natives of Carthage, but having their origin from Syracuse.*—Liv.

*Belgæ orti sunt a Germānis, The Belgians are descended from the Germans.*—Caes.

SYNONYMS.

*Solitudo*, *Unis*, *f.*, a wilderness; also the solitude of a place, agreeable or otherwise.

*Lōca vasta*, uncultivated wastes as opposed to *loca culta*.

*Dēserta lōca*, uninhabited parts as opposed to *lōca habitāta*.

2. *Columba*, *ae*, *f.*, a tame pigeon. *Pē*, *is*, *c.*, the ringdove or wood-pigeon:

*Aspici ut vēniant ad candida texta columbae, You see how the pigeons come to their white coles.*—Ov.

*Fābūlosae pālumbes, The fabled (celebrated in story) ring-doves.*—Hor.

3. *Commōror*, *ātus sum*, 1, to sojourn or be in a place for some time. *Hābito*, *āvī*, *ātum*, 1, to dwell permanently:

*Commōrandi enim nātūra dēversōrium nobīs non hābitandi dedit, For nature has granted it (the body) as a lodging to sojourn in, not to dwell there.*—Cic.

*Māneo*, *nsi*, *nsum*, 2, to remain, whether for a short time or a long time. It is often used of tarrying one night in a place, and such temporary resting-places were by the Latins called *mansiones*. It has also the active signification to wait for:

*Mānet te glōria, Renown awaits you.*—Virg.

Also figuratively:

*Hoc in causā māneat, Let this point in this case be finally settled.*—Cic.

4. *Prūdētia*, *ae*, *f.* (contr. of *prōvidētia*), properly foresight: hence, sagacity, practical judgment; especially, knowledge of the law. *Sāpientia*, *ae*, *f.* (equivalent to the Greek *σοφία*), properly good taste (fr. *sāpio*); hence, discernment, discretion, practical wisdom—knowledge of the world. *Scientia*, *ae*, *f.* (*scio*), expertness—knowledge, as implying skill in or acquaintance with a subject:

*Prūdētia cernitur in dīlectu bōnōrum et mālōrum, Sagacity discovers itself in making choice between good and bad.*—Cic.

*Sāpientia est rērum dīvinārum et hūmānarum, causārumque quibus eae res continentur, scientia, Wisdom is the knowledge of things human and divine and of the causes by which they are maintained.*—Cic.

PHRASES.

Eng. To stay with Antiochus,

Lat. *Apud Antiochum commorārī.*

" Blind of an eye,

" *Altēro oculo carcus, captus.*

" There is need of consultation,

" *There is need of its being consulted* (*opus est consulto*).

" To abide by a decree,

" *To stand by the decree* (*dēcrētō stāre*).

" Banished his country,

" *Extorris patriæ.*

EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. Semirāmis deprived Ninus of the supreme-power (*impērium*).
2. Old age did not free Considius from all dread.
3. Hannibal, (when) banished from Carthage, married with Antiochus, King of Syria.
4. This Lysimachus was born of a family (*nātus lōco*) distinguished among the Macedonians.
5. The Centiōnes, and the Graicōlli, and

the Caturiges, attempt to hinder his army from (making) its march. 6. Apelles painted a portrait of King Antigonus wanting one eye. 7. Cato, exempt from all human faults, had fortune always in his own power. 8. We have need of magistrates, without whose foresight and care the state cannot exist. 9. These things (*abl.*) were necessary (*opus*) for us. 10. Before you begin (*subj.*) there is need of deliberation, and when you have deliberated (*ful. perf.*) there is need of prompt action.<sup>1</sup> 11. Now, O Aeneas, you need courage, now a dauntless breast. 12. The children of the proscribed are excluded from their ancestral property. 13. P. Laenas hurled L. Lucilius from (*de*) the Tarpeian rock, and forbade his colleagues (the use of) fire and water (*i.e.* banished them).<sup>2</sup> 14. If a man (*si quis*), whether a private or public (character), abide (*perf. ind.*) not by their decree, they forbid him (the use of) sacrifices. 15. He (*is*) is liberal who takes from himself what he gives to another (*ultra*). 16. Happy is he who is free from all disturbance of mind. 17. The Jews, banished from their country, have been dispersed throughout the world. 18. Sulla was not deterred by this repulse. 19. His mind was free from religious scruples. 20. I have freed you from other cares. 21. The chief of these was Titavicus, and his brothers, young men born of a most honourable family. 22. He was sprung from the blood of Sisyphus, and in thefts and frauds was very much like him. 23. Of the brave (*abl.*) and good are born<sup>3</sup> the brave.

<sup>1</sup> *Nature facto.*

<sup>2</sup> *Interdicere aqua et igni alieni.* This was the customary sentence in banishing a Roman citizen.

<sup>3</sup> *Passive of creo.*

## XXIX.—ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, INSTRUMENT.

§ 311. The Ablative is used after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to denote the *Cause, Manner, Means, or Instrument* of an Action or state of being: as,

*Sol cuncta sua luce illustrat et complet, The sun illumines and fills all things with its light.*—Cic.

*Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute praeceunt, The Helvetii surpass the rest of the Gauls in valour.*—Caes.

(*Britanni, equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi (sunt), The Britons advanced to the river with cavalry and war-chariots.*—Caes.

*Epaminondas princeps meo iudicio Gracchiae, Epaminondas, in my judgment, the foremost man of Greece.*—Cic.

*Ennius fuit maior natu quam Plautus et Naevius, Ennius was earlier in his period of birth than Plautus and Naevius.*—Cic.

*Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leones, se tutantur, Bulls with (their) horns, boars with (their) tusks, lions by biting, defend themselves.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Hence the Ablative is used after a Passive Verb without a preposition to denote the *thing* by which a purpose is effected; but if the agent is a *person*, the preposition *a* or *ab* is required with the Ablative.

§ 311. Vent  
aus, J  
Aura  
scence.  
Aur  
Aur  
Pro  
2. Agit  
figura  
guiter  
It is a  
Ips  
volcin  
Agit  
Vib  
Mul  
—Val.  
3. Moll  
easily  
Mol  
Mol  
mould  
Tén  
Acte  
1. Pâti  
upon,  
Fort  
a misf  
It a  
Pâti  
Termi  
Lex  
Féro,  
submis  
the ex  
bear, c  
Pâti  
bowing

§ 312. 1. If the manner in which anything is done be expressed by a Substantive and an Adjective, the Ablative is generally used without cum :

2. But if the manner is expressed by a Substantive alone, cum must be used : as,

Miltiades res Chersonēsi summā acuitate constituit, *Miltiades arranged the affairs of the Chersonesus with the greatest fairness.*—Nep.

Athēnienses cum silentio auditi sunt, *The Athenians were heard with silent attention.*—Liv.

Obs. 1. The Substantives signifying manner, as *mōdus, rātio, mos, ritus, consuetudo*, never take the preposition cum : as, *hoc mōdo, in this manner* ; *Persarum mōre, after the custom of the Persians*.

Obs. 2. The student should observe that when *with* in English means in company with, cum is always used ; but when *with* denotes the instrument, as, *to kill a person with a sword*, cum cannot be used, but only the Ablative of the instrument.

SYNONYMS.

1. *Ventus*, *m.*, the generic term for *wind*. *Trocella*, *ae, f.* ; and *tempestas*, *ātis, f.* ; denote a *violent wind* ; the former a *squall*, the latter a *complete storm*. *Aura*, *ae, f.*, a *gentle gale or breeze*, is also used sometimes in a figurative sense. *Flātus*, *ūs, m.*, a *gentle breeze*, and generally of a favourable wind :

*Auræ populārīs captātor, A man to catch at popular favour.*—Liv.

*Aura rūmōris, A flying rumour.*—Cic.

*Prospēro flātū ūti, To take advantage of a favourable wind.*—Cic.

2. *Agito*, *āvī, ātum, i*, frequentative of *āgo, to drive or urge on*. Often in a figurative sense, *to cast or revolve in mind*. *Vibro*, *āvī, ātum, i*, *to vibrate or quiver*, as when a string, in a state of tension, is struck : hence, *to brandish*. It is also used of the quivering tremulous motion of a serpent's tongue :

*Ipse longē ālīter āgitābat ānīmo, A far different scheme was he himself revolvīng in his mind.*—Cic.

*Agitare gaudīum, To show one's joy.*—Sall. (See St. L. G. 694.)

*Vibrare hastas ante pugnam, To brandish the spears before the battle.*—Cic.

*Multifidas linguas draco vibrat, The serpent darts his many-pointed tongues.*—Val. Fl.

3. *Mollis*, *e*, *soft, yielding to the touch*. *Tēner*, *ēra, ērum, tender, not hard, easily divided or cut*. *Mollis* is sometimes used in a figurative sense : as,

*Mollissima tempōra fandī, The most favourable time for speaking.*—Virg.

*Mollissimam ēeram ad nostra arbitria formāmus et fingimus, We form and mould very soft wax just as we will.*—Cic.

*Tēnēra herba, The tender grass.*—Virg.

*Aetas tēnēra, A tender, i. e. early, time of life.*—Ov.

4. *Pātior*, *passus sum, 3* (properly opposed to *āgo, ēgi, actum, 3*), *to be acted upon, whether for good or evil* :

*Fortiter mīlīum qui pātītur idēm post pātītur bonum, He who bravely bears a misfortune afterwards also has his good turn.*—Plaut.

It also signifies *to suffer or submit to* : as,

*Pātīar quod libet, I will bear what you please.*—Plaut.

*Formitto, mīlī, missum, 3*, *to give leave to, to permit, empower* :

*Lex permittit aut vētat, The law either permits or forbids it.*—Sen.

*Fēro, tēlī, lātum, 3*, *to bear*, implies energy and spirit ; *pātīar* denotes mere submission. *Sustīneo*, *ui, tentum, 2*, is like *fēro*, and implies *activity* and the exercise of power. *Sustīneo* is *to uphold as on the shoulders*. *Fēro* is *to bear, carry in any way* :

*Patrem gravēm sēnio per mēdia hostīum agmīna tōlīe, He bore his father, being beneath the weight of years, through the midst of the enemies' ranks.*

Eng.	PHRASES.	Lat.
<i>At last,</i>		<i>At postremum or extremum.</i>
<i>After the manner of men,</i>	{	<i>Humano more.</i>
<i>In human fashion,</i>		<i>Secundum ritum.</i>
<i>Like beasts,</i>		<i>More suo.</i>
<i>As he usually did,</i>		<i>consuetudine sua.</i>
<i>In his customary way,</i>		<i>Magna cum offensione ejus.</i>
<i>To his great offence,</i>		

## EXERCISE XXIX.

1. The tall (*ingens*) pine is shaken by the winds. 2. Stern hearts are subdued by a gentle prayer. 3. An iron ring is worn away by constant use. 4. By the laws both (*et*) rewards are proposed for virtues and punishments for vices. 5. Believe me, I was not a little<sup>1</sup> strengthened by that reflection. 6. He returned with the utmost (*summus*) speed to Athens, nor did he stay there longer than was necessary. 7. The land submits to cultivation and is renewed by the plough. 8. With four colours only have the most illustrious painters performed immortal works. 9. Pero was a woman of distinguished filial-love; for from her own breast she nourished her very-aged<sup>2</sup> father. 10. By a successful expedition they added the greater part of Spain to their own dominion. 11. Dionysius, shattered<sup>3</sup> by continual struggles, was at last slain by a conspiracy of his own subjects. 12. We think that what we have written with-difficulty,<sup>4</sup> is heard (*inf. pass.*) also with difficulty<sup>5</sup> (Begin with rel. clause). 13. Nor have we learnt merely the plan of living (*gen. of gerund*) with pleasure, but also of dying with a better hope. 14. Caesar sent Valerius, a young man of the highest excellence and refinement, to Ariovistus. 15. In every way I pleaded, and do daily plead with (*apud*) the king. 16. He has sinned neither after the manner of men, nor in a customary way. 17. These, like brute-beasts, refer everything to (*ad*) pleasure. 18. Caesar, in his customary way, was leading six legions without their baggage.<sup>6</sup> 19. Mithridates, to the great offence of his fellow-citizens, returned to Athens.

<sup>1</sup> Non mediocriter.<sup>2</sup> Admōdum senex.<sup>3</sup> Assiduū belli certaminibus fractus.<sup>4</sup> With difficulty, cum labore.<sup>5</sup> Without baggage, expeditus.

## XXX.—ABLATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS AND ADJECTIVES.

§ 313. The Ablative is used with Intransitive verbs to express the cause of anything happening, especially the cause of feelings or emotions, as, for example, ardere studio, to burn with zeal; exultare gaudio, to exult with joy; interire (perire, mori) fame, to die of hunger; gaudere (luctari) amici

adve  
suū  
the n

Da  
a faul  
No  
—Cic

§ 3  
are f  
confer  
and,

Fr  
treat  
Pa  
Ph  
fib.  
ol

1. Cor  
hene  
priv  
absol  
impr  
or ex

Ac  
Ro  
Do  
long

Th  
Ja  
lawy

2. Mor  
state  
tatio  
Se

But  
called

3. Ins  
affect  
(in t  
pride  
attain  
prete

Ex  
gane  
Qu  
have  
Cio.  
Gau  
joy.  
lvi, 5



adventu, to rejoice at the arrival of a friend; gloriari victoriâ suâ, to boast of his victory; confidere naturâ loci, to trust in the nature of the ground: as,

*Delicto dolere, correctione gaudere, nos oportet, We ought to grieve at a fault, to rejoice at its correction.*—Cic.

*Nominibus veterum gloriantur, They glory in the names of the ancients.*—Cic.

§ 314. Adjectives which express a state of the feelings, are followed by an Ablative of the Cause: as, contentus, contented, laetus, rejoicing, superbus, proud, fretus, relying on, and, less frequently, moestus, sorrowful, anxius, anxious: as,

*Fructu diligentia vestra, dissero brevius, Relying on your diligence, I treat (the matter) more briefly.*—Cic.

*Paucis contentus, Content with little.*—Hor.

*Phoebe superbe lyra, Thou Phoebus who takest pride in thy lyre!*—Pib.

Obs. For dignus, indignus, see § 320.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. Corrumpro, rûpi, ruptum, 3, properly to break on all sides, to break to pieces; hence, to spoil, render useless, bring to nought. *Dēprāvo, avi, ātum, 1* (fr. prāvus, opp. to rectus), to pervert or distort. Corrumpro is to render a thing absolutely useless. *Dēprāvo* or *prāvo*, to render a thing, still susceptible of improvement, relatively worse. Corrumpro in a figurative sense is to corrupt or spoil:

*Aqua concluda sicelle corrumpitur, Water when confined easily spoils.*—Cic.

*Rem familiarem corrumpere, To waste one's property.*—Sall.

*Dēprāves nec dum distorto aliquid supersit, You may go on corrupting so long only as in the depraved there remains aught (to be corrupted).*—Sen.

The two are combined by Cicero:

*Juriconsultorum ingenii plerique corrupta ac dēprāvata, By the ingenuity of lawyers most things are marred and deteriorated.*

2. Morbus, i, m., a disease or distemper which attacks. *Valētudo, inis, f., the state of such as are sick. Aegritudo, inis, f., mental suffering, distress. Aegrotatio, ōnis, f., the state of bodily sickness:*

*Sed proprie ut aegrotatio in corpore sic aegritudo in animo nomen habet, But correctly, as bodily disorder is denominated "aegrotatio," so mental is called "aegritudo."*—Cic.

3. Insolentia, ae, f. (in solleo), properly want of practice, hence, strangeness, affectedness, haughtiness, generally of an insulting kind. *Intolerantia, ae, f. (in tollere), intolerable conduct, ungovernable haughtiness. Superbia, ae, f., pride, shown by looking down on people—thinking little of others, and their attainments. Arrrogantia, ae, f., arrogance, shown in making exorbitant pretensions, claiming more than one's due—opposed to modestia:*

*Ex arrogantia odium, ex insolentia arrogantia, Hatred (springs) from arrogance—arrogance (itself) from haughtiness.*—Cic.

*Quis eum cum illa superbia atque intolerantia ferre potuisset, Who could have endured him with that contempt (for others) and impatience of control?*—Cic.

*Gaudere, gavisus sum, 2, denotes joy as a state of mind, an inward moderate joy. Lactor, ātus sum, 1, to give utterance to, or show signs of joy. Gestio, ivi, and ū, 1, denotes a passionate uncontrolled joy, as of triumph, or exultation.*

## PHRASES.

Eng. <i>From this cause,</i>	Lat. <i>Haec</i> (or <i>quā</i> ) <i>de causā.</i>
" <i>To be grieved, &amp;c. at</i>	" (Often) <i>to be affected with grief, &amp;c.</i> <i>Dolore affici.</i>
" <i>Now everything, &amp;c.,</i> (introducing a proposition).	" <i>Omne autem.</i>
" <i>Through the midst of the forum,</i>	" <i>Per medium forum.</i>

## EXERCISE XXX.

1. From this cause they were deeply (*magnopere*) grieved. 2. Beauty perishes through wine; by wine is life destroyed (*corumpo*). 3. They threw (*imperf.*) their limbs burning with disease into the cold rivers. 4. Tarquinius, relying upon his victories and his wealth, was revelling (*exultō*) in his insolence. 5. A drop of wine is lost in the greatness of the sea. 6. Many of (*ex*) his soldiers died from fatigue and thirst. 7. We rejoice in freedom and grieve at slavery. 8. Castor takes pleasure in (*gaudeo*) horses; his brother<sup>1</sup> Pollux in fights. 9. Certain entire states delighted in frugality, as the Lacedaemonians. 10. Vespasian never rejoiced in the slaughter of any man; he even wept and mourned over punishment (*abl.*) (when) deserved. 11. High-souled heroes were they, reliant on their valour and proud of their strength (*abl.*). 12. Door-posts, magnificent with barbaric gold and spoils (of war), fell-foremost (*præcumbō*). 13. He could not be content with moderate gain. 14. In the civil war Marius delighted, with a sort of<sup>2</sup> hideous cruelty, in the slaughter of his enemies (*adversarius*); and executioners dragged the noblest men through the midst of<sup>3</sup> the forum. 15. They insolently boasted of their victory. 16. The enemy, relying on (their) numbers (*sing.*), commenced the battle.

<sup>1</sup> Ovo prognātus eodem: literally, sprung from the same egg. See Dr. Smith's Class. Dict. art. Dioscūri.

<sup>2</sup> A sort of, quidam: see St. L. G.

385, Obs.: immāni quādam saevitiā.

<sup>3</sup> The midst of, mediū, in agreement with subs.: see St. L. O. 341.

## XXXI.—OTHER VERBS WITH ABLATIVE.

§ 315. The Deponent Verbs *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *vescor*, *nitor*, *pōtor*, with their compounds, govern an Ablative: as,

*Sapiens ratiōne optimo utitur.* The wise man uses reason in the best way.—Cic.

*Mariis maritimis rebus fruimur atque utimur.* We enjoy and make use of very many maritime productions.—Cic.

*Agēsilaus magnā est praedā pōtuit.* Agēsilaus obtained possession of great.—Nep.

Obs. 1. Most of these are Instrumental Ablatives: the Deponents having been originally Passives or Reflectives. The Ablative with *pōtor* is perhaps governed by the Comparative implied in it.

Obs. 2. *Pōtor* sometimes takes the Genitive; especially in the phrase *rēmum pōtiri*, to obtain the management of affairs.—Cic.

Obs. 3. *Fungor* is also found with the accusative, especially in the earlier writers.

- × § 316. Verbs of *buying, selling, valuing, exchanging*; and the Adjectives *cārus, dear, and vilis, cheap*, are used with the Ablative of Price: as,

*Lycurgus ēmi singula non pēcūniā, sed compensatiōne mercium jussit, Lycurgus directed that things should be bought, not with money, but by an equivalent of goods.*—Justin.

*Viginti talentis ūnam orationem Isocrātes vendidit, Isocrates sold a single speech for twenty talents.*—Plin.

*Quod non ōpus est, asse cārum est, What you don't want is dear at any price (lit., at an as).*—Cic.

*Mutat quadratā rōtundis, He changes square for round.*—Hor. (With *muta*, either of the articles of exchange may be put in the Ablative.)

Obs. 1. The Ablative is used because the Price is the *means* by which a thing is obtained.

Obs. 2. The Ablative of Price is only used when a definite sum is expressed by a Substantive; but an Indefinite Price is expressed by the Genitive of an Adjective of quantity: see § 281.

× EXCEPTIONS.—But the Ablatives *magno, at a high price*; *permagno, plurimo, at a very high price*; *nimio, at too high a price*; *parvo, at a low price*; *minimo, for a very low price*; *nillo, for nothing*; are also found with words of *buying, selling, and valuing*, without a Substantive: as,

*Permagno decimas vendidisti, You farmed the dues (tenths) out at a very high rate.*—Cic.

*Non potest parvo res magna constare, A great thing cannot cost little.*—Sen.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the punishment to which a person is condemned is put in the Ablative, but more frequently in the Genitive: see § 280.

- × § 317. Verbs and Adjectives signifying *fulness or want* often govern an Ablative: as,

*Germania rivis fluminibusque abundat, Germany abounds in streams and rivers.*—Sen.

*Neptūnus ventis implevit vela secundis, Neptune filled the sails with favourable winds.*—Virg.

*Voluptate virtus saepe cūrot, nunquam indiget, Virtue is often without pleasure, never needs (it).*—Sen.

*Cera referta notis, A wax tablet full of marks.*—Ov.

Obs. 1. Verbs of *filling* and *want* rarely govern the Genitive; but Adjectives more frequently govern the Genitive than the Ablative: see § 276. *Indigeo*, however, usually takes the Genitive: as, *aeris indigere, to want money.*

Obs. 2. The Verbs *afficere, instruere, ornare, &c.*, come under this rule, and govern an Ablative of the thing: as,

*Prædæ affectu populos suos, He has enriched his countrymen with booty.*—Plaut.

Obs. 3. *Præditus, endowed with*, also governs the Ablative: as,

*Mens est prædita mōtu sempiterno, The mind is endowed with perpetual motion.*—Cic.

Obs. 4. After verbs and adjectives of *fulness*, the ablative is that of the instrument or means *with which* (§ 311); after those of *want*, it is that of *separation* (§§ 306, 307).

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Ūtor*, ūsus eum, 3; and *ūsurpo*, ūvi, ūtum, 1; to use; the latter permanently, the former incidentally, by a single act. *Frūor*; ūtus and fructus eum, 3, to enjoy the use of, feel a pleasure in using, have a complete enjoyment of:

*Hannibal cum victoriā posset ūti, frui māluit. When Hannibal could have reaped the consequences of his victory, he chose rather to enjoy it.*—Nep.

2. *Brēvis*, c, short, opposed to longus. *Exiguus*, a, um, small in bulk, opposed to magnus. *Parvus*, a, um, small, physically or morally, relatively to other things of the same class or sort. *Curtus*, a, um, clipped, docked, of something which has been shortened by cutting:

*Brēvis census*, A small income.—Hor.

*Exiguus mus*, A tiny mouse.—Hor.

*Corpus parvum*, A small frame.—Hor.

*Curtus mulus*, A bob-tailed mule.—Hor.

3. *Deinde* (de inde), as used of the consecutive order of the parts of a proposition, signifies *secondly*. *Tum* then denotes *thirdly*; *postea* *fourthly*:

*Præcipitur primum ut pure loquāmur; deinde ut dilate; tum ut ornate postea ad rerum dignitatem apte, It is laid down as a rule that we speak first correctly, in the next place clearly, then elegantly, and fourthly suitably to the dignity of the subject.*—Cic.

4. *Locus*, l (m. in sing., m. and n. in plural), place, as a spot. The plur. *loci* is especially used of the points or grounds of an argument. *Tractus*, ūs, m., a tract of country, a region; with the notion of extent. *Régio*, ūis, f., a district, country.

5. *Ignis*, is, m., fire in the abstract. *Flamma*, æ, f., flame. *Ignis* is the cause, *flamma* the effect. *Incendium*, i, n., a fire in the sense of a conflagration. It is sometimes used figuratively: as,

*Belli incendis*, The flames of war. Virg.

6. *Cōthurnus*, i, m., a kind of buskin used by hunters, with a high heel. *Soccus*, ūs, m., a shoe worn by Roman women, with a low heel. The former was used by actors in tragedy; the latter in comedy. Sometimes these words have a figurative use: as,

*Nec cōmœdia cōthurnis assurgit, nec contra trāgoedia socco ingréditur, Neither does comedy soar in buskins, i. e. to the sublime, nor again does tragedy walk in lowly style.*—Quint.

## PHRASES.

Eng. <i>Anaximenes, &amp;c. of Lampsacus,</i>	Lat. (Often) <i>Anaximēnes Lampsacēns.</i>
" <i>This proves the safety of,</i>	" <i>This is for the safety for (est salūti).</i>
" <i>As men say,</i>	" <i>Et ajunt (or ajunt).</i>
" <i>To speak grandly, &amp;c.,</i>	" <i>Magnum, &amp;c. loqui.</i>
" <i>To value highly,</i>	" <i>To value of much (magni aestimare).</i>
" <i>more,</i>	" <i>To value of more (pluris).</i>
" <i>To abound in gold,</i>	" <i>Auro (abl.) abundare.</i>
" <i>To punish a man,</i>	" <i>Aliquem poenā afficere.</i>
" <i>Milk, cheese, and flesh,</i>	" <i>Milk and cheese and flesh, or milk, cheese, flesh.</i>

## EXERCISE XXXI.

1. The life itself which we enjoy is short. 2. Alexander the Great had (*utor*) as his teacher of eloquence Anaximenes of Lampsacus, which thing afterwards proved to be the safety of Lampsacus. 3. In a short time he possessed himself of the whole district which

he had aimed at. 4. The Athenians used the port of Phalærum,<sup>1</sup> (which was) neither commodious (*magnus*) nor good. 5. We use no water nor fire, as the saying is, in more places than (we do) friendship. 6. Some vowels discharge the function of consonants. 7. No one has lived too short a time,<sup>2</sup> who has discharged the perfect obligation<sup>3</sup> of virtue. 8. He is a happy man who enjoys present pleasures. 9. They feed on milk, cheese, and flesh. 10. Aeschylus taught (men) both (how) to speak in a grand style, and to tread (the stage) (*niti*) in the cothurnus. 11. And Achilles was selling the lifeless body for gold. 12. This would the Ithacan desire (*subj.*) and the Atreidae purchase at a high price. 13. Epicurus valued pleasure at a high rate; but no possession ought to be valued (*gerundive*) more highly than virtue. 14. You take away all hope: you perchance care little (*parvi pendis*) what becomes of me.<sup>4</sup> 15. Him shall you by-and-by receive in heaven (*dat.*) laden with the spoils of the East. 16. Life without friends is full of fear. 17. Romulus chose a spot for-his-city<sup>5</sup> both abounding in springs, and healthy (though) in a pestilential district. 18. Dumb animals are without the affections of men, but they have certain impulses like (*similis*) them. 19. The woman asks him to buy (*ut* with *subj.*) the three remaining books at the same price. 20. What lands most abound in wine? France, Spain, (and) Hungary. 21. The house was crammed with gamblers, full of intoxicated (men). 22. We inflict on the wicked as great punishment as<sup>6</sup> equity and humanity allow.

<sup>1</sup> Phalærus, a, um.

<sup>2</sup> Say, a short time.

<sup>3</sup> Mûnus, ēris, u.

<sup>4</sup> Quid de me fiat, or quid me fiat.

<sup>5</sup> Dat. of purpose, see St. L. Gr. 297.

<sup>6</sup> Quantum: for the construction, see St. L. Gr. 382.

### XXXII.—ABLATIVE OF QUALITY AND COMPARISON.

§ 318. The Ablative of Quality is used in describing a Person or Thing. Like the *Genitive of Quality* (§ 274), it requires an Adjective to be in agreement with it: as,

Caesar fuisse trālitur excelsā staturā, cōlore candido, tēpētibus membris, Caesar is said to have been of tall stature, fair complexion, and well-formed limbs.—Suet.

§ 319. The Ablative is used after Comparati<sup>us</sup> instead of *quam* with the Nominative, and also instead of *quam* with the Accusative of the subject in the construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive: as,

Nilūl est ōtiōsā sēnectūte (= *quam* otiosa senectus) jūcupulus, Nothing is more delightful than an old age of retirement.—Cic.

Tullus Hostilius Rōmūlo (= *quam* Romulus) fuit fēreior, T. Hostilius was more warlike than Romulus.—Liv.

Scimus sōlem multo majōrem esse terrā (quam terram), We know that the sun is much greater than the earth.—Cic.

*Obs.* The Ablative is never used when two Predicates are compared: as,  
Miltiades Anteor (fuit) omnium libertati quam sive d'indatōni,  
Miltiades was more a friend to the freedom of all, than to his own sovereign  
power.—Nep.

§ 320. In like manner dignus, worthy, and indignus, unworthy, govern the Ablative: as,

Virtus imitātione, non invidiā, digna est, Virtus is deserving of imitation, not of envy.—Cic.

Quam multi luce indigni sunt, How many are unworthy of the light of day!—Sen.

## SYNONYMS.

1. Singularis, e; and insignis, s; denote distinction of any kind, good or bad. Eximius, a, um; and egregius, a, um; only that distinction which arises from excellence. Excellens, eminens, and praestans denote superiority of any kind.

2. Opera, ae, f., activity or work of some kind, service, instrumentality: Gr. ἔργον. Labor, ōis, m., exertion followed by fatigue or pain, toil: Gr. ἔργον. Industria, ae, f., activity, industry. It is opposed to ignavia.

Dile operam, to devote one's efforts, do all in one's power.

Potētia, ōis, f., capable of enduring fatigue.—Sall.

Mihi in labore perferendo industria non dērit, I shall lack no assiduity in sustaining toil.—Cic.

3. Forma, ae, f., a form, model, or pattern. Figūra, ae, f. (from fingō), a figure, anything which possesses a definite outline. Forma would therefore characterize a species, while figūra would distinguish the individual of that species. But they are often used indiscriminately. Species, ei, f. (specio), denotes the outside appearance of a thing, as opposed to the inner substance; the appearance:

Corpōis nostri magnam naturā ipsa vidētur, habuisse rationem, quae formam nostram, reliquamque figuram in quā erat species honesta, ea posuit in promptu, Nature herself seems to have had a leading design in reference to our persons, in that she has brought into full view our shape, and the rest of our figure, to which there belonged a comely exterior.—Cic.

4. Ignōro, avi, itum, 1, not to know, &c. implies carelessness or negligence. Nescio, ivi and ii, 4, rather implies want of opportunity to learn. Ignōro is often used with reference to persons; nescio only of things:

Nescire Latine, To be ignorant of Latin.—Cic.

Ignorat patrem, He does not know his father.—Ter.

5. Histōria, ae, f. (ιστορία), properly an investigation. It often signifies a history of the time in which its own author has lived. Annāles, ium, m. (annus), properly records of what occurs from year to year, especially a history of former times, chronicles. Histōria moreover comprises the causes of events, the description of places and men, while annāles rather relate ancient facts without entering into particulars. Latin writers, however, sometimes use the terms indiscriminately. Fasti, ōrum, m., a calendar containing the festivals and other important days:

Res mēmōranda novis annālibus atque recenti histōriā, A thing to be related in new chronicles, even in the history of modern times.—Jur.

Erāt enim histōria nihil aliud nisi annālium confectio, For history was no more than an arrangement of old records.—Cic.

## PHRASES.

Eng. Of noble birth

Lat. Nobili genere

" Of low birth,

" Mālo genere

" The last king, the one immediately

" Rex proximus.

precellens,

" Worthy of a man,

" Viro aequo.

1. Cat.  
2. Iphic.  
form. 3.  
both of m.  
lius of-A  
mind tha  
6. There  
firmness;  
and prude  
such<sup>3</sup> infl  
people a d  
it-to-pass  
est honou  
pleasing th  
nothing w  
Hostilius v  
than Rom  
who more  
another pla  
defeats. 1  
beneficence  
pure and p  
thing is a  
Laelius, w  
that he wa  
Hercules, j  
disgraceful  
lamentation

1 Possessu  
quality.  
2 Lōdplex,  
3 Tantus:  
quantity or de  
4 Non mōdo

XXXII

§ 321. T  
thing is gr  
uoxion with

Turres dē  
than the walls  
Q. Pompē  
older than I  
Quo quisq  
more (by what  
labour does he

PR. L.—IV

EXERCISE XXXII.

1. Cato possessed <sup>1</sup> remarkable foresight and industry in all things.  
 2. Iphicrātes possessed <sup>1</sup> both a great mind and body, and a princely form. 3. Lucius Catilina, a man of noble birth, possessed <sup>1</sup> great power both of mind and body, but a bad and depraved disposition. 4. Gellius of Agrigentum (*adj.*) was more amply endowed (lit. richer)<sup>2</sup> in mind than in wealth. 5. I have outshone my ancestors in valour. 6. There is C. Cassius (a man) of remarkable uprightness, virtue, and firmness; there is C. Curio (a man) endowed with the highest ability and prudence. 7. Wherefore, since (*quum*) you are (a person) of such<sup>3</sup> influence, you ought not, M. Cato, to call a consul of the Roman people a dancer. 8. By your virtue and your industry you brought-it-to-pass, that (*ut* with *subj.*) you were thought worthy of the highest honour. 9. None of (*de*) the virtues is more admirable or more pleasing than compassion. 10. Nothing is more amiable than virtue, nothing which more attracts (men) to love (*gerund*) it. 11. Tullus Hostilius was not only <sup>4</sup> unlike the last king, but even <sup>4</sup> more warlike than Romulus. 12. Who was more illustrious than Themistocles? who more powerful? 13. Either <sup>4</sup> I am ignorant-of this enemy, or <sup>4</sup> another place will be better-known <sup>4</sup> than the Trasimene lake by our defeats. 14. What is better, or more excellent, than goodness and beneficence? 15. There is nothing in history more pleasant than a pure and perspicuous brevity. 16. Of all things from which anything is acquired, nothing is better than agriculture. 17. Caius Laelius, when (*quum*) a certain man of low birth said (*imp. subj.*) that he was (*inf.*) unworthy of his ancestors, rejoined, <sup>5</sup> "But, <sup>5</sup> by Hercules, you (*are*) not unworthy of yours." 18. It seems to be disgraceful, and not worthy of a man, to groan, to howl, to make lamentation, to be overcome (*frangor*), to cry (*ploro*).

<sup>1</sup> Possessed: say, was of, with *abl.* of (eud) etiam.

<sup>2</sup> Lōdiples, etc.

<sup>3</sup> Tantus: the reference being to quantity or degree, not quality.

<sup>4</sup> Non mōdo (or *adlūm*) . . . vērūm

<sup>5</sup> Aut . . . aut: see St. L. G. 570.

<sup>6</sup> Compar. of *nōbīlis*.

<sup>7</sup> Inquit, which is to be let into the following sentence, like our "said he,"

<sup>8</sup> At: see St. L. G. 575.

XXXIII.—ABLATIVE OF MEASURE AND OF TIME.

§ 321. The Ablative of Measure denotes *by how much* one thing is greater or less than another, and occurs in connexion with Comparative words: as,

Turres *dēnis* pēdibus quam mūri altiores sunt, The towers are higher than the walls by ten feet.—Curt.

Q. Pompeius, biennio quam nos maior, Quintus Pompeius, who was older than I (Cicero) by two years.—Cic.

Quo quisque est sollertior et ingēniosior, hoc docet laboriosius, The more (by what degree the more) clever and gifted a man is, with the more labour does he give lessons.—Cic.

§ 322. The answer to the question *When?* is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

*Plato uno et octogésimo anno scribens est mortuus, Plato died while, writing in his eighty-first year.*—Cic.

*Extremâ pueritiâ miles fuit summi imperâtoris, In the last part of his boyhood he was the soldier of a very great general.*—Cic.

§ 323. But when the Substantive denoting Time is without an Attributive the Preposition is generally used: as,

*Aurigandi arte in adolescentiâ fuit clârus, He (Nero) was distinguished in his youth for his skill in driving.*—Suet.

*Ter in anno, Thrice in the year.*—Cic.

*Obs.* The following Ablatives are exceptions: *die, by day; nocte, by night* (but also *de die, de nocte*); *vespère a, vespèri, in the evening*; *tempore, in time, in season*: which are used without a Preposition.

§ 324. The answer to the question *Within what time?* is expressed by the Ablative alone, or by the Ablative with the Preposition *in*: as,

*Agamemnon vix decem annis unam cepit urbem, Agamemnon with difficulty in ten years took a single city.*—Nep.

*Senatus decrevit, ut legati Jugurthae in diebus proximis decem Italiâ decederent, The Senate decreed that the ambassadors of Jugurtha should depart from Italy within the next ten days.*—Nep.

§ 325. The answer to the question *How long before?* or *How long after?* is expressed by the Ablative with *ante* or *post* after it. But the Accusative may be used with *ante* or *post* preceding it. If the Preposition is placed between the numeral and the substantive, either the Ablative or Accusative may be used. Thus all the following forms may be used with the same meaning:

*Accusative.*

*ante* or *post* tres annos  
" *post* tertium annum  
tres *ante* or *post* annos  
tertium *ante* or *post* annum

*Ablative.*

tribus annis *ante* or *post*.  
tertio anno *ante* or *post*.  
tribus *ante* or *post* annis.  
tertio *ante* or *post* anno.

When *ante* or *post* stands last, it may govern a proposition depending upon it: as,

*Annis quingentis et decem post Romam conditam Livius fabulam dedit, Livius brought forward a drama 510 years after the founding of the city.*—Cic.

*Obs.* When *ante* or *post* is followed by *quam* and a verb, the following constructions may be used:

Tribus annis *post, quam* (or *postquam*) *venerat*.  
*Post* tres annos *quam venerat*.  
Tertio anno *post, quam* (or *postquam*) *venerat*.  
*Post* annum tertium *quam venerat*.

Or *post* may be omitted:

Tertio anno *quam venerat*.

All these expressions signify equally, *Three years after he had come.*



SYNONYMS.

*Dimidium*, i, n., *the half of a thing*. It is the neuter of an adjective used substantively. *Medium*, i, n. is also strictly an adjective, and signifies *the middle of a thing*: see St. L. G. 341:

*Dimidium facti qui bene cepit, habet, ille* has accomplished half his undertaking who has fairly commenced it.—Hor.

*Medio campi* = *medio campo*, *in the centre of the plain*.—Liv.

*Litteræ*, ærum, f., is the general expression for a letter (see § 297, syn. 4). *Codicilli*, òrum, m., a billet, a short note:

*Stimul accēpi a Sēleuco litteras, statim quæsierē Balbo per codicillos quid esset in lege, As soon as I received the letter from Seleucus, I at once inquired, by note, of Balbus what the law was upon the point*.—Cic.

*Cūtis*, is, f., *the skin*, generally of human beings, though also used of animals and inanimate objects. *Pellis*, is, f., usually the hairy, bristly hide of a beast, whether on the body or off. *Vellus*, ōris, n., *the skin of a sheep*, with the wool on it or the fleece itself when taken off. *Tergus*, ōris, n., *the coarse hard skin or hide of an animal*, as of the elephant. *Corium*, i, n., *a hide after it has been tanned*:

*Deformis pro cūte pellis*, *An unsightly hide in place of a skin*.—Juv.

*Rapit novēna terga boum, He burst through the nine thicknesses of bull's hide*.—Ov.

*Alteni corium concidēre*, *To tan a man's hide*.—Plaut.

*Redeo*, ii, itum, 4, *to return*, usually after attaining one's object. *Rēvertor*, sui sum, 3 (opposed to *præfiscor*, to set out), *to turn back on one's way*. *Rēveniō*, veni, ventum, 4, *to come back again*; especially after a distance of time.

PHRASES.

Eng. *Half as large*,  
" *The more, &c. . . the more*,  
" *To appoint a dictator*,  
" *Nearly ten years*,  
" *In spring*,

Lat. *Dimidio minor*.  
" *Tanto . . quanto*.  
" *To name a dictator* (*dictatorem dicere*).  
" *Decem fere annos*.  
" *Vere* (abl.).

EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Ireland is, according to estimate,<sup>1</sup> half as large as Britain. 2. The more<sup>2</sup> severe and dangerous the siege daily became, so much the more<sup>2</sup> frequently were letters and messengers betwixt sent to Caesar. 3. The shape, and the dappled skin (*varietus pellium*) of these animals, is very similar to goats, but in size they a little surpass them.<sup>3</sup> 4. The longer<sup>2</sup> Simonides considered the nature of God, the more obscure<sup>2</sup> did the matter seem to him (to be). 5. Far more laborious is it to overcome one's own self than an enemy. 6. The more difficult<sup>2</sup> a thing is, the more illustrious<sup>2</sup> (it is). 7. On the same day ambassadors sent by the enemy came to Caesar concerning peace. 8. On the following day he divided the cavalry into three parts. 9. Swallows go away in the winter months, and return in the spring. 10. Christ, the author of the Christian religion, was born in the time of Augustus. 11. Charles the Fifth reigned in the sixteenth century after the birth of Christ; Philip the Second succeeded

him in the year fifteen hundred and fifty-five.<sup>1</sup> 12. Within a short time<sup>2</sup> he dispersed the forces of the barbarians. 13. One hundred and eight years after Lycurgus began to write the laws, was the first Olympiad. 14. T. Lartius was appointed dictator about ten years after the first consuls. 15. In the year of Rome<sup>3</sup> four hundred and fifty-eight,<sup>4</sup> the Romans undertook an expedition against the island of Corsica.<sup>5</sup> 16. Paulus Aemilius, whose father had been slain forty-eight years before in the battle of Cannae,<sup>6</sup> was sent against the Macedonians. 17. Micipsa dies a few days afterwards.

<sup>1</sup> Ut aestimatur.

<sup>2</sup> The more . . . so much the more . . . quanto . . . tanto, or quo . . . eo: as, quanto gravior oppugnatio . . . tanto crebriores littorae, &c.

<sup>3</sup> Say, they are (by) a little larger.

<sup>4</sup> Say, after Christ being born, post Christum natum.

<sup>5</sup> Use the ordinals: anno millesimo sexcentesimo quinquagesimo quinto (post Christum natum).

<sup>6</sup> Say, in a short time (abl.).

<sup>7</sup> In the year of the founding of the city, anno urbis conditae.

<sup>8</sup> Say, the island Corsica (apposition).

<sup>9</sup> Pugna Cannensis.

#### XXXIV.—ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

✕ § 326. The answer to the question *Where?* is put in the Ablative both without and with a Preposition.

✕ § 327. The construction of the names of Towns and small Islands, in answer to the question *Where?* is explained, p. 26.

✕ § 328. The following Ablatives are used without a Preposition, in answer to the question *Where?* *dextrā, on the right hand; laevā, on the left hand; terrā mārīque, on sea and land; bello, in the field* (comp. § 258): as,

*Intōnuīt laevā, It thundered on the left hand.*—Virg.

*Terrā mārīque cōquīrēro, To make search by sea and land.*—Cic.

✕ § 329. The following Substantives, *lōcus, terra, régio, via, iter,* are frequently used in the Ablative without a Preposition, when some Attributive is attached to them: as,

*Athēniēnses lōco ulōco castra fecērunt, The Athenians formed their camp in a suitable spot.*—Nep.

*Aurēliā viā prōfectus est, He set out by the Aurelian way.*—Cic.

✕ § 330. Any Substantive, with the Adjective *tōtus*, may be put in the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

*Quis tōto mārī lōcus tūtus fuit, What place was safe throughout all the sea?*—Cic.

*Tōta Asiā, Throughout all Asia.*—Cic.

§ 331. In all cases besides the above, a Preposition must be used: as,

*In Italiâ nullus exercitus (erat), There was no army in Italy.*—Sall.

*In hac solitudine cæreo omnium collôquio, In this solitude I am without the society of anybody.*—Cic.

Obs. These restrictions are not observed by the Poets, who use the Ablative freely to denote place: as,

*Silisque agrisque visque corpôra foeda jacent, O'er forest, field and highway, the loathsome bodies lie.*—Ov.

SYNONYMS.

1. *Cultus*, ūs, m., in its widest sense signifies *anything belonging to dress*, especially the ornamental part of dress, jewels, gold, &c. *Hâbitus*, ūs, m., also has general reference to dress, but more particularly regards the decency or cleanliness of the exterior—the style of the hair, carriage of the body, &c. *Vestis*, is, f., signifies *clothes as a necessary covering of the body*—anything, in short, that serves as a covering. *Vestimentum*, i, n., is an article of clothing (vestis). *Âmictus*, ūs, m., denotes *anything used as a wrapper over the underclothing*.

*Frustra jam vestes, frustra mutantur âmictus, In vain, now the under, and in vain the outer dress is changed.*—Catul.

*Calcêos et vestimenta mutâvit, He has changed his shoes and his garments (i. e. he has become a senator).*—Cic.

2. *Via*, æ, f. (probably digammated from root i-tre), a road or way—the usual route from one place to another. *Iter*, itinêris, n. (tre, it-um), a way or course to a particular point, whether ordinarily used as such or not, also a journey. *Via* and *iter* may be either narrow or wide, but the former generally denotes a broad carriage-road. *Trâmes*, tis, m.; *callis*, is, m. (sometimes f.); and *sêmîta*, æ, f.; all denote a narrow path. *Trâmes* (trans meo), a by-path. *Callis*, a cattle-walk, or the track of wild beasts in the forest. *Sêmîta*, a narrow way or footpath, a causeway which often runs by the side of the high road:

*Trebônus Itinêribus dêvils in viam præfiscitur, Trebonius by sequestered paths wends his way into the high road.*—Cic.

*Discêdam ego illi de viâ, de sêmîta, I will make way for him on the road and on the causeway.*—Plaut.

*Egreesus est non viis sed trâmitibus, He went out, not by the high road, but by footpaths.*—Cic.

3. *Nêmo*, inis, c., no one, nobody (nullus used as genitive) is used of persons only. *Nullus*, a, um, of persons or things:

*Nêmo omnium tam est immânis, No human being is so monstrous.*—Cic.

*Êléphanto nulla belluârûm prudêntior, No animal is more sagacious than the elephant.*—Cic.

*Argumentum id quidêdem nullum est, That argument is indeed of no force.*—Cic.

PHRASES.

Eng. To put on (an article of dress),

Lat. *Se* } *vestem induère.*  
*Subi* }

" The space of three days,

" *Triduum.*

" By forced marches,

" *By long marches (longis Itinêribus)*

" During the whole of that night,

" *Eâ totâ nocte.*

" By sea and land,

" *Terrâ mârîque (by land and sea).*

" The river Po,

" *Flûs amnis.*

" Above and below,

" *Supra infra.*

## EXERCISE XXXIV.

1. The Lacedaemonians were hard-pressing<sup>1</sup> the men of Attica in a severe war. Codrus, king of the Athenians, put on a shepherd's<sup>2</sup> dress and was slain in the enemy's camp. 2. The Romans in the first naval engagement with the Carthaginians used grapplers<sup>3</sup> made-of-iron (*culji*). 3. Caesar in the harbour of Alexandria leapt down into the sea from his ship. 4. Who can compute those who in the city of Rome were slain in civil war? 5. Because they were greatly impeded neither by the mountaineers, nor by the ground,<sup>4</sup> he performed in that space-of-three-days a considerable part of the journey.<sup>5</sup> 6. (He) himself, by forced marches, hastens into Italy and there raises two legions. 7. They, pursuing the rear too eagerly,<sup>7</sup> engage in battle with the cavalry of the Helvetians in an unfavourable position. 8. In the whole of this engagement no one was able to see an enemy who did-not-face-him.<sup>8</sup> 9. The whole of that night they marched<sup>9</sup> uninterruptedly, and came, on the fourth day, into the territories of the Lingones. 10. Almost sixty years had war raged<sup>10</sup> in Sicily, by sea and land. 11. He journeyed<sup>11</sup> towards the left. 12. The Hercynian forest stretches in a straight line with the river Danube.<sup>12</sup> 13. By all the well-known roads and footpaths he sent forth chariots<sup>13</sup> from the woods. 14. On the right hand and the left two seas shut us in; around (us) is the river Po, larger and more rapid<sup>14</sup> than the Rhone. 15. There are innumerable worlds above, below, on the right hand and the left, before and behind.

<sup>1</sup> *Præmēbant*.<sup>2</sup> *Men of Attica, Attici*.<sup>3</sup> Use the adj. *pastorālis*.<sup>4</sup> Lit. *crows* (*corvi*), so named from their hooked form.<sup>5</sup> *Locus*.<sup>6</sup> A considerable part of the journey, *Miquantum itineris*.<sup>7</sup> Too is often expressed by the comparative degree, see St. L. Gr. 351.<sup>8</sup> Say turned away (from him), *aversus*, part. of *averto*.<sup>9</sup> *Ierunt*, from *eo*.<sup>10</sup> Use the impers. form, *bellatum erat*, lit. *it had been warred*.<sup>11</sup> *To journey, iter facere*.<sup>12</sup> Say in a straight direction of (or with), *rectā fluminis Danubii regione*.<sup>13</sup> Say *charioteers*, *essēdarii*.<sup>14</sup> *Violentus*.

## XXXV.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

§ 332. When a Substantive or Pronoun, together with a Participle or an Adjective, form a clause by themselves, and are not under the government of, or in agreement with any other word, they are put in the *Ablative Absolute*: as,

*His rebus cognitis*, Caesar ad naves revertitur, *Having learnt these things* (lit., *these things having been learnt*), Caesar returns to the fleet.—Caes.

*Pythagōras Tarquīnio Superbo regnante in Italiam venit*, *Pythagoras came into Italy in the reign of Tarquinius Superbus* (lit. *Tarquinius Superbus reigning*).—Cic.

*Aliquid salvis legibus agere, To do a thing without breaking the laws.*  
(Cic.)

Obs. 1. The Ablative Absolute may often be explained as the Ablative of Time (§ 322), as in the 1st and 2nd of the above examples: sometimes as the Ablative of Manner (§ 311), as in the 3rd. It always denotes some condition or attendant circumstance of that which is described in the rest of the sentence as taking place.

Obs. 2. As there is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in the case of Deponent Verbs, this Participle in English must in Latin usually be changed into the Passive, and put in the Ablative Absolute agreeing with what was before its own object: as,

*Caesar, expulso exercitu, ad hostes contendit, Caesar, having landed the army, hastens against the enemy.*—Caes.

✕ § 333. Sometimes a perfect participle passive is put in the Ablative Absolute, where the Substantive is represented by an entire clause: as,

*Nondum comperto, in quam regionem venisset, It not being yet ascertained into what quarter he had come.*—Liv.

*Excepto quo non simul esses, cetera laetus, This fact excepted that you are not with me, (I am) happy in all beside.*—Hor.

Obs. This construction occurs most frequently in the case of the Ablatives *audito, cognito, comperto*, and the like.

✓ § 334. The Ablative Absolute is frequently used with one Substantive in Apposition to another without any participle, because the verb *sum* has no Present or Perfect Participle: as,

*Natus est Augustus, M. Tullio Cicero et Antonio consulibus, Augustus was born when M. Tullius Cicero and Antonius were consuls.*—Suet.

*Si se invito transire conarentur, If they should attempt to cross against his will (lit., he being unwilling).*—Caes.

SYNONYMS.

1. *Contio, ōnis, f.* (prob. a shortened form of *conventio*: less correctly spelt *concio*), an assembly of people or soldiers convened to listen to speeches. *Concilium, i, n.* (cor. *cileo*), a council, does not differ widely from *contio*, though it is usually applied to smaller bodies. *Consilium (con, sideo)*, is a council for the purpose of deliberation. *Cōmītia, ōrum (con or eum and et)*, an assembly for electing magistrates or making laws. *Conventus, ūs, m., n.* assembly for the purpose either of business or pleasure:

*Dimissa contione, concilium habitum, When the public assembly had been dismissed, a council was held.*—Liv.

*Venio ad cōmītia, sive magistratuum sive legum, I come to the meetings whether for the appointment of magistrates or the passing of laws.*—Cic.

*Festus dies agunt virorum et mulierum conventu, They celebrate their festivals in a mixed gathering of men and women.*—Cic.

*Creo, ōvi, ātum, i*, to call out of nothing, to give existence by one's own will or creative power. Figuratively, to appoint to an office. *Pārio, pēpēri, partum, 3*, to bring forth, give rise to. *Gigno, gēnui, gēnitum, 3*, to beget, of either parent.

*Genēro, ōvi, ātum, i*, to engender, only used of the male parent:

*Quae in terris gignantur ad usum hominum omnia creantur, All things which are produced on earth are made for the use of man.*—Cic.

*Hecuba genuit Alexandrum, Hecuba gave birth to Alexander (Paris).*—Cic.

A Marte pōpūlū Rōmānū gēnērātū accēpīmus, *We have heard that the Roman people were descended from Mars.*—Cic.

Gallina ūa pārēre alet, *The hen usually lays eggs.*—Enn.

3. Scūtum, i, n. (σκούτος), used generally for any shield, but also especially for an oblong shield covered with hide. Clipeus, i, m., a round bossed shield. Parma, ae, f., was of similar shape, but smaller; a buckler. Pelta, ae, f., (πέλτη), the Amazonian crescent-shaped shield. Ancile, is, n., an oval shield—properly the one which, in Numa's reign, was said to have fallen from heaven, and was preserved by the Salii priests; and after the pattern of which others were made.

4. Pāco, avi, ātum, i (pax), to appease or subdue. Pācīficor, ātus sum, i (pācem faciēre), to make peace:

Civīlites pācīvērat, *He had subdued the states.*—Caes.

Dux pācīficari eum altero stātuit, *The general resolved to make peace with the other of the two.*—Just.

## PHRASES.

Eng. To deliver a speech

„ Against one's will,

„ Under the leadership of Cæsar

„ His name was John,

„ The ships are stationed near,

Lat. Orātiōnem habēre.

„ Invītus in agreement with the subject. See St. L. Gr. 343.

„ Cæsāre dīces.

„ To him the name was John, or to John: see St. L. Gr. 296, Obs. 1.

„ Nāves stant ad, &c.

## EXERCISE XXXV.

[N.B.—The phrases to be rendered by the Ablative Absolute are put in Italics.]

1. *When this was done*, the resources of the Lacedaemonians were shattered.<sup>1</sup> 2. Caesar, *summoning a council*, delivered a speech, by which the minds of all were changed. 3. *On the death of Trajan*, Aelius Hadrianus became emperor. 4. Ships cannot enter the harbour of Alexandria, *against the will of those by whom Pharos is held*. 5. Caesar, *seizing a shield* from the hand of a fugitive (*fugiens*), renewed the battle. 6. *Under the generalship of Pausanias*, Mar-donius with two hundred thousand foot<sup>2</sup> and twenty thousand horse was routed from Greece. 7. *When these things had been done*, and the whole of Gaul had been subdued, the nations which dwelt beyond the Rhine sent ambassadors to<sup>3</sup> Caesar. 8. Caesar, *sending his cavalry ahead*, follows-up with all his forces. 9. The Germans, *hearing the shouting in their rear*,<sup>4</sup> cast away their arms, left their military standards, (and) rushed<sup>5</sup> from<sup>6</sup> the camp. 10. *When Augustus was Emperor*, a certain boy, named (*cui nomen erat*) Thoas, brought up a very small serpent with great care, until the citizens, *in spite of the wishes and tears of the boy*,<sup>7</sup> sent it into a wilderness. 11. He himself, *when it was heard* that the fort of Luppia, situated close to<sup>8</sup> the river, was besieged,<sup>9</sup> led thither six legions. 12. *It being ascertained* from the rustics that the ships of the enemy were stationed at Aethalia, he advanced thither.

<sup>1</sup> Use affligo; lit. to dash to the ground.

<sup>2</sup> Say of foot, pēdītum: since millia (pl.) is always used substantively.

<sup>3</sup> Ad with acc., after a verb of motion.

<sup>4</sup> Say behind their back, post tergum.

<sup>5</sup> Say cast themselves forth, se ejē-

cefrunt

<sup>6</sup> Ex uot a, because they were before in the camp.

<sup>7</sup> Invito ac fiente puero.

<sup>8</sup> Appositus with dat.

<sup>9</sup> Pres. imperf. inf., because the action was still going on.

\$ 333.  
Substan-  
denote  
Omn  
—Ter.

Parv  
Obs.  
suf  
nu  
[M  
Obs. 5  
doc  
as,

\$ 341.  
Adjecti  
quires a  
top, the  
mēdus, t  
the begin-

hulced, t  
Ad in  
Unus  
Extrē  
Reliqu  
Obs. 1  
Gen

1. Siccus,  
Aridus,  
Pēdib  
sect.—Ov  
In the at  
dried sub  
Atque  
Virg.  
Siccus w

2. Semper  
cantim  
Mthl q  
know who  
Quod e  
eternal.—

2. Affātim  
(short for  
Sūtis es  
Sūtis ad  
Sūtis ad  
enough an

## XXXVI.—ADJECTIVES.

§ 339. A Masculine Adjective is often used without a Substantive to denote *Persons*; and a Neuter Adjective to denote *Things*: as,

Omnes omnia bona dicere. *All (men) say all kinds of good things.*  
—Ter.

Parvum parva decent, *Small (things) besit a small (man).*—Hor.

Obs. 1. But when the termination of the Adjective alone would not be a sufficient guide, the Substantive *homo* or *res* must be expressed: thus, *multorum hominum, of many persons; multarum rerum, of many things.* [*Multorum* alone might refer to either *persons* or *things.*]

Obs. 2. Masculine Adjectives are mostly used in this way in the Plural: as, *docti, learned men.* But in the Singular, *vir* or *homo* is usually added: as, *homo doctus, a learned man.*

§ 341. *Adjectives equivalent to Substantives.*—Sometimes an Adjective is used in Latin where the English idiom requires a Substantive. This is the case with *summus, at the top, the top of*; *infimus* or *imms, at the bottom, the bottom of*; *medius, the middle*; *extremus, last, at the end of*; *primus, first, at the beginning of*; *reliquus, remaining, the remainder of*; *dimidiatus halved, the half of*: as,

Ad imam quercum, *At the foot of an oak.*—Phaedr.

Unus dimidiatusque mensis, *One month and a half.*—Cic.

Extrema hiemo, *At the end of winter.*—Cic.

Reliqua vita, *The rest of life.*—Cic.

Obs. But *reliquum* is also found as a Neuter Substantive governing the Genitive: as, *reliquum vite* (= *reliqua vita*), Liv.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Siccus, a, um, dry, as opposed to wet.*

*Aridus, a, um (areo), parched up, thoroughly dry:*

*Pedibus siccis super aequora currit, She runs over the sea without wetting her feet.*—Ov.

In the above example *aridus* would not do. But in speaking of fuel, or any dried substance, *aridus* should be used:

*Atque arida circum nutrimenta dedit, And he placed dry fuel all around.*

Virg.

*Siccus* would mean *not wetted*, whether internally dry or not.

2. *Semper, always, at all times. Usque, always, up to a certain time, or continuing beyond it:*

*Mihi quidem unque curae erit quid agas, I truly shall ever be concerned to know what you are about.*—Cic.

*Quod semper movetur id aeternum est, That which is constantly in motion is eternal.*—Cic.

2. *Affatim* (originally *ad fatim*, as two words, *to satisfy*), abundantly. *Satis* (short form *sat*), enough. *Affatim* expresses greater abundance than *satis*:

*Satis est et affatim prorsus, It is enough—in fact it is abundant.*—Cic.

*Satis superque, enough and more than enough:*

*Satis superque id habeo quod mihi dederis, I account what you have given me enough and more than enough.*—Cic.

4. **Proprius**, a, um, *peculiar to a man's own self, proper to him, one's own*. **Suus**, a, um, *his own, her own, its own*, with reference to the subject. Hence, *Litterae manu suâ* (not propriâ) *scriptae*, *A letter written with one's own hand*. **Peculiâris**, e, *especially one's own*, in opposition to *universâlis*, *that to which all are entitled*.
5. **Amitto**, mîai, missum, 3, *to let fall or slip, to lose*. It expresses less than *perdo*, *didi*, *ditum*. 3. **Amitto** denotes that a loss has been incurred unconsciously, or without opposition on the part of the agent. *Perdo* implies that a thing is knowingly wasted. Hence,
- Amittere tempus* is *to lose time or an occasion*.  
*Perdere tempus*, *to waste*, i. e. *mis-spend time*.—Cic.  
*Decius vitam amisit, non perdidit*, *Decius gave up his life voluntarily, he did not lose it (after a struggle)*.—Ego.

## PHRASES.

Eng. <i>My Virgil! my Mæcenas!</i>	Lat. <i>Virgili! Mæcenas!</i>
" <i>The same as,</i>	" <i>Idem qui.</i>
" <i>I have a supply,</i>	" <i>The same who.</i>
" <i>At daybreak,</i>	" <i>Mihi suppedit.</i>
" <i>On the top, bottom, middle of the hill,</i>	" <i>Primâ facie.</i>
" <i>At the end of the second book,</i>	" <i>In summo, infimo, medio colle.</i>
" <i>To provide for corn,</i>	" <i>In extrême libro secundo.</i>
" <i>The rest of the spoil,</i>	" <i>De frumento providere.</i>
	" <i>Reliqua præda.</i>

## EXERCISE XXXVI.

1. But one night awaits (us) all. 2. To few persons do their own things seem to be enough (*salis*). 3. For<sup>1</sup> to the indolent all things seem to be difficult. 4. Not always do the same men reap who have sowed.<sup>2</sup> 5. You<sup>3</sup> will have an abundant supply of everything if diligence do not fail (*fructus peris*) you. 6. Justly will he<sup>4</sup> lose his own (*proprium*), who calls what belongs to another (*alienum*). 7. To those who aim<sup>5</sup> at much, much is wanting. 8. Those things, which you relate concerning me, are true, my son; nature has bestowed much<sup>6</sup> upon us. 9. At daybreak, the summit of the mountain<sup>7</sup> was in possession of<sup>8</sup> T. Labienus. 10. Afranius leads out his forces and stations them in the centre of the hill. 11. Afranius and Petreius lead out their forces to the foot (*radices*) of the mountain, and provoke (the enemy) in battle. 12. The Peloponnesians founded Megara, a city midway<sup>9</sup> between Corinth and Athens. 13. At the end of the bridge, Caesar plants<sup>10</sup> a tower of four storeys, and he strengthens that position with fortifications. 4. They have made no sufficient provision<sup>10</sup> for (de) corn, and other supplies. 15. To the soldiers also we have given up the rest of the spoil, with the exception of the horses.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Enim*, which must be the second word in the sentence.

<sup>2</sup> Say have made the sowing, sēmen-  
freint.

<sup>3</sup> Say to you all things will be, &c.

<sup>4</sup> Is, not ille, is the regular antecedent to the relative: see St. L. Gr. 172.

<sup>5</sup> Dat. pl. of participle.

<sup>6</sup> Say, many things, multa.

<sup>7</sup> Say was held by, imperf. pass. of teneo.

<sup>8</sup> Médus, in agreement with urbem

<sup>9</sup> Constitto.

<sup>10</sup> Non autem providērunt.

<sup>11</sup> Ablat. absol. Exoptio.

\$ 343  
 used also  
 Adverb  
 describi  
 of the ac  
 place, of  
 Ego c  
 -Cic.

Plus h  
 I have to  
 tingly.—T

The  
 quently  
 cillingly  
 pleasure;  
 tingly; in  
 in the mo  
 sublimis,

Obs. Sue  
 dōm,

\$ 345.  
 ment  
 wi  
 clause w

Humil  
 who cross  
 Hispan  
 the last of

Obs. Th  
 distri  
 The  
 (time)  
 prim  
 spoke

1. Accido,  
 of what occ  
 Evénio, v  
 unluck i.

Scles ph  
 blessing to  
 His mál  
 former mo  
 Auspici

2. Jāquo, I  
 lietur, 3,



## XXXVII.—ADJECTIVES—continued.

§ 343. *Adjectives equivalent to Adverbs.*—Adjectives are often used along with Verbs where the English idiom requires an Adverb. This occurs when the word may be regarded as describing the condition of the actor, rather than the manner of the action; also in the case of some Adjectives of time, place, or attitude: as,

*Ego cum a me invitissimus dimisi, I parted with him very unwillingly.*

—Cic.

*Plus hodie boni imprudens feci, quam sciens ante hunc diem unquam. I have to-day done more good unwillingly, than I ever before did willingly.*—Ter.

The following Adjectives are some of those most frequently used in the above manner: *invitus, unwilling, unwillingly*; *laetus, joyful, joyfully*; *libens = libenter, gladly, with pleasure*; *sciens, knowing, knowingly*; *imprudens, unwitting, unwittingly*; *imperitus, unskilled, unskilfully*: add to these, *matutinus, in the morning*; *pronus, on one's face*; *supinus, on one's back*; *sublimis, aloft*.

*Obs.* Such instances as *matutinus, vespertinus, domesticus = mānē, vespere, domi*, are of rare occurrence.

§ 345. *Prior, primus, posterior, postrēmus*, are used in agreement with a Substantive, where in English a relative clause with the verb *to be* is required: as,

*Hannibal primus cum exercitu Alpes transiit, Hannibal was the first who crossed the Alps with an army.*

*Hispania postrēma omnium provinciārum perlōmīta est, Spain was the last of all the provinces which was thoroughly subdued.*—Liv.

*Obs.* The use of *prior, primus, and posterior, postrēmus*, must be carefully distinguished from that of the corresponding adverbs *prius, primum*, etc. The Adjectives serve to compare a person with *some one else* (in point of time); the Adverbs, to denote the order of the Subject's own action: thus *primus dixit* means, *he was the first who spoke*; *primum dixit*, *he first spoke, and then*, etc.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Accidēdo*, *idi*, 3, is used of any unexpected event. *Contingo*, *tigi*, *tactum*, 3, of what occurs by the gift of fortune, and generally implies something favourable. *Evēnio*, *vēni*, *ventum*, 4, to turn out, issue, is used of what is either lucky or unlucky. *Obvēnio*, *vēni*, *ventum*, 4, is to fall to the lot of:

*Scies plura mēla contingere nobis quam accidere, Know that more ills are a blessing to us than a misfortune.*—Sen.

*His mēlo evēnit, illis optime, In the case of the latter it turns out ill—of the former most successfully.*—Cic.

*Auspiciā secunda obvenerunt, They met with favourable auspices.*—Cic.

2. *Relinquo*, *liqui*, *lictum*, 3 (rare), signifies to quit or leave. *Relinquo*, *liqui*, *lictum*, 3, to leave behind. *Dēsero*, *ui*, *sertum*, 3 (de sēro), properly to untie,

*break a connection—to desert.* Destituo, ui, ātum, 3, to abandon, leave in the lurch:

Pōtentes dōmos linquit, *She leaves the abodes of the mighty.*—Hor.

Rēlinquere aēs illīcūm, to leave a debt behind, to die in debt.—Cic.

Omnes nōtī me atque amīcī dēserunt, *All my acquaintances and even my friends desert me.*—Ter.

Quod sit destitūtus quērītūr, *He complains of being abandoned.*—Caes.

2. Nēgo, āvi, ātum, 1; and Rēcūso, āvi, ātum, 1; to deny, as by speech or words. Abnuo, ui, ātum, 3; and Rēnuo, ui, ātum, 3; by signs and gestures. Abnuo, perhaps, *by a wave of the hand*; rēnuo, *by drawing back the head*. Nēgo implies that a negative answer is returned to a question. Rēcūso that a request has been denied, or that something offered has been refused or rejected. Hence nēgo is a milder expression than rēcūso.

Rēcūso also refers to a thing which is regarded as burdensome. Rēpūdīo, āvi, ātum, 1, to that which promises advantage:

Saepe evēnit ut et vōluptātes rēpūdīandae sint, et mōlestia non rēcūtanda, *It will often occur that even pleasures must be set aside, and toil not shrunk from.*—Cic.

4. Altus, a, um (ālo, to rear or raise), high. Arduus, a, um, inaccessible; figuratively, difficult. Celsus, a, um (obsolete cello, to raise), lofty, stately. Excelsus, a, um, stronger than celsus, of great elevation, raised above other objects. Editus, a, um, raised, elevated. Prōcērus, a, um, long or tall. Sublimis, e (prob. for sublēvīmis from sublēvo), raised high; aloft.

Via alta atque ardua, *A high and moreover difficult road.*—Cic.

Ardua mōliri, *To attempt impossibilities.*—Ov.

Ostendebat Carthāgīnem de excelso quōdāmodo lōco, *He was pointing out Carthage from a certain spot higher than the rest.*—Cic.

5. Sōleo, itus sum, 2, to be accustomed to do. Suesco, suēvi, suctum, 3, to grow accustomed to, and so to contract a habit:

Drusus in Illyricum missus est ut suesceret militiae, *Drusus was sent into Illyricum to get accustomed to service.*—Cic.

## PHRASES.

Eng. *It was his happy lot, &c.*

Lat. *Haec configit.*

„ *Only a few,*

„ *Pauci tantum.*

„ *With my eyes open,*

„ *Palpis.*

## EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. To the wise man only this happens, to do (*ut* with *Subj.*) nothing unwillingly, nothing sorrowfully, nothing by compulsion. 2. Few only, of<sup>1</sup> so great a number, return in safety to<sup>2</sup> the camp. 3. The senate also had, even gladly, decreed a levy. 4. An assemblage of the whole of Italy willingly recognised the glory of that deed. 5. (He) who sins wittingly deserves heavier punishment than (he) who sins unwittingly. 6. Joyfully I confess that you have surpassed me in<sup>3</sup> well doing. 7. The former part is open to view,<sup>4</sup> the hinder (parts) are concealed. 8. We were compelled to do (it) against our will, and reluctantly. 9. Therefore not reluctantly did I, at your request,<sup>5</sup> act so as to be<sup>6</sup> of service to many. 10. Cheerfully do I die<sup>7</sup> for my country. 11. The carcases of men were believed to float with the face upwards: (those of) women downwards. 12. Him will I wittingly and designedly send down to that place,<sup>8</sup> whence there is no escape. 13. Why, now, with your face upwards, are you looking towards the

sky? 14. lifted. 15. elect were 17. Read other.

<sup>1</sup> Ex with

<sup>2</sup> In with

<sup>3</sup> Expr. b

prep.

<sup>4</sup> Say appo

§ 346.

quam, the when the

Noque Nor has he

Debet Nor our

Our country

§ 347.

by a word sum must verb to be

Hace ve These are the

Verres a

Cn. Calpurnius influential th

Obs. If th frequen

Ego Phormio

Patro father o

§ 348. T with the o

§ 349. P numerals a

quam, as in the constr

Non plus than four thou

Pictōres coloribus, Th

Minus dact heo thousand

sky? 14. Joyfully they enter, erect, and with (their) heads uplifted. 15. I (am) the first to feel our ills. 16. For the consuls elect were usually first of all asked their opinion in the senate. 17. Read me, I pray (you),<sup>9</sup> this bill first, and afterwards that other.

<sup>1</sup> Ex with abl.

<sup>2</sup> In with acc.

<sup>3</sup> Expr. by abl. of gerund without prep.

<sup>4</sup> Say *appears*. *apparet*.

<sup>5</sup> Abl. absol.

<sup>6</sup> So as to be, Ita ut with subj.

<sup>7</sup> Pro with abl.

<sup>8</sup> To that place whence, eo unde;

<sup>9</sup> Quaeso.

## XXXVIII.—COMPARATIVES.

§ 346. When two members of a comparison are united by *quam*, the second member is put in the same case as the first, when the verb or governing word belongs to both: as,

*Neque habet [hærus meus] plus sapientiæ quam lapis [habet], Nor has he [my master] any more sense than a stone (has).—Pl.*

*Décet nobis cariorem esse patriam quam [décet esse] nosmetipsos, Our country ought to be dearer to us than ourselves.—Cic.*

§ 347. But if the first member of a comparison is governed by a word which does not belong to the second, the verb *sum* must be used with the latter, though in English the verb *to be* is frequently omitted: as,

*Hæc verba sunt Varronis, hominis doctioris quam fuit Claudius, These are the words of Varro, a more learned man than Claudius.—Gell.*

*Verres argentum reddidit L. Cordio, homini non gratesiori, quam Cn. Calpidius est, Verres restored the silver to L. Cordius, a man not more influential than Cn. Calpidius.—Cic.*

*Obs.* If the first member of the clause is in the Accusative, the second is frequently put in the same case by attraction: as,

*Ego hominem callidiorem vidi neminem quam Phormionem (= quam Phormio est), I have seen no man more cunning than Phormio.—Ter.*

*Patrem tam placidum reddo quam ovem (= quam ovis est), I make (your) father as quiet as a sheep.—Ter.*

§ 348. The Comparative frequently governs the Ablative, with the omission of *quam*. See p. 63.

§ 349. *Plus* and *amplius*, *more*, and *minus*, *less*, are used with numerals and words of quantity, either with or without *quam*, as indeclinable words, and without influence upon the construction: as,

*Non plus quam quattuor milia effugerunt (not effugit). Not more than four thousand escaped.—Liv.*

*Pictores antiqui non tantum usi plus (not pluribus) quam quattuor coloribus, The ancient painters did not use more than four colours.—Cic.*

*Minus duo milia hominum ex tanto exercitu effugerunt, Less than two thousand men escaped out of so great an army.—Liv.*

§ 350. When two Adjectives are compared together, either *māgis* is used with the first Adjective, or both Adjectives are in the comparative degree : as,

*Corpōra magna māgis quam firma, Bodily frames rather big than strong.*—Liv.

*Paulli contio fuit vērior quam grātor pōpulo, The speech of Paullus was more true than popular.*—Liv.

§ 351. The Comparative also denotes that the quality exists in a considerable or too high a degree : as,

*Sēnecus est naturā loquāciōr, Old age is naturally somewhat talkative.*—Cic.

*Vōluptas, quā mājor est, omne ānīmi lūmen exstinguit, Pleasure, when it is too great, extinguishes all light of the mind.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. *Too great in proportion to something* is translated by the Comparative and *quam pro* : as,

*Proclium atrocius quam pro nūmēro pugnantium, A fiercer battle than one might expect from the number of the combatants.*—Liv.

Obs. 2. The same notion in connexion with a Verb is expressed by the Comparative and *quam qui* or *quam ut* : as,

*Mājor sum quam cui possit fortuna nocēre, I am too great for fortune to be able to injure.*—Ov.

*Damna mājora sunt quam quae aestimāri possint, The losses are too great to be able to be estimated.*—Liv.

Obs. 3. The same constructions are employed in the case of Adverbs.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Omnis, e, every, all without exception* ; it is opposed to *nēmo* or *nullus*. *Universi, ae, a, all collectively, at once and together*, is opposed to *singuli*. *Cuncti, ae, a (contr. of co-juncti = con-juncti), all combined and united together*, not materially different from *universi*, but less emphatic. *Tōtus, a, um, is the whole as made up of parts*, and which may be broken up into those parts ; whereas *omnis*, especially in *pl.* omnes, applies to *each of the individuals of a species*, which make a whole by being associated together :

We say, *tōtus*, not *omnis orbis, the whole world*.

*Omnes, not tōti hōmīnes, all men*.

*Cuncti clamāre coepērunt, all (in an assembly, for instance) cried out*.

*Unīversa fāmīlia, The whole body of slaves*.

*Unīversos esse pāres aībat, dispersos pēritūros, Combined, he said, they would be a match for them (the Persians) ; but scattered, would all perish.*—Nep.

2. *Terra, ae, f., the earth, or sometimes a part of the earth*. *Tellus, aris, f., properly the goddess of the earth ; hence used poetically for the earth itself*. *Hūmas, i, m. (root χαμ—whence χαμαί = humi), is the ground*. *Sōlum, i, n., properly that which sustains anything upon it ; hence the soil or the earth itself*.

*Terra locāta in mediā mundi sēde, The earth planted in a central position of the universe.*—Cic.

*Mihi calcēamentum sōlōrum callum est, The hard skin of my soles serves me for shoeleather.*—Cic.

3. *Religio, ōnis, f. (prob. fr. rēlēgere), the fear of God ; with the ancients often, a religious or ceremonial scruple*. *Fides, ēi, f., a sense of obligation, because of a promise*. *Sūperstītio, ōnis, f., a needless fear of the gods, superstition* :

*Sūperstītio in quā inest inānis timor deōrum, religio quae deōrum cultu pō*

continē  
of the  
—Cic.

1. Pernici  
um (da  
gant.

Exitia  
affecting

Lēges  
Exitia

Dōnu  
Consu  
and fort

Eng. Man

„ Thre

„ Not

„ With

1. The  
was your  
walls of  
tude (we  
seers bett  
destructiv  
is more i  
Socrates,  
to fear d  
Twenty-t  
hundred  
and twen  
most brav  
battle. 1  
fortune.  
than a sp  
than stea  
live too t  
prudence  
beings to c

1 In with

2 Say by w

3 Captā :

often expre  
being omitte

confunctur, (*It is*) superstition in which there is involved an empty (foolish) fear of the gods, (*it is*) religion which is comprised in a pious worship of the gods.—Cic.

1. *Perniciosus*, a, um (per, nex), bringing death, destructive. *Damnōsus*, a, um (damnum), causing damage, also used in the sense of prodigal or extravagant. *Exitiōsus*, a, um (exitium), destructive, charged with fatal consequences. *Exitialis*, e (poet.), destructive, calculated to destroy. *Cāpitālis*, e (caput) affecting the life or civil status of a citizen; mortal, deadly: *Lēges perniciosae*, Laws destructive to states.—Caes.  
*Exitiōsa conjuratio*, A conspiracy of fatal tendency.—Cic.  
*Dōnum exitiāle Minervae*, The offering to Minerva ruinous (to us).—Virg.  
*Consuetudo damnōsa famae, rēique*, A connexion detrimental to character and fortune.—Liv.

## PHRASES.

Eng. <i>Many times greater,</i>	Lat. <i>Greater by many parts,</i>
	<i>Multis partibus major.</i>
" <i>Three years younger,</i>	" <i>Younger by three years,</i>
	<i>Triennio minor.</i>
" <i>Not less than two thousand,</i>	" <i>Two thousand, not less,</i>
	<i>Duo millia, haud minus.</i>
" <i>With more courage than success,</i>	" <i>More courageously than successfully,</i>
	<i>fortius quam felicius.</i>

## EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. The sun is many times larger than the whole earth. 2. Crassus was younger by three years than Antonius. 3. The towers on the walls of Babylon are ten feet higher<sup>2</sup> than the wall. 4. The multitude (were) seized<sup>3</sup> with an empty superstition, (and) obeyed its seers better than its leaders. 5. The disorders of the mind are more destructive than (those of) the body. 6. The name of Themistocles is more illustrious than (that) of Solon. 7. These are the words of Socrates, a man wiser than all his (fellow) citizens. 8. We ought to fear diseases of the mind more than (those) of the body. 9. Twenty-two thousand of the enemy were slain; more than three hundred were taken alive. 10. He remained not longer than seven and twenty days. 11. The soldiers, for more than four hours, fought most bravely. 12. Not less than two thousand infantry<sup>4</sup> fell in the battle. 13. His wars were conducted with more courage<sup>5</sup> than good fortune. 14. The horns were indeed small, but more transparent than a spotless gem.<sup>7</sup> 15. The besieged fought with more fierceness<sup>6</sup> than steadiness. 16. A prudent father does not suffer his son to live too freely. 17. Alexander pursued his enemies with more prudence<sup>6</sup> than eagerness. 18. The joy was too great for human beings to contain. 19. No response of Apollo is more true than this.

<sup>1</sup> In with *abl.*, rest being signified.

<sup>2</sup> Say by ten feet: see St. L. Gr. 321.

<sup>3</sup> Capt: the former of two verbs is often expressed by a participle, and being omitted.

<sup>4</sup> Use *delect.*

<sup>5</sup> Genitive pl. of *pēdes*, *tis*, because *millie* in pl. is always a substantiva.

<sup>6</sup> Use adverbs, *fortius*, *ferocius*, etc.

<sup>7</sup> *Pān magis pellucidā gemmā.*

## XXXIX.—SUPERLATIVES.

§ 353. To express the highest possible degree, the Superlative of Adjectives and Adverbs is used with *quam*, or in the case of *maximus* with *quantus* also, either with or without *possum* : as,

*Jugurtha quam maximus potest copias armat. Jugurtha raises the largest force he can.*—Sall.

*Tanta est inter eos, quanta maxima potest esse morum studiorumque distantia. There is the greatest possible difference in character and in pursuits between them.*—Cic.

*Dicam quam brevissimè, I will speak as briefly as possible.*—Cic.

*Obs.* We also occasionally find *ut* instead of *quam* without any difference of meaning.

§ 354. The Superlative may be strengthened by the addition of :

1. *Unus* or *unus omnium* : as,

*P. Scaevolum unum nostrae civitatis et ingenio et justitiâ præstantissimum audeo dicere, I venture to call P. Scaevola by far the most distinguished man in our state both in ability and justice.*—Cic.

*Miltiades et antiquitate generis et gloriâ majorem unum omnium maxime florebat, Miltiades was distinguished above all others both by the antiquity of his family and the glory of his ancestors.*—Nep.

2. By *longè* or *multo* : as,

*Alcibiades omnium ætatis suae multo formosissimus fuit, Alcibiades was by far the most handsome of all persons of his age.*—Nep.

§ 355. Comparison may also be made with *quam qui* and the Superlative : as,

*Tam sum inis quam qui lenissimus (i. e. est), I am as mild as the gentlest man in the world.*—Cic.

*Tam sum amicus reipublicae quam qui maximè, I am as much a friend to the commonwealth as any one in the world.*—Cic.

§ 356. “*All the best*,” “*all the wisest*,” and similar phrases are expressed by *quisque* with the Superlative : as,

*Sapientissimus quisque acquissimo animo moritur, All the wisest of men die with the most resignation.*—Cic.

*Altissima quæque flumina minimo sono labuntur, (All) the deepest rivers flow with the least noise.*—Curt.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Epûlæ*, *æram*, *f.*, an entertainment, usually of a sumptuous kind. *Epûlum*, *i.*, *n.*, a public or religious feast. *Convivium*, *i.*, *n.*, a repast of several persons together—a convivial meal. *Comissatio*, *ônis*, *f.*, a gluttonous feasting, a reveling. *Dape*, *dâpis*, *f.* (less frequently in singular, and not for<sup>4</sup> in gen. pl.), a sacrificial feast; poet. any meal :

Bene  
tionem  
ing of  
each oth  
Epûl  
Ampli  
Oblig

2. *Môs*, *n.*  
morals,  
results i  
whether  
from Ca  
during ti

3. *Dignitas*  
esteem.  
which a

Ampli  
—Cic.

Quod  
that this  
(consequ

4. *Nôvus*  
opposed t  
—opposed  
Nihil &  
E prov

Eng. Prov

“ As qui

“ Till la

“ As gre

“ The mo

“ All the

1. *Cæsa*  
on<sup>2</sup> to Ario  
quet till la  
softly as po  
character a  
he possibly  
speak with  
who has de  
We have h  
whole of G  
rished, mor  
the most w  
of the Ponti

PR. L.—

Bene majores nostri accubationem epularem amicorum, quia vitae conjunctionem haberet, convivium nominarunt, *Well did our ancestors call the reclining of friends at meals "convivium," because it involved living together with each other.*—Cic.

Epulum populo Romano dare, *To give a banquet to the Roman people.*—Cic.  
Amplissimae epulae, *A magnificent entertainment.*—Caes.

Obligatam reddere Jovi dapem, *Pay to Jove the sacred banquet due.*—Hor.

2. *Mōs, moris, m., an established custom, especially of a national kind. In pl., morals, character. Consuetudo, inis, f., usage, habit, the continuance of which results in a settled usage (Mos). Ritus, us, m., traditional custom or usage, whether religious or secular. Caeremonia, or caeremonia (said to be derived from Caere in Etruria, which sheltered the Vestals and holy things of Rome during the Gallie invasion), a religious ceremony.*

3. *Dignitas, atis, f., implies merit or dignity which makes a man worthy of esteem. Existimatio, onis, f., is the effect of dignitas, the general esteem in which a man is held, as a recognition of his worth:*

Amplissimos dignitatis gradus adipisci, *To attain the highest degrees of rank.*—Cic.

Quod sentiebam et dignitati et existimationi tuae conducere, *I was of opinion that this contributed both to your dignity, and the esteem in which you were (consequently) held.*—Cic.

4. *Novus is new, inasmuch as it did not exist before, or in older times—opposed to antiquus. Recens, ntis, new, as not having been long in existence—opposed to vetus:*

Nihil erat novi in ejus epistola, *His letter contained no news.*—Cic.

E provincia recens fuit, *He was fresh from his province.*—Cic.

PHRASES.

Eng. Provisions,	Lat. Res frumentaria.
" As quickly as possible,	" Quam celerrime potuit.
" Till late at night,	" Ad multam noctem.
" As great as possible,	" As great as the greatest can be,
" The most cruel man that ever was,	Quantus maximus potest esse.
" All the newest things,	Gravissimus quam qui unquam fuit.
	" Recensissima quaeque.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. Caesar after collecting provisions<sup>1</sup> as speedily as possible, pushed on<sup>2</sup> to Arivistus. 2. In varied discourse we lengthen out the banquet till late at night. 3. Birds build their nests and line them as softly as possible. 4. There is between them as great a difference of character and pursuits as possible. 5. For he gave me as much<sup>3</sup> as he possibly could, intending to give more<sup>3</sup> had he been able. 6. I speak with<sup>4</sup> (you) one of the bravest of men (use *unus*), (and one) who has done nothing but (*nisi*) what is most full of dignity. 7. We have heard that Plato<sup>5</sup> was by far the most learned man in the whole of Greece.<sup>6</sup> 8. This (*rel. pron.*) land Juno is said to have cherished, more than all (other) lands.<sup>7</sup> 9. Plato was in speaking by far the most weighty and eloquent of all. 10. From the commentaries of the Pontifices he seems to have been far superior<sup>8</sup> in natural talent.

11. While every kind of arrogance (*omnis arrogantia*) is hateful, that arising from talent<sup>9</sup> and eloquence is by far the most annoying. 12. All these things aid and adorn speech.<sup>10</sup> 13. They waged war with the tyrant, the most cruel and violent towards his own (subjects) that ever was. 14. Somehow or other<sup>11</sup> all the most learned despise him. 15. All the newest things are corrected and most carefully<sup>12</sup> amended. 16. All the best things are the most rare.

- <sup>1</sup> Abl. absol., comparatū re frēm-  
<sup>2</sup> Contendo. [tārā.  
<sup>3</sup> Quantum maximum . . . amplius.  
<sup>4</sup> Cum with abl.  
<sup>5</sup> That Plato was, Acc. and Infin. ;  
 see St. L. Gr. 507.  
<sup>6</sup> Say, of the whole [of] Greece, using

- universus.  
<sup>7</sup> Magis omnibus animis.  
<sup>8</sup> To be superior, vāleo, 2.  
<sup>9</sup> Say, that of talent, ingēnium.  
<sup>10</sup> Oratio, i. e., set or formal speech.  
<sup>11</sup> Nescio quomodo.  
<sup>12</sup> Most carefully, maxime.

### XL.—THE PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 357. The Personal Pronouns are not usually expressed when they are the Subjects of personal Verbs. But they must be expressed where emphasis is required: as,

*Ego te laudavi, tu me culpasti, I have praised thee, thou hast blamed me.*

*Res, nos consules dēsūmus, It is we, we the consuls, who are wanting [in our duty].—Cic.*

§ 359. The plural forms *nostrum, vestrum*, must be carefully distinguished from *nostri, vestri*. The former alone (being true Plurals) are used as Partitive Genitives, or in connexion with *omnium*. Thus *one of us* is *unus nostrum* (not *unus nostri*); *the wish of you all*, *omnium vestrum* (not *vestri*) *vōluntas*.—Cic.

*Obs. Nostri, vestri*, are not true Plurals, but the Genitives Singular Neuter of *noster, vester*, used abstractly. Thus, *mēmōr nostri* = *mindful of our interest* (i. e. of us).

§ 360. The Reflective Pronoun *sui, sibi, se*, with the Possessive Pronoun *suus*, refer to the subject or Nominative case of the sentence: as,

*Nicias tuā sui mēmōriā dēlectatur, Nicias is delighted with your recollection of him.*—Cic.

*Bestiis hōmīnēs ūti possunt ad suam ūtilitatem, Men can make use of animals for their own advantage.*—Cic.

§ 361. The Possessive Pronoun *suus* in principal sentences sometimes refers to the Object or to another case, when there is a close connexion between the two words: as,

*Hannibālem sui cives ē civitatē ējecerunt, His own citizens drove Hannibal out of the state.*—Cic.

remine  
 Suc  
 nature

§ 3  
 may  
 also t  
 when  
 of the  
 (Pr  
 sorted  
 Ari  
 portē  
 Ariov

§ 36  
 in Lat  
 suppli  
 Apr  
 De  
 confiden

Obs.  
 on

1. Amar  
 St. L.  
 oris,  
 implie  
 i, m.,  
 Inte  
 amante  
 one th  
 (for so

2. Incip  
 to begin  
 either  
 is to b  
 opposa  
 Si qu  
 Incip  
 Incip  
 With  
 Coop  
 Hoc  
 ment, n

Eng. To g  
 " To g  
 " He  
 " Thre



*Catiline admonēbat alium egestatis, alium cupiditatis suae, Catiline reminded one of his poverty, another of his (ruling) passion.—Sall.*  
*Sua cuiusque animantis natura est, Every living creature has its own nature.—Cic.*

§ 362. In subordinate propositions, *sui, sibi, se, and suus* may refer, not only to the subject of that proposition, but also to the subject of the principal proposition, especially when that proposition expresses the thought or wishes of the previous subject: as,

*(Prænlus) dixisse fortur, a se visum esse Romulum, oculus is reported to have said that Romulus had been seen by him.—Cic.*

*Arionistus respondet, si quid Caesar a se velit, illum ad se venire portare, Arionistus replies that, if Caesar wishes anything of him (Arionistus), he ought to come to him (Arionistus).—Caes.*

§ 363. The Possessive Pronouns are frequently omitted in Latin, when they are not emphatic, and can be easily supplied from the context; as,

*Apud matrem recte est, All is well with (your) mother.—Cic. ad Att.*  
*De fratre confido ita esse ut semper völi, As for (my) brother, I feel confident that all is as I desired.—ib.*

*Obs.* The Possessive Pronouns, especially *suus*, often denote something proper or favourable to: as, *suo loco, suo tempore, at a favourable place or time.*

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Amans, ntis*, (part. of *amo*, and not used as a substantive in nom. sing.: see St. L. Gr. 638), *one who at the time loves*, whether permanently or not. *Amator, oris, m.*, one with whom the feeling is habitual and permanent. Neither implies necessarily that there is any reciprocity of the feeling. *Amicus, i, m.*, involves the notion of reciprocity, a (sincere) friend:

*Inter ebriositatem et ebrietatem interest, illudque est amatorem esse, illud amantem, There is a difference between selfishness and drunkenness, and it is one thing that a man should be a lover, another that he should have a liking (for some one).—Cic.*

2. *Incipio, cæpi, ceptum, 3*; and *Coepti* (defect.: see St. L. Gr. 120) both signify to begin. *Coepti*, however, is intrans., and governs the Infinitive only; *incipio* either the infinitive or a substantive in the acc. case. *Ordior, orsus sum, 3*, is to begin, as opposed to advancement. *Inchoo, avi, atum, 1*, to begin, as opposed to ending or accomplishing:

*Si quando abundare coepero, if ever I begin to be well off.—Cic.*

*Incipio sperare, I begin to hope.—Cic.*

*Incipere sementem, to commence sowing.—Virg.*

With passive verbs, *coeptus sum* is used for *coepi*:

*Coepta est pecunia deberi, The money began to be due.—Cic.*

*Hoc inchoati officii est, non perfecti, This is characteristic of the commencement, not the completion of a duty.—Cic.*

#### PHRASES.

Eng. *To put to flight,*

" *To give every man his own,*

" *He departed this life,*

" *Threes (40.) miles,*

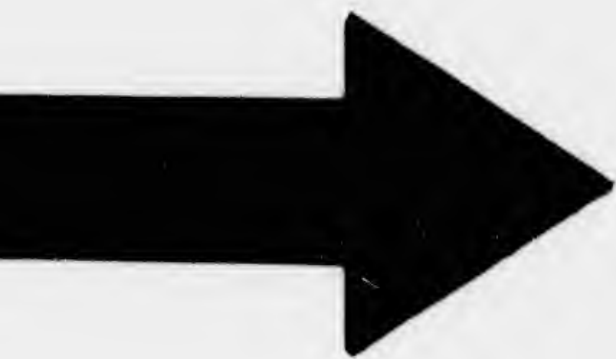
Lat. *In fugam dare.*

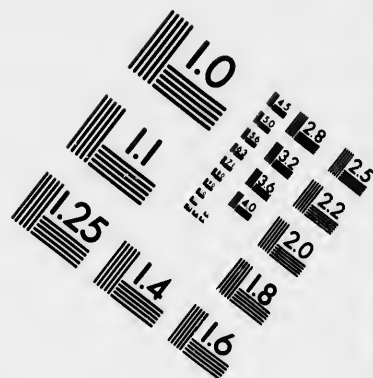
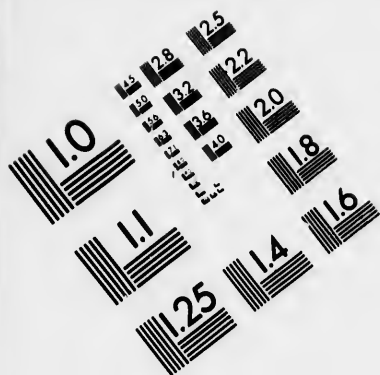
" *Sua cuique tradere.*

" *Ex hac vita excessit.*

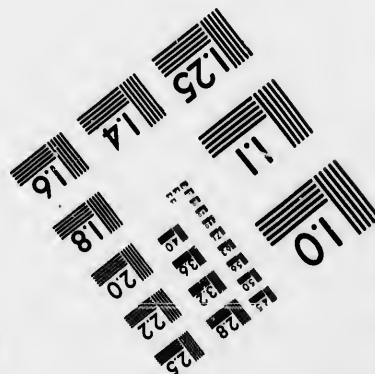
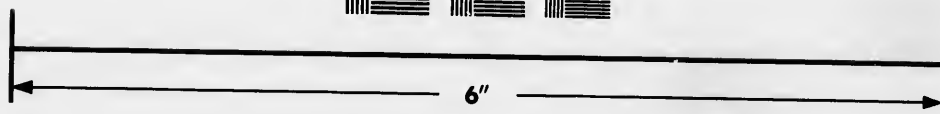
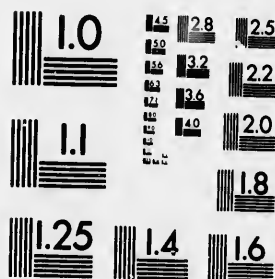
" *Tria (40.) millia passuum.*







# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBS\*ER, N.Y. 14530  
(716) 872-4503

0  
F<sub>6</sub> F<sub>8</sub> F<sub>10</sub> F<sub>12</sub> F<sub>14</sub> F<sub>16</sub> F<sub>18</sub> F<sub>20</sub> F<sub>22</sub> F<sub>24</sub> F<sub>26</sub> F<sub>28</sub> F<sub>30</sub> F<sub>32</sub> F<sub>34</sub> F<sub>36</sub> F<sub>38</sub> F<sub>40</sub> F<sub>42</sub> F<sub>44</sub> F<sub>46</sub> F<sub>48</sub> F<sub>50</sub> F<sub>52</sub> F<sub>54</sub> F<sub>56</sub> F<sub>58</sub> F<sub>60</sub> F<sub>62</sub> F<sub>64</sub> F<sub>66</sub> F<sub>68</sub> F<sub>70</sub> F<sub>72</sub> F<sub>74</sub> F<sub>76</sub> F<sub>78</sub> F<sub>80</sub> F<sub>82</sub> F<sub>84</sub> F<sub>86</sub> F<sub>88</sub> F<sub>90</sub> F<sub>92</sub> F<sub>94</sub> F<sub>96</sub> F<sub>98</sub> F<sub>100</sub>

10  
01  
02  
03  
04  
05  
06  
07  
08  
09  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99

## EXERCISE XL.

1. You have conquered, I will conquer. 2. I am Miltiades who conquered the Persians. 3. Fabius is most loving towards each of us. 4. His love towards us was never greater, never more welcome. 5. Dion's son threw himself from<sup>1</sup> the upper part of the house and so perished. 6. When<sup>2</sup> he had said this with a loud<sup>3</sup> voice, he cast himself forth from the ship, and began to bear the eagle towards the foe. 7. The Romans, all their men following up,<sup>4</sup> attacked the foe and put them to flight. 8. We render every man his own. 9. All the forces of the Treviri which had been sent against Labienus, encamped three miles away from his camp. 10. Q. Titurius, quite-disturbed by these things, saw Ambiorix at a distance, exhorting his men, and sends his interpreter Cn. Pompeius to him. 11. On the announcement of these things to Afranius, he withdraws from his undertaking (*opus*) and retires into his camp. 12. He was treating with Caesar through Sulpicius the lieutenant about his own and his father's safety. 13. He sends a letter to Trebonius (to say) that he should come to him by forced marches with three legions. 14. In this way they signify (that) a great number (*acc.*) of the states are not able (*inf.*) to withstand their might. 15. He summons Dumnorix to him (and) introduces his brother. 16. When this<sup>5</sup> was known, Caesar earlier than he had been wont,<sup>6</sup> goes to his army. 17. He departed this life at the proper time<sup>7</sup> rather for himself than for his fellow-citizens.

<sup>1</sup> From, i. e., down from, &c.<sup>2</sup> Quam, with subj.<sup>3</sup> Say, great, magnus.<sup>4</sup> Abl. absol.<sup>5</sup> Use Relative.<sup>6</sup> Quam consuevit.<sup>7</sup> Suo magis quam civium suorum tempore.

## XII.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. (See § 78.)

§ 364. *Hic* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the First Person, and denotes *this near me*. Hence it may frequently be translated by *present* or some similar word: as,

*Opus vel in hac magnificentia urbis conspiciendum, A work worthy of being seen even in the present magnificence of the city.*—Liv.

*Qui hæc vituperari vult, Those who wish the present state of things to be blamed.*—Cic.

*Sed. Stola, iudex hic noster, Sextus Stola, who sits here as our judge*—Cic.

§ 365. *Illuc* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Third Person, and denotes *that near him or yonder*. Hence it is used to denote something at a distance, which is well known or celebrated: as,

1. Læo often (cont)  
A  
Il  
St  
P  
2. Præ point evil. omen. alarm of na  
Præ  
Ost  
—Sue  
Por  
Da  
All  
which  
d. Quæ usual

Ex suo regno sic Mithridates profugit, ut ex eodem Ponto Mæden illa quondam profugisse dicitur, *Mithridates fled from his kingdom just as the famous Mæden fled once upon a time from the same Pontus.*—Cic.

Magnus ille Alexander, *Alexander the Great*.—Vell.

§ 366. When *hic* and *ille* are used together, referring to two persons or things mentioned before, *hic* refers to the nearer, *ille* to the more remote : as,

Cæsar beneficiis atque munificentia magnus habebatur, integrumque vitæ Cato. *Ille* mansuetudine et misericordia clarus factus, *huc* severitas dignitatem addiderat, *Cæsar* was deemed great for his generosity and munificence, *Cato* for the spotlessness of his life. The former had gained renown by his gentleness and clemency, in the latter severity had conferred distinction. —Sall.

§ 368. *Iste* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Second Person, and denotes *that near you or that of yours* : as,

De *istis* rebus exspecto tuas litteras, *Concerning those things where you are* I am expecting your letters.—Cic.

*Ista* oratio, *That speech which you make*. —Cic.

§ 369. *Isto* often has a contemptuous meaning, especially in addressing an opponent : as,

*Iste* vir optimus, *That excellent man of yours* ironically. —Cic.

Animi est *ista* molitia, non virtus, *That is weakness of mind, not fortitude*.—Cæc.

Obs. The distinction in meaning between *hic*, *iste*, *iste* is found in the adverbs derived from them.

## SYNONYMS

1. Læcus, ūs, m., a reservoir, a lake. Stagnum, i, n., a standing pool, a pond, often a fish-pond. Pālūs, ūdis, f., a marsh, a marshy lake. Uligo, inis, f. (often for ūlīgo, from ūveo), soil soaked with water, a fen, quagmire :—

A furno redeuntes Bœuque, *When returning from the oven and the reservoir*.—Hor.

Stagna viridia musco, *Ponds green with moss*.—Virg.

Pāludes siccare, *To drain marshes*.—Cic.

2. Prōdīgium, i, n., (pro and dig, rt. of d-gillus, f. ger; Gk. ἐκκρυψ, I show, point at), any prodigy or marvellous circumstance, whether indicative of good or evil. Ostentum, i, n., (ostendo), a marvellous circumstance; often of good omen. Portentum, i, n., (portendo, i.e. pro-tendo), a portent, usually of an alarming nature. Monstrum, i, n. (mōneo), anything contrary to the course of nature, usually foreboding ill; a monster;—

Prōdīgia cūrāre, *To attend to prodigies* (by expiatory rites).—Liv.

Ostentum pro laetissimo accepit, *He took the omen for a most auspicious one*.—Suet.

Portentorum explātiōnes, *Explanations of portentous events*.—Cic.

Dūbia monstra, *Prodigies of doubtful import*.—Virg.

All these words except ostentum are also used in a figurative sense of *that which excites disgust or alarm*.

3. Quērēla, æ, f., and Quērīmōnia, nē, f., both denote a complaint; the latter, usually a well-grounded complaint, as of an injured person who denounces

the injustice done him; while querela is usually the complaint arising from discontent, or reluctance to undergo hardship. *Questus*, ūs, m., any kind of complaint. *Queritatio*, ōnis, f., continued lamentation. *Gemitus*, ūs, m., a groan, sob. *Plangor*, ōris, m., and *Planctus*, ūs, m., express the beating of the breast as a sign of deep sorrow:—

*Cui sunt inauditae querelae tuae? Who has not heard of your complaints?—Cic.*

*Magna querimonia omnium discessimus, With loud complaints from all, we retired.—Cic.*

*Ingentes iterasti peccore planetus, Heavy blows thou hast redoubled on thy breast.—Slat.*

1. *Dēversorium*, i, n., any house of reception on a journey, whether one's own or that of a friend, or of an innkeeper. *Hospitium*, i, n., a place to receive strangers. *Hospitium* also denotes a reciprocal relation in the way of hospitality. (See Dict. of Antiq. s.v.) *Caupōna*, ae, f., a tavern. *Hospitalitas*, atis, f., denotes the act or practice of entertaining strangers kindly:—

*Dēversoria nota praetereundis equis, The horse must be driven past the well-known halting-places.—Hor.*

*Cum Lycone est mihi hospitium, I am on visiting terms with Lyco.—Cic.*

## PHRASES.

Eng. At day-break.	Lat. At first light (primū luce).
" That famous Caesar.	" Ille Caesar.
" You on the other hand.	" Tu contra.
" I make no complaint.	" I complain nothing (nihil queror).
" Both armies.	" Each army (utroque exercitus).

## EXERCISE XII.

1. At Caere a vulture flew into the temple (*aedes*) of Jupiter; at Volsinii the lake ran<sup>1</sup> with blood. For the sake of<sup>2</sup> these prodigies there was a supplication for one day (*acc.*). 2. These complaints of the Sicilians even reached<sup>3</sup> the senate. 3. With this (aforesaid) cavalry having set out by night, he at daybreak entered the gate, and proceeded into the Forum. 4. This (same) is the famous battle near (ad) the (lake) Trasimenus, and (one) recorded<sup>4</sup> among the few ruinous-defeats (*clades*) of the Roman people. 5. The latter relies<sup>5</sup> on the will,<sup>6</sup> the former on nearness of relationship. 6. That famous Antipater was a Sidonian, whom you, Catulus, well remember. 7. If she praise<sup>7</sup> the beauty of the former, you on the other hand (will praise) that of the latter. 8. At<sup>8</sup> the banquet was this (same) person of whom I speak, a young man of Rhodes. 9. M. Cato, that wise (and) most illustrious man, is of all my friends the dearest to me. 10. Of<sup>9</sup> violated hospitality, and of<sup>10</sup> that nefarious crime (of yours), I make no complaint. 11. At-your approach (*abl.*) those seats (where you were) were vacated. 12. That brother of yours<sup>10</sup> has told me all that occurred in the Senate. 13. Each army strove,—these to seem (*ut* with *subj.*) to have rendered aid, those not to have (*ne* with *subj.*) needed assistance. 14. With-the-latter (*dat.*) fatherland, wives, parents; with-the-former, avarice and extravagance<sup>11</sup> were the causes of war. 15. If you are willing to be men, I will show you a plan by which you may escape those great ills (of yours). 16. All those things



that cruel Sulla holds, as though (they were) torn (*rāpio*) from foreigners. 17. Fearing that very thing, Agricola opposed to them as they advanced (*part.*) four troops (*ala*) of horse. 18. He himself, by a leisurely<sup>12</sup> march, established (*loco*, 1) infantry and cavalry in the winter quarters.

<sup>1</sup> *Me*, 1: with *abl.*

<sup>2</sup> *Causā*. St. L. G. 264.

<sup>3</sup> *Pervēlo*, *vēlo*, *ventum*, 4: with *in* and *acc.*

<sup>4</sup> *Mēmōro*, 1.

<sup>5</sup> *Nitor*, *alsus* and *nixus*, 3: with *abl.*

<sup>6</sup> *Testāmentum*.

<sup>7</sup> *Fut. tense*; see St. L. G. 497.

<sup>8</sup> *In* with *abl.*

<sup>9</sup> *De* with *abl.*

<sup>10</sup> *Tuus iste frater*.

<sup>11</sup> *Luxūria*.

<sup>12</sup> *Lentus*.

### XLIII.—DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 370. *Is* refers to some person or thing determined by the context: as,

*P. Asinius Asellus mortuus est C. Sacerdōte practōre. Is quum haberet unicā filiam, eam bonis suis herēdem instituit. P. Asinius Asellus died in the praetorship of C. Sacerdos. Since he had an only daughter, he appointed her heir to his property.*—Cic.

§ 371. The Accusative and Dative of *is* are frequently omitted, when they would be in the same case and refer to the same object as in the previous clause: as,

*Frātrē tuū in cēteris rēbus laudo: in hac unā reprehendēre cōgōr. In other respects I commend your brother: in this alone I am compelled to censure (him).*

*Nōn obstitam frātris tui vōluntāti; fāvēre nōn pōtēro. I will not stand in the way of your brother's desire: further (it) I cannot.*

*Obs.* Sometimes the Accusative of *is* is omitted, even when it refers to a different case: as,

*Litrī, de quibus scribis, mei nōn sūt; sumpsī a frātre meo. The books about which you write are not mine; I borrowed (them) from my brother.*

§ 375. *Idem* may often be translated by *also* or *on the other hand*, when it denotes similarity or opposition in reference to a person or thing already mentioned: as,

*Nūllū tūle, quod nōn idem hōnestum, (There is) nothing expedient which is not also honourable.*—Cic.

*Inveni multī sūt, qui vitam prōfundēre pro patriā parātī essent, idem glōriæ jactūrā nō minūm quidē facere vellent. There have been found many who were prepared to pour out life for their country, and at the same time would not make the very least sacrifice of glory (on her behalf).*—Cic.

§ 376. *Ipse* gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and may often be translated by *very*, *just*, or *exactly*: as,

*Quæram ex ipsā, I will enquire of the woman herself.*—Cic.

Accipio quod dant; mihi enim satis est, *ipsis non satis, I accept what they give: for it is plenty for me though not for themselves.*—Cic.

Ibi mihi Tulliola mea fuit praesto, natali suo ipso die, *There met me my (daughter) Tullia: just on her very birthday.*—Cic.

Crassus triennio ipso minor erat quam Antonius, *Crassus was younger than Antony by exactly three years.*—Cic.

§ 377. Ipse, when joined to a personal pronoun, agrees with the Subject or the Object, according as either one or the other is more emphatic. Thus “me ipse laudo,” *I (but not another person) praise myself*; but “me ipsum laudo,” *I praise myself (but not another person)*: as,

Non ego medicinā [i. e. ut alii me consolentur]; me ipse consolor, *I do not require any medicine; I comfort myself.*—Cic.

Cato se ipse interfecit, *Cato slew himself* [i. e. others did not slay him].

Fratrem suum dein seipsum interfecit, *He slew his brother and afterwards himself.*—Tac.

## SYNONYMS.

1. Impēdimenta, ōrum, n., *the baggage of an army, including the carriages. Sarcina, ae, f., what was carried by the soldier on his back, a knapsack or bundle*:—

Ad Cyrrham Q. Metellus praedam, capivos, et impēdimenta locavit, *quintus Metellus deposited the spoil, the prisoners, and the baggage near Cyrrha.*—Sall.

Sub sarcinis aliorum militum, *To attack soldiers when loaded with baggage.*—Quint.

Figuratively:

Sarcinam illi imponere, *To impose upon a man.*—Plaut.

2. Mēreo, ui, itum, 2; and Mēreor, itus sum, 2; *to deserve, earn. Mēreō is usually a transitive, mēreri an intransitive verb. The former is usually construed with an accusative, the latter with an adverb. Mēreō is sometimes used without an object, by an ellipsis of the word stipendium*:—

Bene de illquo mēreri, *To deserve well of a man.*

Mēreō (rather than mēreri) stipendium, *To serve a campaign* (lit. *to earn pay*).

Mēreō (not mēreri) culpam, *To deserve blame.*—Ter.

Mēreō equo vel pedibus, *To serve either in the cavalry or infantry.*—Liv.

3. Grātiā or grātiās habēre, *to feel gratitude* (Gr. χάριν εἶδέναι). Grātiās agēre, *to return thanks in words* (χάριν λέγειν). Grātiā rēferre, *to show gratitude by deeds* (χάριν ἀποδοῦναι). Grātes agēre is a less usual form than grātiās agēre:—

Inops etiam si grātiā rēferre non pōtest, habēre tamen pōtest, *Even if the needy man cannot show gratitude by acts, he can feel it.*—Cic.

Grātiās tibi ago, summe sol, vobisque reliqui coelites, *Thanks I render to you, O most exalted sun, and the rest of the heavenly bodies.*—Cic.

## PHRASES.

Eng. *Musicians who are also called.*

Lat. *Musicians who the same, &c.*

“ *To be greatly honoured.*

Musici qui illdem, &c.

“ *To be in high honour, &c.*

Magno in honore esse.

“ *It is exactly thirty days since, &c.*

“ *There are thirty days themselves when, &c., Trīginta sunt ipsi dies cum, &c.*

## EXERCISE XLII.

1. His father Neeles was of good family.<sup>1</sup> He married a citizen of Halicarnassus,<sup>2</sup> of (ex) whom was born Themistocles. 2. Chabrias rather close to die than to throw away<sup>3</sup> his arms and<sup>4</sup> leave the ship in which he had sailed (vehor). This the rest were unwilling to do. 3. Dividing his forces into three parts<sup>5</sup> he conveyed the baggage of all the legions to Aduatica. That is the name of the fort. 4. Darius, surpassed by the king in acts-of-kindness, wrote him three letters and gave him thanks. 5. Musicians, who are also<sup>6</sup> called poets, are highly esteemed by all. 6. A man most innocent, and most learned also,<sup>6</sup> who deserved well of the state and of mankind at large (omnibus), has departed this life.<sup>6</sup> 7. Beneficence, which one may (vivit) also<sup>6</sup> call either benignity or liberality, is greatly admired by all. 8. They wish to have a friend such as they themselves cannot be; and what<sup>7</sup> they themselves bestow not even on their friends, this do they desire from them. 9. It was exactly thirty days from the time when I delivered this letter. 10. But I can advance no greater proof of his good-breeding than that, on the one hand,<sup>8</sup> when a youth, he was most agreeable to the old man Sulla; (and) when aged (he was so) to the young man M. Brutus. 11. The chariot and robes, and, if you can believe it (subj.), the divinity (nūmen) itself, are (say, is) purified in a secret lake. 12. The Marcomanni gained<sup>9</sup> their settlements by (their) valour, having driven out the Boii in-former-times.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Gēnērōsus.<sup>2</sup> Halicarnassia (civis).<sup>3</sup> Abl. absol., omitting "and."<sup>4</sup> Cōpis in tres partes distribūtis.<sup>5</sup> Idem, eādem, idem.<sup>6</sup> Vitā concessit.<sup>7</sup> Plur.<sup>8</sup> Idem.<sup>9</sup> Potior, with abl.<sup>10</sup> Olim.

## XLIII—RELATIVE AND CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 379. *Correlation.*—The following is a list of the principal Relative Pronouns, with their respective correlatives or regular antecedents, and their corresponding Adverbs:

RELATIVES.	CORRELATIVES.
qui	is, idem
quālis	tālis
quantus	tantus
quot (indecl.)	tot (indecl.)
ADVERBS	
quāliter	ita
quantōpère	tāliter (rare)
quōties (-ens)	tantōpère
	tōties (-ens)

*Bestiae in quo loco natae sunt ex eo se non commovent, Beasts do not move from the region in which they were born.—Cic.*

*Eadem utilitatis quae honestatis est regula, The rule of expediency is the same as that of honour.—Cic.*

*Quales . . . principes, tales . . . cives, Like rulers, like people.—Cic.*  
*Tantas spes quantas nunc habet, non habebit. He would not be in possession of such wealth as he now possesses.—Cic.*

*Quotiescunque dico, toties mihi videor in iudicium venire, As often as I speak, so often do I seem to stand my trial.—Cic.*

*Obs. 1.* After *talis, tantus, tot* and the corresponding Adverbs, the Relative *quālis, quantus, etc.*, are often left to be understood: as,

*Quaeso tam angustam talis vir (sc. quālis tu es) pōnis dōmum, Prythoe, being such a man (as thou art), buildest thou so small a house?—Phaedr.*

*Conservare urbes tantas atque tales (sc. quātae atque quāles eas sunt), To preserve cities so great and so remarkable (as those).—Cic.*

*Obs. 2.* It must not be supposed that the Relative *qui* is regularly preceded by *is* or *idem*: but these pronouns are to be used when such a determinative antecedent is necessary, and not *hic, ille, or iste*. When the last-named Pronouns occur as Antecedents, they retain their proper demonstrative force: as,

*Ille fulgor qui dicitur Jovis, Yonder splendour which is called (that of) Jupiter.—Cic.*

§ 381. *Special constructions of the Relative.*—When in English a Relative sentence defines and limits the extent of a Superlative in agreement with the antecedent, the Superlative is in Latin inserted in the Relative clause: as,

*Thēmistocles noctu de servis suis [eum] quem habuit fidelissimum, ad Xerxem misit, Themistocles sent the most faithful slave whom he possessed, by night to Xerxes.—Nep.*

§ 382. The Relative Adjectives *quālis, quantus*, are capable of being governed (like the simple Relative) by a Verb, Substantive or Adjective in their own clause: as,

*Tālis (erat) quālem te esse video, He was the like of what I see you to be.—Cic.*

*Nunquam vidi tantum (contionem), quanta nunc vestra est, I never saw so large an assemblage as yours now is.—Cic.*

*Obs.* *Tālis, tantus* are often followed by the Subjunctive with *ut*.

#### SYNONYMS.

*Diligō, lectum, 3, to love from a sense of worth, to esteem. Amo, āv, ātum, 1, to love affectionately. Diligō denotes therefore a quieter feeling; whereas amo often denotes a passionate love. Amo is less forcible than dēamo, which is to love passionately or desperately. Adāmo is to fall in love:—*

*Tantum accessit ut mihi nunc dēn'que amāre videor, ante dilexise, So much has it increased that now at length I seem to myself to love, before to have (merely) felt a regard.—Cic.*

*1. Disputatio, ōnis, f. (disputo), a debate or disputation between persons of different opinion. Contentio, ōnis, f. (contendo), properly an effort, a striving; hence a warm dispute. Contestatio, ōnis, f. (cum testis), strong solicitation or entreaty. It is not used by good authors in the sense of a quarrel:—*

Vehementissima contentio animi, ingēni, virium, the most powerful effort of the mind, talents, and strength.—Cic.  
Disputationem de aliqua re instituere, To commence an argument on any topic.—Cic.

2. Dilecto, avi, atum, i, to confer a positive pleasure. Oblecto, avi, atum, i, to amuse or entertain:—

Reſero me ad Mūſas, quæ me maxime dīlectārunt, I resort to the Muses, who have yielded me especial delight.—Cic.

Hābēbis quæ ſonētītem oblectent, You will have the means for enlivening your old age.—Ter.

PHRASES.

Eng. As much as.	Lat. Tantum . . . quantum.
" As many . . . so many.	" Quot . . . tot.
" As many and great.	" Tot tantique.
" The better a man is, the more, &c.	" Quo quis melior est eo, &c. . . ita &c. Ut quisque est vir optimus, . . . ita, &c.
" I am not the man to fear.	" Non is sum qui timeam.

EXERCISE XLIII.

1. I am not the man, said he, to be very seriously terrified (*subj*) by the chance of death. 2. The citizen is he who loves his country. 3. We know as much as we retain in-our-memory. 4. In the same night that<sup>1</sup> Alexander was born, was the temple of the Ephesian Diana burnt-down.<sup>2</sup> 5. As much time (*gen.*) as others allow for pleasures, and to the mere<sup>3</sup> rest of mind and body, so much have I, for my part (*egōmet*), taken for these studies of mine. 6. Nor did I as greatly desire this argument (to be treated) by Crassus, as I am delighted by his speech. 7. I seem to myself to witness such<sup>4</sup> a fight as never took place (*scilicet*, was). 8. As many kinds of speeches as we have said exist (*esse*), so many (kinds) of orators are there found (to be). 9. No one dared, (even) in silence,<sup>5</sup> to wish for as many and great things as the immortal Gods bestowed<sup>6</sup> on Cn. Pompey. 10. The better a man is, with the greater difficulty does he believe that others are wicked. 11. The exploits of Hercules were as many and as great as were ever heard of. 12. Caesar had not as great an army as Pompey. 13. The Athenians were not the men to be terrified by a tyrant's threats. 14. I do not so often receive your letters as I could wish. 15. And to the very men in whose presence<sup>7</sup> he was pleading (*āgo*), he seemed to be such as he himself wished to be.

<sup>1</sup> Begin with the Relative clause: qua nocte natus est.

<sup>2</sup> To be burnt down, deſtrugere.

<sup>3</sup> Ipe, a, um.

<sup>4</sup> When such denotes magnitude, use tantus.

<sup>5</sup> In silence, silentus, a, um; adjective being often used in Latin where the English idiom requires an adverb or adverbial phrase. St. L. Gr. 343.

<sup>6</sup> Dēſero, ſ, irr.: with ad and acco.

<sup>7</sup> Apud with acc.

## XLIV.—INDEFINITIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 383. *Alquis* is more emphatic than *quis*. Hence *alquis* stands by itself, while *quis* is an enclitic, used with relative clauses and after the conjunctions *quum*, *si*, *nisi*, *ne* and *nam*: *as*,

*Illis prōmissis standum non est, quæ coactus quis metu prōmiserit*  
*One is not bound by those promises which one has made under compulsion of fear.*—Cic.

*Divitiæus Cæsarem obsecravit, ne quid grāvius in frātre statuëret,*  
*Divitiæus besought Cæsar, not to resolve on anything too severe against his brother.*—Cæsar.

§ 384. *Quispiam* is used like *alquis*, but with less emphasis: *as*,

*Forssan aliquis aliquando ejusmodi quidpiam fecerit, Perhaps some one may have at some time done something of the like.*—Cic.

§ 385. *Quidam*, a certain one, denotes a person or thing of which no further definition is considered necessary or desirable: *as*,

*Quidam ex advocātis intelligere se dixit, non id agi, ut verum inveniretur, One of the assistant counsel said he could see the object aimed at was not the discovery of truth.*—Cic.

*Habitant hic quaedam mulierculæ, There dwell here certain young women.*—Ter.

§ 386. The substantive *quisquam* and the adjective *ullus*, any one whatever, are used in negative propositions and in questions with the force of a negation, and with *sine*: *as*,

*Iustitia nunquam nocet cuiquam, qui eam habet, Justice never harms any one who possesses it.*—Cic.

*Sine sociis nemo quidquam tale cōnātur, No one attempts anything of the sort without associates.*—Cic.

*Sine virtute neque amicitium neque ullam rem expetendam consequi possumus, Without virtue we cannot attain either to friendship or to any desirable object.*—Cic.

*Quid est, quod quisquam dignum Pompēio assero possit? What is there that any one can advance worthy of Pompey?*—Cic.

§ 388. *Quisquo* denotes each one by himself (distributively), and in principal sentences is always placed after *se* and *suis*: *as*,

*Sibi quisque maxime cōsistit, Everybody consults his own interests above all.*—Cic.

*Suæ quemque fortunæ maximè poenitet, Everybody has most fault to find with his own fortune.*—Cic.

*Obs.* In relative sentences *quisque* stands immediately after the relative, as an enclitic: *as*,

*Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hac se exercent, Let each practise himself the art which he is acquainted with.*—Cic.

§ 389. *Quisque* is also used with the Comparative and Superlative. See examples under § 356.

§ 390. *Alius*, when repeated, signifies *one . . . another*; alter, when repeated, signifies *the one . . . the other* (being used of only two persons or things): as,

*Præferébant alii purpûram, tus alii, gemmas alii, They brought forward some purple, others incense, others precious stones.—Cic.*

*Alter exercitum perdidit, alter vendidit, The one has lost an army, the other sold one.—Cic.*

## SYNONYME.

1. *Edico*, xi, etum, 3, *to declare*; *issue an edict* as a magistrate. *Effari*, Mus, 1, properly *to speak out*, is used generally in a religious sense, as of *uttering prayers*.—

*Tribuni plëbis edixerunt, The tribunes of the commons issued a decree.—Cic.*  
*Ad templum effandum, To consecrate the temple.—Cic.*

2. *Communico*, avi, atum, 1 (*communis*); and *Participo*, avi, atum, 1 (*pars, capio*); *to give a share of*. *Impertio*, ivi, itum, 4 (*in partiri*); and *Tribuo*, ui, itum, 3; signify *to impart, give*, irrespective of any portion to be retained by the donor: the former as *an act of grace and freewill*; the latter as *an act of justice*. *Impertio* has a variety of constructions:—

*Provinciam cum Antõnio communicavi, I shared the province with Antony.—Cic.*

*Laudes cum aliquo participare, To share the praise with any one.—Liv.*

*Fortunas aliis impertiri, To make others partakers of your fortune.—Cic.*

*Aliquem malis impertiri, To make a man share in your calamities.—Cic.*

*Hominibus indigentibus de re familiari impertiri, To impart to needy men (some of) your estate.—Ter.*

3. *Rete*, is, n., a general expression for a *fishing or hunting net*. *Plaga*, ac, f. (prob. from *πλέω*), a *hunting net* only; especially for *large game*:—

*Aut tradit acres apros in obstantes pligas, aut amite lævi rãra tendit rãta, Either he drives the fierce boars into the opposing toils, or on a smooth rod stretches fine-spun nets.—Hor.*

*Funda*, ac, f., a *casting-net for fish*. *Everreclum*, i, n., a *drag-net*.

1. *Pålam* (from *pando*: opposed to *clam*), *openly, not shunning observation*. *Præpålam* (strengthened from *pålam*), *openly, even courting observation*. *Aperte* (opposed to *occulte*), *without concealment*. *Månifeste* (*månus, fero*), *palpably, in a self-evident manner*:—

*Non ex insidiis sed aperte ac pålam, Not by stratagem, but openly in the light of day.—Cic.*

## PHRASES.

Eng. *A man to communicate with.*

Lat. *Homo quocum (or quicquam) quis communicet.*

„ *According to one's fortune* (lit. *assessment*).

„ *Ex censu.*

„ *To hold a levy.*

*Dēbetum hāhère.*

## EXERCISE XLIV.

1. He published-a-decree that (*ut* with *subj.*) what each man had from the shrines (*sacris*) he should bring back before a certain day. 2. Themistocles demanded that the people should give him some one to communicate with: Aristides was given (him). 3. Dionysius handed<sup>2</sup> (his) sword to a young man whom he loved. Thereupon (*hic*) on<sup>3</sup> a certain friend jocosely saying,<sup>4</sup> "To this man you at least (*certe*) entrust your life," and the young man laughing<sup>5</sup> at it, he ordered both to be slain: the one<sup>4</sup> because he had pointed out a way of killing him; the other<sup>4</sup> because by (his) laughter he had approved of the saying. 4. To some creatures is given<sup>6</sup> a kind of ingenuity (*quædam sollertia*), as in (the case of) spiders: some weave, as it were, a net, so that if anything becomes-entangled<sup>6</sup> (in it) they may destroy it; others again<sup>7</sup> keep watch when not looked for,<sup>8</sup> and if anything falls in (their way), they seize it and consume it. 5. For both in daily discourse, and openly in the Senate, he so pleaded your case that no one could have pleaded it with greater eloquence, weight, zeal, or<sup>9</sup> earnestness (*contentio*). 6. None of these statues,<sup>10</sup> I say (*inquam*), has he left behind, nor yet any other, save one (that was) very old, (and) made-of-wood. 7. Since there was neither a-sufficient-number of men,<sup>11</sup> nor any money at that time in the treasury from which<sup>12</sup> they might receive their pay, the consuls issued-a-decree that, as before, private persons, according to (*ex*) their assessment, should give rowers with pay for thirty days (*gen.*). 8. The gods having been propitiated in due form,<sup>13</sup> the consuls held (*imperf.*) a levy more severely and rigidly than in former years anyone remembered (it) to have been held. 9. Alexander remained at Babylon longer<sup>14</sup> than anywhere else, and no place<sup>15</sup> was more injurious<sup>16</sup> to military discipline. 10. The more versatile and subtle a man is, the more hated and suspected he is when<sup>17</sup> the (general) opinion of his uprightness is withdrawn.<sup>17</sup> 11. The Sicilians, as soon as they saw diseases propagated (*pres. inf.*) from the unhealthiness (*abl.*) of the place, made off (*idûbor*), all (of them), to their neighbouring cities. 12. The gods neglect very-trifling things; nor if blight or hail has injured (*indic.*) in any way,<sup>18</sup> ought Jupiter to have directed his attention to it.<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Subjunctive: see St. L. Gr. 475.

<sup>2</sup> Trâdo, dîdi, ditum, 3.

<sup>3</sup> On . . . saying, &c., quum . . . jûcans dixisset.

<sup>4</sup> The one . . . the other, altèrum . . . altèrum. <sup>5</sup> Perf. tense.

<sup>6</sup> To become entangled, inhaerescere, hæsi, perf. subj. <sup>7</sup> Aliae autem.

<sup>8</sup> When not looked for, ex inopinato.

<sup>9</sup> Nec, before each ablative.

<sup>10</sup> Statues, signa, orum.

<sup>11</sup> Stilis hómnum, St. L. Gr. 271.

<sup>12</sup> Unde.

<sup>13</sup> Rite.

<sup>14</sup> Diûtius. Longius is rarely used of time.

<sup>15</sup> And no place, nec nilus lócus.

<sup>16</sup> To be injurious, nôceo, ul, Rum, 2 (with dat.).

<sup>17</sup> Abl. absol.

<sup>18</sup> If in any way. si . . . quidpiam see St. L. Gr. 253.

<sup>19</sup> Id jûvi ânîmadvertendum fuit.



## XLV.—THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED PREDICATIVELY.

§ 392. *Present Tense.*—The Present Tense is used both of that which is now taking place, and of that which is generally true: as,

*Dextrā laevāque duo mīria claudunt (nos), On the right and on the left two seas shut us in.*—Liv. (Hannibal to his soldiers.)

*Voluptas sensibus nostris blanditur, Pleasure wins upon our senses.*  
Cic.

§ 393. The Present Tense is often used (for a past) in narrative, for the sake of greater vividness, when it is called the *Historical Present*: as,

*Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus nuntios mittit, While these events are going on in these parts, Cassivellaunus sends messengers.*—Caes.

*Obs. Jam dūdum, jam pridem, with the Present give to it the force of a Perfect: as, jam pridem cupio, I have long desired.*

§ 394. *Past-Imperfect Tense.*—The Past-Imperfect Tense is used of that which was going on at the time spoken of: as,

*Annus subtemen nēbat: praeterea una ancillula erat: ea texebat, An old woman was spinning a woof: there was only a little maid besides: the girl herself, was weaving.*—Ter.

§ 395. The Past-Imperfect is often used of what *was wont* to be done: as,

*Archytas nullam capitaliorem pestem quam voluptatem corporis dicebat a naturā datam, Archytas used to say that no more fatal scourge had been brought upon men by the gods than bodily pleasure.*—Cic.

*Ut Romae consules, sic Carthagine quōdamus annui bini rēges creābantur, As at Rome two consuls, so at Carthage two kings were annually appointed.*—Nep.

§ 397. The Past-Imperfect of the verb *sum* is sometimes used in the sense of the Past-Indefinite or *Aorist*: as,

*Homo erat Siculus, The man was a Sicilian.*—Cic.

*Classis communis Graeciae, in quā ducentae erant Athēniensium, The combined fleet of Greece, in which 200 ships, belonged to the Athenians.*—Nep.

§ 399. *Future Tense.*—The Future Tense is used of that which is to take place in time to come: as,

*Cras ingenū iterābimus aequor, To-morrow we shall again traverse the boundless ocean.*—Hor.

§ 400. *Perfect Tense.*—This Tense is used both as a Present-Perfect and Past-Indefinite Tense (Aorist). Thus *fēci*

is either *I have done* or *I did*. The context enables us to tell in which sense it is used: as,

Nemo parum diu vixit qui virtutis perseverans est mūnere, No one has lived Pres.-Perf., too short a time who has fully discharged the part of virtue.—Cic.

Appius caecus multos annos fuit (Past.-Indef.), Appius was blind for many years.—Cic.

§ 401. The Perfect Tense is used after *postquam*, after that; ut primum, simul atque (ac), as soon as; ut, ubi, when; where in English we often use the Past-Perfect: as,

Pelōpidas non dubitavit, simul ac conspexit hostem, conflictere, Pelopidas did not hesitate, as soon as ever he saw (had seen) the enemy, to engage.—Nep.

Ubi de Caesaris adventu Helveticī certiōres facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, No sooner had the Helvetii got information of Caesar's arrival than they sent ambassadors to him.—Caes.

Ut Hostius cecidit, confestim Rōmāna inclinatur acies, As soon as Hostius fell (had fallen), the Roman line immediately gave way.—Liv.

Obs. 1. But *postquam* takes a Past-Perfect when a precise time is specified: as, Hannibal anno tertio postquam dōmo profugerat, in Africā vēnit, Hannibal came into Africa three years after he had fled from home.—Nep.

Obs. 2. But *quum*, when, usually takes the Subjunctive: v. § 483.

§ 402. *Past-Perfect Tense*.—The Past-Perfect Tense indicates that something had taken place at the time spoken of: as,

Prōgēniem Trōjāno a sanguine dūci audierat, She had heard that a race was being derived from Trojan blood.—Virg.

§ 405. *Future-Perfect Tense*.—The Future-Perfect Tense indicates that something will have taken place by the time spoken of: as,

Rōmam quum vēnērō, quoc perspezērō scribam ad te, When I (shall) have got to Rome, I will write to you what I (shall) have seen.—Cic.

Dum tu haec lēges, ego illum fortasse convēnērō, While you will be perusing this, I shall perhaps have had an interview with him.—Cic.

§ 407. Both the Future-Perfect and the simple Future are sometimes used in compound sentences where in English the sign of future time is not expressed: as,

Hoc, dum erimus in terris, erit coelesti vitae simile, This, while we are on earth, will be like the life of the gods.—Cic.

Naturam si sequemur dācem, nunquam aberrābimus, If we follow nature as our guide, we shall never go astray.—Cic.

De Carthagine vētērī non ante dēsīnam, quam illum excisum esse cognōvērō, I shall not cease to have fears about Carthage, till I learn she has been utterly destroyed.—Cic.

1. Cāro  
Egeō  
vōl  
yet n

2. Erro  
room  
stragg

Err  
Und  
sauci  
and s  
away  
Tac.

3. Sēdī  
derly,  
a, um,

Sēdī  
Tūm

4. Mūnī  
Mūnī  
Mūn  
Tēnē

Eng. We

„ Not  
„ Not  
„ To t

„ Let  
„ Beyo

„ To c

1. We  
children,  
not a wh  
Senate at  
Herdonea  
Aegean S  
4. Caesar  
enduring  
before, s  
Senate v  
thousand  
(Hoc agam  
FR. L-

## SYNONYMS.

1. **CAREO**, *ai, ūtum*, 2, *to be without a thing—not to possess it*: opposed to **HABEO**.  
**Egeo** and **Indigeo**, *ni*, 2, *to be in want of a thing*:—  
*Vīlaptāte virtus saepe caret, nunquam indiget, Virtus often lacks pleasure, yet never needs it.*—Sen.

2. **ERRO**, *avi, ūtum*, 1, *to go astray, as from ignorance*. **Vāgor**, *ātus sum*, 1, *to roam at will, have no direct path or fixed habitation*. **Pālōr**, *ātus sum*, 1, *to straggle about confusedly*:—

*Erranti viam monstrāre, To point out the road to one who has lost it.*—Cic.  
*Undique pōpūlātio et caedes: ipsi in medio vāgi: abjectis armis magna pars sauci aut pāntes in montem Vocetium perfūgere, On every side is devastation and slaughter: they themselves roaming about the midst: not a few, casting away their arms, betook themselves wounded, or straggling, to Mount Vocetius.*—Tac.

3. **Seditiōsus**, *a, um (seditio), seditious*. **Turbulentus**, *a, um (turba) disorderly, turbulent*. **Tūmultuosus**, *a, um, tumultuous, alarming*. **Tūmulus**, *a, um, irregular; and so hurried*:—

*Seditiōsus et turbulentus civis, A seditious and disorderly citizen.*—Cic.  
*Tūmultuaria pugna, An irregular engagement.*—Liv.

4. **Mūnitio**, *ōnis, f., the act of fortifying or of making roads; a fortification*. **Mūnimentum**, *i, n., a rampart or fortification*:—

*Mūnitio viarum, The paving of roads.*—Cic.

*Tēnere se mūnimentis, To keep oneself within the fortifications.*—Tac.

## PHRASES.

Eng. *We rest our hopes upon.*

Lat. *We place our hope in (spem pōnī-mus or spem pōsītam hābēmus in, with abl.)*

„ *Not much (not at all) alarmed.*

„ *Nil admōdum terrītus.*

„ *Not in the very least alarmed.*

„ *Nō tantillum quīdem commōtus.*

„ *To the senate at Rome.*

„ *To Rome, to the Senate (Rōmam ad Sēnātum).*

„ *Let us attend to the matter in hand.*

„ *Itō agāmus.*

„ *Beyond what is credible.*

„ *Ultrā vel supra fidē; also, supra quā cuiquam crēdibile (est).*

„ *To come off conqueror.*

„ *Sūp̄rior discēdere.*

## EXERCISE XI.V.

1. We are wandering about needy, along with our wives and children; we rest our hopes on the life of one man. 2. Marcellus, not a whit alarmed by so great a slaughter, sends a letter to the Senate at Rome (*acc.*), concerning the general and the army lost at Herdonea. 3. When an island was rising (*subj.*) from (*ex*) the Aegean Sea, the sea foamed and smoke arose (*feror*) from the deep. 4. Caesar was most skillful in arms and horsemanship, capable of enduring toil (*gen.*) beyond (one's) belief: on march, he used to go before, sometimes on horseback, oftener on foot. 5. When the Senate was alarmed (*subj.*) by the groans (*sting.*) of so many thousand dying men, "Let us give attention to the matter in hand (*hoc agamus*)," says Sulla; "a handful of (*paucūl*) seditious persons

FR. L.—IV.

are being slain by my orders." 6. Hannibal, as often as he engaged<sup>6</sup> with the Romans in Italy, always came off conqueror. 7. While these things were-going-on<sup>6</sup> in Africa and Spain, Hannibal wasted the summer in the Tarentine territory, in the hope of gaining<sup>7</sup> the city of the Tarentines by treachery. 8. Sempronius the consul, in Lucania,<sup>8</sup> fought (*fecit*) many insignificant (*parva*) battles, (but), not one worthy of record,<sup>9</sup> and took (*pres.*) several obscure<sup>10</sup> towns of the Lucani. 9. At first, secret indignation (*plur.*) on-the-part-of the-better-class<sup>11</sup> made itself heard<sup>12</sup>; afterwards the matter extended<sup>13</sup> to the senate (*patres*) also, and (became a) general complaint (*acc.*). 10. If anything shall bring me (*fut. perf.*) in-your-direction,<sup>14</sup> I will strive, if I am in any way able (*fut.*), that (*ut*) no one but yourself shall be aware of (*sentiat*) my grief. 11. If pain is the greatest evil, who will not be miserable when he is oppressed (*fut.*) by pain, or even when he knows that this may<sup>15</sup> happen to him? 12. The consuls, neither by a decree of the Senate, nor by letter, had instructed<sup>16</sup> me what to do (*subj.*). 13. After the Carthaginian (*Pānitius*) armies arrived, they very easily led up a-body-of-troops<sup>17</sup> on to the hill; but the novel aspect of the fortification at first checked them as though by a sort of miracle.<sup>18</sup> 14. After the light was more distinct (*certior*), and the Romans who had survived the slaughter (*dat. plur.*) had fled into the citadel, Hannibal orders the Tarentines to be called together without their arms.

<sup>1</sup> Say, of riding (*equito*).

<sup>2</sup> Past-imperf. of *anteo*, 4, *irr.*

<sup>3</sup> Sometimes . . . *ostener*, *nonnunquam*

. . . *scapius*.

<sup>4</sup> *Jussu* meo.

<sup>5</sup> *Congēdiō*, *congressus* sum, 3.

<sup>6</sup> *Gēruntur*: dum, *whīlēt*, being usually construed with the present. St. L. Gr. 393, Obs. 2.

<sup>7</sup> Use gerund. part. (*pōtior*).

<sup>8</sup> Say, among the Lucanians, in *Lūcānia*. St. L. Gr. 606.

<sup>9</sup> *Mēmōrātū* dignum.

<sup>10</sup> *Ignōbīlis*.

<sup>11</sup> Say, of the good (citizens).

<sup>12</sup> Say, was being heard, imperf. pass. of *exaudio*.

<sup>13</sup> *Excēdo*, *sei*, *suum*, 3.

<sup>14</sup> In your direction, *isto*.

<sup>15</sup> Use *possum*.

<sup>16</sup> *Praecēpio*, *cēpi*, *ceptum*, 3.

<sup>17</sup> *Agmen*, *inis*, *n*. To lead up, *erigo*, *exi*, *ctum*, 3.

<sup>18</sup> *Vēlūt* *mīrācōlo* *quōdā* *tēnūt*.

## XLVI.—THE INDICATIVE MOOD—continued.

### 1. SINGLE DIRECT QUESTION.

§ 408. The Indicative Mood is used with Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs in asking *Direct Questions*: as,

*Quousque tandem, Cātīlina, abūtēre pātentiā nostrā, How far, I pray thee, Catiline, wilt thou abuse our forbearance?—Cic.*

*Ut cūlet? ut mēmīnit nostri? How does he? how does he think of me?—Hor.*

*Quōta hōra est? What o'clock is it?—Hor.*

*Thrax est Gallīna Syro par? Is the Thracian Gallina a match for Syrus?—Hor.*

§ 409. In addition to the Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs, the following particles are used to indicate a question:—*nē* (enclitic), *num*; *utrum* and *an*. The latter two are used only in asking *Double questions*; i. e., questions with two (or more) alternatives.

§ 410. *The Interrogative Particle -nē.*—The Particle *nē* is an enclitic, being always joined to some other word. It is used in asking a simple, straightforward question: as,

*Tarquinius rex interrogāvit: Esti-ne vos lēgātī orātōresque missi a pōpulo Collātino? Sūmus*—*King Tarquinius asked: are ye ambassadors and spokesmen sent from the people of Collatia? We are.*—*Liv.*

*Dātūne illa hōdie Pamphilō nuptum, Is she to be given to Pamphilus in marriage to-day?*—*Ter.*

*Obs.* *Nē* is always joined to the first word in the interrogative sentence, except when united with *non*, as *nonne* (see next sect.).

§ 411. *Nonne.*—In questions put with a negative, such as, *Is it not so? Was it not so?* where the answer *Yes* is evidently expected, the enclitic is always joined with the negative; thus, *nonne*: as,

*Cānis nonne similis lupo (est), Is not the dog like a wolf?*—*Cic.*

*Nonne emōdī per virtutem praestat, Is it not better with valour to die outright?*—*Sall.*

§ 412. *The Interrogative Particle num.*—The Particle *num* indicates that the answer *No* is taken for granted. It always begins its sentence: as,

*Num negare audes, Do you dare deny it?*—*Cic.*

*Num facti Pamphilum piget, Pamphilus isn't sorry for what he has done, is he?*—*Ter.*

*Num Viscellium amici regnum appetentem debuērunt adiuvāre, Think you the friends of Viscellinus ought to have assisted him in aiming at regal power?*—*Cic.*

## 2. DOUBLE DIRECT QUESTIONS.

§ 414. The Particles used in asking *Double direct questions* are *utrum*, *an*, *-nē*. *Utrum* is used only in the first alternative, and *an* only in the second; while *-nē* is used in both: as,

*Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, Is that your fault or ours?*—*Cic.*

*Isne est quem quaero annon, Is that the man I am seeking, or not?*—*Ter.*

*Sunt haec tua verba necne, Are these your words or no?*—*Cic.*

*Obs.* 1. *Neque* and *annon*, "or no," are written as single words.

*Obs. 2. No is rare in the second alternative; unless that alternative is stated in the form "or no," necne.*

*Obs. 3. The first particle (utrum) is often omitted, as in the last of the above examples.*

§ 415. An is sometimes apparently used in single questions; but when so, it always has reference to an alternative implied though not expressed: as,

Quid ais? An Pamphilus vēnit? *What say you? Or is Pamphilus really come?*—Ter.

Quid dicis? An bello fugitivorum Syclliam virtute tuā liberātam? *What say you? Or is it that Sicily was by your valour delivered from the fugitive-slave war?*—Cic.

*Obs. In the above examples the former alternative is involved in the first question, "Have you anything else to say, or will you say that, &c."*

§ 416. The following table exhibits the sequence of the Interrogative Particles in questions presenting more than one alternative:—

First Alternative	Second, Third, etc.	
utrum,	an,	an
-nē,	an,	an
(omitted)	an,	an
(omitted)	-ne	

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Nimis* and *Nimium*, both signify *too much, excessively*. The latter is sometimes used as a substantive:—

*Nimium not nimis boni, Too much good.*—Cic.

*Magna nimis licentia, A too great liberty.*—Cic.

*Nē quid nimis, Nothing in excess.*

2. *Amens*, ntis (a, mens), *without reason, distracted*. *Dēmens*, ntis (de, mens), *mad, infatuated*. *Insānus*, a, um, *not in one's senses, mad*. *Vēsānus*, a, um, (chiefly poet.), *insane, furious, raging*. *Excors*, rdīs, *of weak mind, foolish, infatuated*. *Vēcors*, rdīs, *maddened* (like *vēsānus*).

3. *Acerbus*, a, um, *biting, sour* (Gr. *ὀξύς*), is opposed to *mitis*. *Amārus*, a, um, *bitter, nauseous* (Gr. *πικρός*), is opposed to *dulcis*.

4. *Mansuetudo*, inis, f. (mānuī sūctus), *tame ness (of animals), gentleness, mildness*. *Clēmētia*, ae, f., opposed to *erūdēlitas*, *the humanity of a ruler or the mercy of a judge who does not inflict on the malefactor all that he deserves*.

## PHRASES.

Eng. *Hard to tell.*

" *Within our recollection.*

" *To inflict punishment on any one.*

Lat. *Hard to be told (difficile dirū).*

" *Mēmōriā nostrā.*

" *Poenam (supplicium) de āliquo sūmere.*

## EXERCISE XLVI.

1. For why do I speak of (*de*) Gabinius, Statilius, Coeparius?
2. Within our own recollection, when the victorious Sulla slew

Damasippus, and others of this class,<sup>1</sup> who did not praise the deed? 3. Is it then a more severe (thing) to be beaten than to be slain? Yet what<sup>2</sup> (can be) unmerciful<sup>3</sup> or too severe towards (*in*) men convicted of so great a crime? 4. For why do I dissemble, or for what greater fate<sup>4</sup> do I reserve myself? Has he groaned because of my tears?<sup>5</sup> (No.) Has he turned (*hinc*) his eyes (towards me)? Has he, overcome, shed (*de*) tears, or compassionate<sup>6</sup> the love-sick-one?<sup>7</sup> (No.) 5. But who is that man so infatuated? (Is he one) of (*de*) your friends? or (is he) of that number who were together with you? 6. What also (*did*) the famous<sup>8</sup> Mithridates? Did he not send an ambassador to the same Cn. Pompey, as far as into Spain? 7. What state was ever before so feeble, what island so small, as<sup>9</sup> not to defend its own harbours, lands, and some portion (at least) of its territory and the sea coast? 8. But is not that (circumstance) so manifest (*provensens*) as to seem to have been brought about by the will (*nūlus*) of Jupiter most-good, most-great? 9. Do we then,<sup>10</sup> all of us, seem to be of a soul so mean (*parvus*) as to suppose<sup>11</sup> that all things are-destined-to-perish<sup>12</sup> together with ourselves? 10. If any father of a family,<sup>13</sup> I ask, after his children had been slain<sup>14</sup> by a slave—his wife murdered—his house burnt—did not inflict the most severe punishment upon his slaves, whether would he (*is*) seem to be lenient and compassionate, or most inhuman and cruel? 11. If, as I have said, your country should thus speak to you, ought she not (*subj.*) to gain-her-request,<sup>15</sup> even if she were unable to use force? 12. It is hard to say whether the enemy (*pl.*), when fighting, rather feared his valour, or when vanquished, loved his clemency (*mansuetudo*).

<sup>1</sup> Of this class, *hujusmodi*.

<sup>2</sup> Quid autem.

<sup>3</sup> Acerbus.

<sup>4</sup> For what greater fate, *ad quæ mājora*.

<sup>5</sup> Abl. of cause, *fletu meo*.

<sup>6</sup> Misericor, *ātus*, 1, dep.

<sup>7</sup> Say, the loving (*one*).

<sup>8</sup> See Phrases.

<sup>9</sup> Qui with subj.

<sup>10</sup> Use an.

<sup>11</sup> Ut with subj.

<sup>12</sup> Future inf. (*pōreo*).

<sup>13</sup> Father of a family, *pāterfamilias*: as being an old termination of the gen. in 1 decl.

<sup>14</sup> Use abl. absol. in this and the two following clauses.

<sup>15</sup> To gain one's request, *impētro*, *avi*, *ātum*, 1.

## XLVII.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 421. The Subjunctive Mood expresses a thing not as a fact like the Indicative, but merely as a conception of the mind.

Hence the Subjunctive Mood is used to indicate,

(A). An hypothesis.

(B). Doubt or uncertainty (including *indirect* questions).

(O). A wish.

(D). Purpose or result.

(E). A proposition borrowed from another, and not adopted by the writer (*oratio obliqua*).

(A). *Si ita esset, ignoscere*, If it were so, I would excuse it.—Cic.

(B). *Cur dubitas quid de republicâ sentias?* Why do you doubt what opinion to entertain concerning a commonwealth?—Cic.

*Non dubitat quin Troja brevi peritura sit*, He has no doubt that Troy will soon fall.—Cic.

(C). *Valeas et memineris nostri*, May you be prosperous and think of me!—Cic.

(D). *Lêgibus servimus ut libêri esse possimus*, We submit to the laws (Purpose) we may be able to be free.—Cic.

*Accidit ut unâ nocte omnes Hernae deſicerentur*, It happened that (Result) in one night all the Hernae were demolished.—Nep.

(E). *Dôcent quanto in discrimine sit Nôlana res*, They point out in what perit Nola is.—Liv.

§ 422. The Subjunctive Mood is always dependent upon either

(1). Some hypothetical Conjunction (see § 425); or,

(2). Some antecedent sentence or clause to which it is subjoined (*subjungo*), and which deprives it of the character of a positive ("objective") assertion.

Obs. The antecedent member of the sentence is very often not expressed, but left to be understood.

§ 423. *Sequence of Tenses*.—The Tense of a Verb in the Subjunctive Mood must be in concord with the Tense of the antecedent Verb upon which it depends. Thus Present or Future time is followed by Present or Future, and Past time by Past.

#### *Present and Future Tenses.*

PRESENT PRESENT.	Scio quid agas,	I know what you are doing.
	Scio quid egêris,	I know what you have done.
	Scio quid actûrus sis,	I know what you are going to do.
PRESENT PRESENT.	Cognôvi quid agas,	I have learnt what you are doing.
	Cognôvi quid egêris,	I have learnt what you have done.
	Cognôvi quid actûrus sis,	I have learnt what you are going to do.
FUTURE FUTURE.	Audiam quid agas,	I shall hear what you are doing.
	Audiam quid egêris,	I shall hear what you have done.
	Audiam quid actûrus sis.	I shall hear what you are going to do.

Past  
Present  
Future  
\* B  
when  
cul st  
Ac  
pêrator  
such as  
general

§ 42  
the P  
suppor  
clusio

N.E.  
(1).  
memb  
assum  
in the

Si es  
eto., If  
also the  
Si t

(2).  
senten  
or may  
the Su  
Si n  
Tu s  
think dif



## Past Time.

PAST IMPERFECT	{	Sciēbam quid agēres,	I knew what you were doing.
		Sciēbam quid egīsses,	I knew what you had done.
		Sciēbam quid actūrus esses,	I knew what you were going to do.
PAST INDEFINITE	{	Cognōvi quid agēres,*	I learnt what you were doing.
		Cognōvi quid egīsses,	I learnt what you had done.
		Cognōvi quid actūrus esses,	I learnt what you were going to do.
PAST PERFECT	{	Cognōvērām quid agēres,	I had learnt what you were doing.
		Cognōvērām quid egīsses,	I had learnt what you had done.
		Cognōvērām quid actūrus esses,	I had learnt what you were going to do.

\* But the Perfect Subjunctive may be used after the Past Indefinite when the subordinate proposition is conceived of as a distinct historical statement : as,

Aemilius Paullus tantum in aerarium pœcuniarū iniecit, ut unius imperatoris praeda finem attulerit tributorum, Aemilius Paullus brought such an immense sum of money to the treasury, that the spoils of a single general put an end to the tax.—Cic.

Obs. The Historical Present (§ 393) being in reality a past tense, is often followed by Past Tenses Subjunctive : as,  
Helvētīi lēgātē ad Caesarem mittunt, qui dicerent, The Helvetii sent ambassadors to Caesar, to say, &c.—Caes.

## 1. HYPOTHETICAL SENTENCES.

§ 424. An hypothetical sentence consists of two parts, the *Prōtasis* and the *Apōdōxis*: the former containing the supposition or ground of argument, the latter the conclusion based upon it.

N.B. For the sake of convenience, Hypothetical sentences with the *Indicative* are placed here.

(1). *Hypothetical sentences with the Indicative.*—If both members of the sentence deal with *facts*, either actual or assumed for the purpose of argument, both their Verbs are in the Indicative Mood : as,

*Si est boni consulis fore opem patriae, est etiam bonorum civium.*  
etc., If it is the duty of a good consul to render help to his country, it is also the duty of good citizens, etc.—Cic.

*Si tonuit, etiam fulsit, If it thundered, it also lightened.*

(2). *Hypothetical sentences with the Subjunctive.*—But if the sentence implies only that something may or might happen, or may or might have happened, both its Verbs are put in the Subjunctive : as,

*Si negem, mentior, If I were to deny it, I should tell an untruth.*—Cic.

*Tu si his aliter sentias, ego, si you were in my place, would think differently.*—Ter.

*Nēoussem jam te verbōribus, nēi irātus essem, I would have beaten you to death, if I were not angry.*—Cic.

§ 426. The *Present* and *Perfect* Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when it is indicated that a thing *may possibly happen or have happened*: as,

*Me dies, vox, lātēra, dēficiant, si hoc nunc vōciferārī vēlim, Time, voice, strength, would fail me if I were to purpose expressing now, etc.*—Cic.

*Si actēris (Perfect) aspīdem occulte lātēre uspiam,..... imprōbe fecēris, nisi mōnuēris altērum nō assideat, If you should have become aware that an asp were lying concealed in some place, you would be acting wrongly if you did not warn your neighbour not to sit there.*—Cic.

*Obs.* In such cases we in English often use a Past Tense Subjunctive, and translate the Latin Present by *should, would, were, &c.*, as in the above examples.

§ 427. The *Past* Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when a thing is conceived of *as not actually taking place, whether now (Past-Imperfect), or in the Past (Past-Perfect)*: as,

*Sapientia nō expetētūtur si nihil efficeret, Wisdom would not be coveted if it answered no end.*—Cic.

*(Si) ūno praelio victus (esset) Alexander, bello victus esset, Conquered in one battle, Alexander would have been conquered in the (entire) war.*—Liv.

§ 432. The Subjunctive is also used with or without a Conjunction, to signify that an hypothesis is assumed or granted for the purpose of argument (*Subjunctivus Concessivus*): as,

*Mālus civis On. Carbo fuit:—fuērit illiis; tibi quando esse coepit, Cnaeus Carbo was a bad citizen, was he? (Granted that) he was so to others, when did he begin to be so to you?*—Cic.

*Vērum, ut ita sit, tāmen nō pōtes hoc praedicāre, Yet (granting) that it is so, yet you cannot affirm this.*—Cic

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Obēdio*, *ivi*, *itum*, 4 (*ob*, *audio*), *to obey in any given case*; not as a servant or subject, but as one enjoying a certain freedom. *Pāreo*, *ui*, *itum*, 2, *to obey as a servant or subject. Dicto audientem esse, to obey orders as a soldier or official.* All these expressions denote *obedience as an obligation*, and are followed by the dative. *Obsēquor*, *cūsus*, 3; *Obtempēro*, *avi*, *atum*, 1; and *Mōrigēror*, *atus*, 1; denote a *voluntary act. Obsēquor, to obey readily, to comply with, humour. Obtempēro, to listen to reason or persuasion. Mōrigēror, to humour, gratify* (also all with dative):—

*Jūbae barbāro vtilius Obēdiens fuit quam nuntio Scipionis obtempēravit, He rather chose to obey the barbarian Juba than to listen to the messenger of Scipio.*—Hirt.

*Obsēquar vniuntati tuae, I will yield to your wishes.*—Cic.

*Sic mihi semper obtempēravit tanquam filius patri, He always rendered me such obedience as a son renders to his father.*—Cic.

2. *Præda*, æ, f., any sort of plunder or pilloage in war. *Mānūbiæ*, ārum, f. (*mānus*), spoils taken from the foe, the honourable booty of the soldier. *Spōlium*, i, n. (often used in plur.), arms taken from the person of an enemy. When a Roman general slew the general of the foe and despoiled him of his armour, the spoils thus acquired were called *spōlia opima*. *Rāpina*, æ, f., rapine; the dishonourable spoils of the robber who violates the peace of his country:—

*Dubitāmus quid iste in hostium præda mōlitus sit, qui mānūbiæ tantas ex Mētelli mānūblis sibi fecerit!* Do we doubt what that fellow would have at tempted with the booty of the foe, who from the spoils of Metellus made for himself spoils so great?—Cic.

*Ea rite spōlia opima hābentur quæ dux dūel detraxit.* Those are properly considered spoila opima which one general has stripped from another.—Liv.

## PHRASES.

Eng. To give the signal to retreat.

Lat. *Rēceptui dāre signum.*

„ To postpone to another time.

„ *In aliud tempus differre.*

## EXERCISE XLVII.

1. If you wish (*subj.*) to enjoin anything on an inferior, you will (*subj.*) the more easily have all men obedient to you if you have yourself first established that law<sup>1</sup> over (*in* with *acc.*) yourself and your own. 2. If he as<sup>2</sup> a young-man had not served-in-the-army,<sup>3</sup> his father being (then) commander, he might seem either to fear the foe, or the command of his father. 3. If soldiers (*sing.*) greedy of spoil, were-to-enter an inhabited<sup>4</sup> place (*plur.*) they could not be restrained<sup>5</sup> from wandering-to-and-fr.<sup>6</sup> 4. If he had received them into the citadel, the Roman army, shut up within walls, might have been destroyed. 5. Almost more were slain in flight than in the battle, nor would any man<sup>7</sup> have survived had not night inter-vened. 6. Either a frightful<sup>8</sup> slaughter of the fugitives<sup>9</sup> or a rash and dangerous attack upon the pursuers<sup>9</sup> would have taken place (*say* been), had not Marius quickly given the signal to retreat. 7. If the opportunity for any thing (*gen.*) pass by, in vain will you then seek (*subj.*) it when lost (*part.*). 8. If a good reputation is-better-than (*praesto*, with *dat.*) riches, and money is so greatly<sup>10</sup> sought after,<sup>11</sup> how much more ought glory to be sought for? 9. Arms are of little (value) abroad unless there is counsel at home. 10. “If you are a god,” said the ambassadors, “you ought to bestow benefits on mortals, not take their own away.” 11. Socrates said to his slave, “I would beat you if I were not angry.” He postponed the admonition of the slave to another time: at that time he admonished himself. 12. Let those things,<sup>12</sup> forsooth (*sane*), be advan-tages,<sup>13</sup> which are (so) regarded, (as) honours, riches, pleasures, (and) the rest; yet in partaking of<sup>14</sup> those very (things) an eager enjoyment<sup>15</sup> is disgraceful.

<sup>1</sup> Si id prius ipse jūris stātueris.

<sup>2</sup> As not expressed. St. L. Gr. 217.

<sup>3</sup> Mēreo, 2: stīpeudia being under- blood. <sup>4</sup> Frēquens, ntis.

<sup>5</sup> Contīneo, ui, ntum, 2.

<sup>6</sup> Discoursus, ōs.

<sup>7</sup> Quisquam.

<sup>8</sup> Foedus.

<sup>9</sup> Pres. part.

<sup>10</sup> Tantūpēre.

<sup>11</sup> Expēto, iui, itum, 3.

<sup>12</sup> Ista. St. L. Gr. 369. <sup>13</sup> Bōna, ōrum

<sup>14</sup> Pōrior, 4. Use gerund. part.

<sup>15</sup> Eager enjoyment, gestiens inestit.

## XLVIII.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—continued.

## 2. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF DOUBT OR UNCERTAINTY.

§ 433. The Subjunctive is used after words denoting doubt or uncertainty: as,

*Quum incertus essem tibi cases, As I was uncertain where you were.*—Cic.

§ 434. *Indirect Questions.*—An Indirect Question is one which is *quoted* as being asked, or which is dependent upon some word signifying doubt or perplexity in the sentence. Such a question is expressed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

*Qualis sit animus ipso animus nescit, What is the nature of the mind, the mind itself knows not.*—Cic.

(Here the Direct Question would be, *Qualis est animus?* § 408.)  
*Diogenes disputare solebat, quanto regem Persarum vitā fortunāque vīperāret, Diogenes used to argue how much he had the advantage of the king of Persia in living and fortune.*—Cic.

(Direct Question: *Quanto regem Persarum supero? How much have I the advantage?* etc.)

*Dii utrum sint, necne sint, quaeritur, The question is raised whether there are gods or no?*—Cic.

(Direct Question: *Utrum dii sunt, necne sunt?*)

*Multae gentes nondum sciunt, cur luna deficiat, Many nations are still in ignorance why the moon is eclipsed.*—Cic.

(Direct Question: *Cur luna deficit?*)

*Obs. Thus, quae tu scias scio, is I know what it is you know: but quae tu scis, scio, What you know, I know also.*

§ 435. In expressing Indirect single Questions, *num* (see § 412) is used without any negative force: as,

*Quaero ... num, aliter ac nunc eveniunt, evenirent, I ask whether they would turn out otherwise than they do?*—Cic.

*Exsistit hoc loco quaedam quaestio subditiolis, num quando amici novi veteribus sint antepōnendi, A somewhat difficult question here arises: whether new friends are ever to be preferred to old ones?*—Cic.

§ 436. In Indirect Questions with more than one alternative the following particles are used:—

*Quaeritur, utrum ... an ... an.*  
*-nē ... an ... an.*  
 (omitted) ... -nē ... -nē.  
*num ... an ... an.*

§ 438. The particle *an* is used after some expressions denoting uncertainty or hesitation; especially after *haud scio*, *nescio*, *dūbito*, *dūbium est*, *incertum est*: as,

*Aristotēlem, excepto Platōne, haud scio an recte dixerim principem*

philosophum. With the exception of Plato, I am inclined to think I should be right in calling Aristotle the first of philosophers.—Cic.

Dubito an Veneriam tentam, et ibi exspectem de legionibus, I am half-inclined to direct my course to Venusia, and there wait news concerning the legions.—Cic.

Contigit tibi quod haud scio an nemini, The lot has fallen to you which perhaps has fallen to no one else.—Cic.

Obs. The phrases *haud scio an*, *nescio an*, *dubito an*, always imply the probability of the truth of the proposition which they introduce. They have thus the opposite force to the English "I don't know whether."

§ 440. The Subjunctive is sometimes used in questions indicating perplexity, where the Verb *dubito* may be supplied (*Subjunctivus dubitativus*): as,

Quid hoc homine facitis, What are ye to do with this man?—Cic.

Quid aliud faceret, What else was he to do?—Cic.

Quid enumerem artium multitudinem, Why should I enumerate a multitude of arts?—Cic.

## SYNONYMS.

1. Expedio, tvi, itum, 4 (ex pes), lit. to free the feet; to disengage, relieve of difficulty. Extrico, avi, atum, 1 (ex, trico), to extricate or disengage, as an animal would free itself from the meshes of a net:—

Cura expeditus, Released from care.—Hor.

Cerva extricata densis plagiis, A roe escaped from the close meshes of the net.—Hor.

2. Experior, ertus, 4, to try, to learn something by experiment. Tento, avi, atum, 1, to try by feeling; carefully to sound or test. Periclitor, atus, 1, to attempt or make trial of, facing the danger arising from the experiment:—

Experiri illius perfidiam, To experience a man's perfidy.—Cic.

Iter tentare via negata, To attempt to go by a forbidden route.—Hor.

Tentare venas allejus, To feel a man's pulse.—Suet.

Extrema periclitari, To brave the greatest dangers.—Cic.

Extrema experiri, To try one's last resource.—Sall.

3. Aemulus, i, m. (fem. aemula: both being strictly adjectives), one who is behind his opponent, and is striving to be even with him. Certator, oris, m., one who vies with his opponent, being on the same footing with him. Rivalis, is, o. (strictly, one who lives by the same stream as another), a competitor in love.

4. Ira, ae, f., anger, as a passion. Iracundia, ae, f., habitual inclination to anger, passionateness:—

Ira quo distet ac Iracundia apparet; quo ebrius ab ebrioso, et timens a timido, It is plain how anger differs from angry temper; as a drunken man from a sot, and a man in fear from a coward.—Sen.

5. Perfuga, ae, m.; transfuga, ae, m.; a deserter who goes over to the enemy. He is perfuga with regard to those to whom he flies; transfuga, with regard to those whom he abandons. Profugus, i, m., a fugitive who from misfortune leaves his home. Fugitivus, i, m., a runaway, whether slave or otherwise:—

Perfuga ab eo venit in castra Fabricii, A deserter came from him into the camp of Fabricius.—Cic.

Proditores et transfugas arboribus suspendunt, Traitors and deserters they hang upon trees.—Tac.

Idem fato profugus venit, To Italy, felled by fate, he came.—Virg.

Fugitivi, facinorosi, barbari, Runaways, robbers, outlaws, barbarians.—Cic.

## PHRASES.

Eng. To apply oneself to any object.  
 " To behave or conduct oneself.

Lat. incumbere in (ad) aliquam rem.  
 " Se gerere.

## EXERCISE XLVIII.

1. Many (persons) doubt what is best, many what is advantageous for them, many what becomes (them), some even what is lawful. 2. I easily understood, Quirites, both what judgment<sup>1</sup> you would form of (*de*) me, and what you would prescribe<sup>2</sup> to others. 3. You see what the case is (*subj.*): now consider what must be done. 4. Wherefore see whether you ought to hesitate<sup>3</sup> with all zeal to apply yourselves to that war, in which the glory of your name, the safety of your allies, the fortunes of very many of your (fellow-) citizens, together-with the (interests of) the state, are defended (*subj.*) 5. Perhaps it will be asked how, since these things are so, the remainder of the war can be important (*magnus*). 6. Therefore, on-account-of this avarice of the commanders, who does not know what calamities our armies sustain (*gero*) wherever they come?<sup>4</sup> 7. I am delighted<sup>5</sup> to make trial whether the earth has brought forth (*edo*) other Carthaginians, or (whether) they are the same that fought at (*apud*) the Aegatian islands: and whether this Hannibal be the rival of Hercules or the slave of the Roman people. 8. In the mean time, however, he sent deserters and other suitable (persons) to investigate (*sup.*) where Jugurtha was, and what he was doing; whether he was with few (attendants), or had an army; how (*ut*) he conducted himself (now that he was) conquered. 9. But Marius, when he had wasted several days, deliberated whether he should abandon<sup>6</sup> the undertaking, since it was to-no-purpose,<sup>7</sup> or (whether he should) wait for (good) fortune. 10. I know not whether anger be a more (*magis*) detestable, or hideous vice. 11. Whether Pompey wishes to make-a-stand,<sup>8</sup> or to cross the sea, is unknown.<sup>9</sup> 12. This also is doubtful, whether the ambassadors sent to the Boii were violated, or whether the attack<sup>10</sup> was made on the triumphs as-they-were-measuring (*part.*) the territory.

<sup>1</sup> To form a judgment of any one, *iudicare* (aliquid) de . . .

<sup>2</sup> Prescribo, *psi*, *ptum*, 3.

<sup>3</sup> Dubito in the sense of to hesitate is followed by *inf.*

<sup>4</sup> Quocunque ventum sit.

<sup>5</sup> Say, it delights (me), *idvat.*

<sup>6</sup> Omitto, *mihi*, *misum*, 3.

<sup>7</sup> Frustra.

<sup>8</sup> Consisto, *stisti*, 3.

<sup>9</sup> Pass. of *nescio*.

<sup>10</sup> Impetus, *us*, *m*.

## XLIX.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—continued.

## 3. THE SUBJUNCTIVE EXPRESSING A WISH.

§ 443. *Subjunctivus Optativus*.—The Subjunctive is often used without any preceding Verb, to express a wish.

§ 44  
regard

Intē

Hor.

Vale

they be

Esp

Ūtr

my aim

§ 44

used to

Dun

limit

Obs.

§ 44

followe

(1.)

Subjun

Optā

might be

(2.)

and the

Mālo

rather a

praise yo

Nōlo

accuser b

1. Poena

(supple:

torture,

racking

Suppl

Suppl

cruelty.

Quod

by tortu

Morte

He think

temper.

2. Imprōt

Mālus,

tively, e

§ 444. The Present Tense Subjunctive expresses a wish regarded as attainable : as,

*Intēream si vāleo stāre, May I be a dead man, if I can stand baſ!*—Hor.

*Vāleant cives mei, sint beāti, May my fellow-citizens prosper, may they be happy!*—Cic.

Especially with *ŭtīnam*, *O that!* as,

*Ŭtīnam nōdo cōnāta perficere possim, O that I may only accomplish my aims!*—Cic.

§ 445. The First Person Plural of the same Tense is used to express *mutual encouragement* : as,

*Dum vivimus vivāmus, While we live let us live!*

*Imitēmur nostros māiores, Let us imitate our ancestors!*—Cic.

*Obs.* In the same way is used the Pres.-Perf. *mēmīnērim* : as,  
*Mēmīnērimus, Let us remember!*

§ 447. Very often a Verb of *wishing* is expressed, and followed by the Subjunctive either with or without *ut* :

(1.) *Opto, I wish*, is generally construed with *ut* and the Subjunctive (less frequently with the Infinitive) : as,

*Optāvit ut in currum patris tollēretur, He (Phaethon) desired that he might be taken up into his father's chariot.*—Cic.

(2.) *Volo, Nolo, and Mālo*, are frequently found with *ut* and the Subjunctive; also very often with *ut* omitted : as,

*Mālo te sapiens hostis mētuet, quam stultī cives laudent, I had rather a wise enemy should fear you, than that foolish citizens should praise you.*—Cic.

*Nolo accusātor in iudiciū pōtentiam affērat, I would not have an accuser bring personal influence with him into a court of justice.*—Cic.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Pœna*, *ve. f.*, general term for *penalty, punishment*. *Supplicium*, *i. n.* (*supplex*), usually, *severe or capital punishment*. *Cruciātus*, *ds. m.* (*crux*), *torture, agony*, as of a man on the cross. *Tormentum*, *i. n.* (*torqueo*), a *racking torture*, intended to extort confession :—

*Supplicium est pœna peccāti, Punishment is the penalty for a crime.*—Cic.  
*Supplicium crudēlissimē sūmere, To inflict punishment with very great cruelty.*—Cic.

*Quod tormentis invēnire vis, fātēmur, That which you have a mind to extort by torture, we confess.*—Cic.

*Mortem naturæ pœnam putat esse : Iracundiæ tormentum atque cruciātum, He thinks that death is the penalty due to nature; torture and agony to an angry temper.*—Cic.

2. *Imprōbus*, *a. um* (*in-prōbus*), *dishonest, wicked* : also fig. *cruel or excessive*. *Mālus*, *a. um*, *bad by nature*. *Prāvus*, *a. um*, *crooked, deformed* : figuratively, *erroneous* ; *evil, depraved* :—

Fortūna imprōba, *Cruel Fortune*.—Virg.

Lābor imprōbus, *Indefatigable toil*.—Virg.

Māla ambītio, *Evil (or misguided) ambition*.—Sall.

Prāvum ingēnium, *A bad natural disposition*.—Sall.

3. Cūpido, *Ins, f. (esp. poet.), a desire or appetite for something.* (In Cic. the word is always the proper name Cupid.) Cūpiditas, *ātis, f., any desire or passion.* Desiderium, *i, n., longing or regret for a thing once possessed; a sense of loss*.—

Cūpido atque ira pessimi sunt consultōres, *Passion and anger are the worst advisers*.—Sall.

Frangere cūpiditātes, *To crush the desires (or passions)*.—Cic.

Desiderium tam cari cūptis, *Regret for (the loss of) so beloved a one*.—Hor.

4. Rēceptus, *us, m. (re, cūpio), retreat of an army.* Rēceptaculum, *i, n., a receptacle, a place for receiving, a magazine*.—

Rēcepti signum audire non possumus, *We cannot hear the signal for retreat*.—Cic.

Quasi rēceptaculum animi corpus, *The body a receptacle, as it were, for the soul*.—Cic.

#### PHRASES.

Eng. *To happen contrary to expectation.* Lat. *Fraeter spem evēnīre.*

„ *To despise this in comparison with that.*

„ *Hoc prae illo contemnere.*

„ *To cut off a man's retreat.*

„ *Rēceptui aliquem intercludere.*

#### EXERCISE XLIX.

1. Often, Campanians, have you wished to (*ut*) have the power of inflicting punishment on a wicked and detested<sup>1</sup> Senate. 2. Wherefore, Senators,<sup>2</sup> let the wicked withdraw; let them sever themselves from the good; let them gather themselves together into one place. 3. Let them set-out, let them not suffer the unhappy Catiline to pine-away<sup>3</sup> with longing for them (*sui*): if they will<sup>4</sup> hasten, they will overtake (him) by evening.<sup>5</sup> 4. Nothing has happened contrary to his (*ipsius*) wish, except that he has set out from Rome with us alive<sup>6</sup> (in it): let us wish that he may go into exile. 5. Would that Varro himself would apply himself to the case; which he certainly will do, both of his own accord, and from your urging him.<sup>6</sup> 6. The humanity, virtue, and love<sup>7</sup> of Piso towards (*in*) us all are so great that nothing can surpass it. Would that this (*ea res*) might prove (be) a pleasure (*dat.*) to him! I see indeed that it will prove (*fore*) a glory. 7. Would that he (*ille*) had led forth with him all his forces! 8. This army, composed<sup>8</sup> of men (*is*) who preferred rather to desert their bail<sup>9</sup> than that army, I greatly despise in-comparison-with (*prae*) our Gallic legions. 9. I could rather wish (that) he had led forth (*subi.*) as his soldiers these whom I see flit-about (*inf.*) in the Forum; whom (I see) even come into the Senate. 10. If the immortal Gods have willed this to be the end of my consulship, to snatch<sup>10</sup> you, Senators, and the Roman people from (*ex*) massacre; whatever lot shall be appointed<sup>11</sup> for me, let it be borne. 11. Let every man know his own disposi-



tion; let him show <sup>12</sup> himself a keen judge of his own good (points) and vices. 12. Miltiades, the Athenian, wished to break down <sup>13</sup> the bridge, and cut off the king with his army from retreat: but Histiaeus of Miletus <sup>14</sup> opposed (it).

<sup>1</sup> Detestabilis.

<sup>2</sup> Patres Conscripti (P.C.), the designation used in addressing the Senate.

<sup>3</sup> Tabesco, 3.

<sup>4</sup> Fut. of vëlo.

<sup>5</sup> Ad vespëram.

<sup>6</sup> Abl. absol. *Both...and, quum...tum.*

<sup>7</sup> Say, *humanity, virtue, love, or else* repeat the et: St. L. Gr. 565, Obs. 2.

<sup>8</sup> Collatus (coll. by ex).

<sup>9</sup> To desert one's bail, vadium salum dēserēre.

<sup>10</sup> Ut with subj.

<sup>11</sup> Prōpono, pōsui, pōstum, 3.

<sup>12</sup> Praeeco, ul, itum, 2.

<sup>13</sup> Solvo, vi, ūtum, 3.

<sup>14</sup> Of Miletus, Milesius, a, um.

## I.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—continued.

### 4. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE OR RESULT.

§ 449. The Subjunctive is used with the following Conjunctions, *ut* (ūt), *quōd*, *that*, in order that; *nē* (sometimes *ut nē*, *lest*), in order that...not; *quā*, *quōmānus*, *that not*, to denote Purpose and Result.

§ 450. The Conjunction *ut*, *that*, in order that, so that, is used with the Subjunctive Mood to denote either Purpose or Result: as,

#### (a.) Purpose.

Rōmāni ab arātro abduxērunt Cincinnātum, *ut* dictātor esset, *The Romans fetched Cincinnatus from the plough in order to be dictator.*—Cic.  
Pylādes Ōrestem se esse dixit, *ut* pro eo necārētur, *Pylades affirmed himself to be Orestes, in order that he might be put to death in his place.*—Cic.

Obs. Under this head falls the Subjunctive with *ut* after Verbs of commanding, persuading, striving, wishing, &c. (see § 451).

#### (b.) Result.

Tarquīnius sic Servium diligēbat, *ut* is ejus vulgo habērētur filius. *Tarquinius was so attached to Servius, that the latter was currently regarded as his son.*—Cic.

Temperantia sēdat appētitiōes et efficit *ut* haec rectae ratiōni pāreant, *Temperance calms the appetites and causes that they submit to right reason.*—Cic.

Saepe fit *ut*, *ii* qui dēbeant, non respondeant ad tempus, *It often occurs that those who owe money, do not meet their liabilities at the time.*—Cic.

Si haec nuntiatio vëra non est, sēquitur *ut* falsa sit, *If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.*—Cic.

Thrāsýbulō contigit *ut* patriam liberāret, *It fell to the lot of Thrasybulus to deliver his country.*—Nep.

*Obs.* The phrases, *sēquitur, it follows*; *restat, it remains*; *nēcesse est, it is necessary*; *aequum, justum est, it is right or just*; and the like, take for the most part, either *ut* and the Subjunctive, or an Infinitive Mood (see § 509).

§ 451. *Ut* and *nō* are used with the Subjunctive after Verbs signifying to command, advise, request, exhort, endeavour; *ut* in a positive, *ne* in a negative sense: as,

*Civitatī persuāsit ut de finibus suis exirent, He (Orgetorix) persuaded the community to leave their own territories.*—Caes.

*To hortor ut hos libros de philosophiā studiōse lēgas, I urge you to read attentively these books of mine on philosophy.*—Cic.

*Præcor nē me dēseras, I beg you not to forsake me.*—Cic.

*Obs. 1.* This Subjunctive with *ut* is usually translated by the Infinitive in English. The Latin Infinitive *never* expresses a purpose.

*Obs. 2.* *Jūbeo, I order*; *vēto, I forbid*; *cōnor, I attempt*; and, sometimes, *nitior, I strive*, take the Infinitive: as,

*Jūbet nos Pythius Ἀπollo noscēre nosmet ipsos, The Pythian Apollo bids us "know ourselves."*—Cic.

*Lex pēgrinū vētāt in mūrū ascendēre, The law forbids a foreigner to go up upon the walls.*—Cic.

*Ter sunt cōnatī impūnēre Pēlio Ossam, Thrice they essayed to pile Ossae on Pelion.*—Virg.

*Jūgurtha Cirtam irrumpēre nititur, Jugurtha endeavours to force an entrance into Cirta.*—Sall.

*Obs. 3.* *Impēro* is occasionally found with the Accusative and Infinitive: as, *Ipsos addūci impērabat, He ordered the men themselves to be led away.*—Cic.

§ 453. *Quō*.—The Conjunction *quō*, in order that; that thereby, is used with the Subjunctive to denote a Purpose: as,

*Corrūpisse dicitur Cluentius jūdiciū pēcūniā, quō inimicū suū innocentem condemnāret, Cluentius is said to have bribed the court, that thereby it might condemn his enemy though innocent.*—Cic.

Especially when there is a Comparative Adjective in its clause: as,

*Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab impēritis tēneātur, A law ought to be short, in order that it may the more easily be grasped by the unlettered.*—Cic.

(Here *quō* = *ut eo*.)

*Obs. 1.* But *quō* is not used like *ut* to denote a result.

*Obs. 2.* Concerning non *quō*, not that, see § 487. *Obs. 1.*

§ 454. *Nē* is used with the Subjunctive to denote a Purpose, *ut* being omitted; it is equivalent to *ut non*, *quō non*, in order that . . . not; lest: as,

*Nolo esso laudator, nē videar adulator, I am reluctant to be an applauder, lest I should seem a flatterer.*—Auct. ad Her.

G.  
Hens  
they n

§ 4

n  
n  
n  
n  
n  
n  
n

Qa  
stātuer  
too sev  
Cin  
careful  
quarter

§ 41

ut nēm

Ex

it follow

Dēn

rētur, I

have be

1. Cōno:  
with a  
perly r  
Mag  
Num  
from t

2. Cibus  
especial  
n., and  
AnIn  
teeth.—  
Quac  
the imp

3. Libert  
f. (Heet  
Inter  
and lic  
Deterit  
Ter.

PR. L.

Gallinae avesque reliquae pennis fovēt pullos, ne frigore laedantur.  
*Hens and other birds cherish their young under their wings, in order that they may not be hurt by the cold.*—Cic.

§ 456. Similarly, when a *Purpose* is signified, we find

nē quis	instead of	ut nēmo,	that no one.
nē ullus	" "	ut nullus,	that none.
nē unquam	" "	ut nunquam,	that never.
nē usquam	" "	ut nusquam,	} that nowhere.
nēcūbi (i. e. ne alicubi)		"	
nēcunde (i. e. ne alicunde),			that from no quarter.
nēquando (i. e. ne aliquando),			that at no time.

Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit ne quid grāvius in frātre  
*stitueret, Embracing Caesar, he began to implore him not to come to any too severe decision against his brother.*—Caes.

Circumspectans nēcunde impētus in frumentatōres fiēret, Looking  
*carefully round to see that no attack was made upon the foragers from any quarter.*—Liv.

§ 457. But if only a *Result* is signified, the forms ut non, ut nēmo, ut nullus, etc., must be used: as,

Ex hoc efficitur . . . ut voluptas non sit summum bonum, From this  
*it follows that pleasure is not the chief good.*—Cic.

Dēmōsthēnes periclit mēditando, ut nēmo plānius eo locutus putā-  
*rētur, By exercise Demosthenes so succeeded, that no one was considered to have been a plainer speaker than he.*—Cic.

## SYNONYMS.

1. Cōnor, ātus, 1, to endeavour, to try. Mōlior, itus, 4 (mōles), to move a thing with an effort; to undertake a difficult work. Nitor, nisus and nixus, 3, properly to lean upon, to be supported by; to make an effort, strive:—

Magnum ōpus et arduum cōnari, To attempt a great and difficult work.—Cic.

Num montes mōliri suā sēde parāmus? Are we preparing to move mountains from their seat?—Liv.

2. Cibus, 1, m., any kind of food. Escā, ac, f., food artificially prepared; especially, a bait. Alimenta, orum, n., victuals, nourishment. Pēnus, ōris, n., and ōs, f., victuals in reference to a household; provisions:—  
 Animalia cibum dentibus edpressunt, (Some) animals take their food with their teeth.—Cic.

Quae prima frātum ventrem plēcāvērīt escā, (Say) what dish first appensed the impatient stomach.—Hor.

3. Libertas, ātis, f., (liber), freedom; of any kind whatsoever. Licentia, ac, f. (licet), in bad sense, absence of all restraint; licence:—

Inter libertatem ac Licentiam incerta civitas, A state trembling between liberty and licentiousness.—Tac.

Deteriores omnes sūmus Licentia, all of us are the worse for absence of restraint.—Ter.

## PHRASES.

Eng. *He was informed.*Lat. *He was made more sure,*  
*Certior factus est.*,, *Their design was.*,, *His præpositum fuit.*,, *Provision had been made against.*,, *Cautum erat ne (with subj.).*,, *To take a short review of what precedes.*,, *Pauca supra rēpētere.*,, *He imposed this task on me.*,, *Hæc mihi partes impōsuit.*,, *As great as possible.*,, *Quam (quantus) maximus.*

## EXERCISE L.

1. He is dear to us on account of his merit (*plur.*): we will strive with all our might<sup>1</sup> that he may also (*idem*) be so to the Senate and the Roman people. 2. By (*per*) this right hand, by the fidelity (due to) my kingdom (*gen.*), I warn and beseech you to hold (*subj.*) those dear who are related to you by birth. 3. They issued-a-proclamation<sup>2</sup> that no one should sell bread or any (*quis*) other cooked food in the camp. 4. As soon as Jugurtha was informed of the in-corruptibility<sup>3</sup> of Metellus, he then at length attempted to make a surrender. 5. A decree of the Senate had been passed (made) that the town should be guarded by a garrison, and (*-que*) all the Tarantines confined within the walls. 6. No one of these was by day removed from his post,<sup>4</sup> in order that neither (their) arms nor (the men) themselves might be seen<sup>5</sup> from a distance. 7. So great a fear fell<sup>6</sup> upon the Romans that they fled in-all-directions (*passim*) to the sea and the ships. 8. C. Terentius Varro was sent as pro-prætor into Etruria, in order that from that province C. Hortilius might go to the army at Tarentum (*acc.*).<sup>7</sup> 9. Their design<sup>8</sup> was to enjoy<sup>9</sup> freedom, the characteristic<sup>10</sup> of which is so to live as you please (*subj.* of *volo*). 10. Provision had been made against (*quo ne*) our having at home more coined<sup>11</sup> silver and brass. 11. I will take a short review of the past, that the whole (all things) may be more and more evident. 12. Statilius and Gabinus were going-to-set-fire-to<sup>12</sup> the city, that (*quo*), in the tumult (*abl.*), access might be made easier to the consul and the rest for whom the plots were in preparation.<sup>13</sup> 13. They strove (*imperf.*), some to defend the rights of the people, others (to secure) that the authority of the Senate might be as great as possible. 14. Caesar imposed on me this task, not to suffer (*subj.*) any one at all to depart from Italy. 15. By a decree of the Senate the mourning was ended in thirty days, that the sacred (rites), public or private, might not be neglected.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Summā spē. <sup>2</sup> Édico, xi, ectum, s.<sup>3</sup> Innocentia.<sup>4</sup> Ab stātiōne movēbātur.<sup>5</sup> Conspecto, xxi, ectum, s, to see, meaning here to get sight of.<sup>6</sup> Say, was cast into, injicio, jeci, jectum, s, foll. by dat.<sup>7</sup> See Ex. XIV. Phr.<sup>8</sup> Say, the design of them was, His prō-

pōctum fuit.

<sup>9</sup> Ut, with abl.<sup>10</sup> Proprium, strictly a neut. adjective.<sup>11</sup> Say, stamped, signātus.<sup>12</sup> Incendo, di, sum, s (fut. part.)<sup>13</sup> Say, were being prepared, parābantur.<sup>14</sup> Dēsero, ul, ritum, s: begla the sentence with Ne suora, &c.

## LI.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—continued.

§ 460. After words signifying *fear* or *anxiety* *ne* expresses the apprehension that something *will* occur; *ut*, that it *will* not occur: as,

*Timebam ne evenirent ea quae acciderunt, I dreaded that those very things which have happened would come to pass.*—Cic.

*Timor Rōmae grandis fuit, ne iterum Gallii Rōmam redirent, There was great fear at Rome, lest the Gauls should return again to Rome.*—Eutr.

*Pater teruit gentes grāve ne rediret sēculum Pyrrhae, The sire put the nations in dread, that the terrible age of Pyrrha might be coming again.*—Hor.

*Omnes labōres te excipere vīleo; timeo ut sustineas, I see you undertake all possible labours; I am afraid you will not stand them.*—Cic.

Obs. But instead of *ut*, we often find *ne* non; especially in negative sentences: as,

*Timeo ne non impetrem, I fear I shall not prevail.*—Cic.

*Non vereor ne tua virtus opinioni hōminum non respondeat, I have no fear that your worth will fail to answer the expectations of men.*—Cic.

§ 461. *Quin*, that not, so that not, is used with the Subjunctive after *negative*, or *virtually negative sentences* only. It is used,

(1.) After negative sentences containing Verbs of *hindering*: as, *Non prōhibeo, I do not prevent*; *Non retineo, I do not restrain*; *Non repugno, I do not object*; and the like.

(2.) After such negative phrases as *Non est dubium, There is no doubt*; *Quis dubitat, Who doubts?* *Fieri non potest, It cannot be*; *Negari non potest, It cannot be denied*; and the like.

(3.) After negative sentences generally, to denote that a certain thing never happens without something else happening.

Obs. Under *negative sentences* are included those *virtually so*; as when *quis* expects the answer *No*: also those containing such words as *vix, scarcely*; *parum, (too) little, &c.*

(1.) *Non possumus, quin illi a nobis dissentiant, recūsare, We cannot object to it that others should differ from us.*—Cic.

*Vix me contineo quin in illum involem, I can scarcely restrain myself from flying at him.*—Ter.

*Haud multum absuit quin Ismenias interficeretur, A little more and Ismenias would have been killed.*—Liv.

Obs. The expressions *haud multum absuit, minimum absuit*, and the like, are always impersonal.

(2.) *Non erat dubium quin Helvetii plurimum possent, There was no doubt that the Helvetii had the most influence.*—Caes.

*Haud dubia res visa ..... quin circumduceret agmen, There appeared to be no question but he must conduct his army by a circuitous route.*—Liv

*Obs.* In some cases a twofold construction is admissible: thus,

*Quis ignorat quin tria Græcorum genera sint, Who knows not (i.e., there is no one who knows not) that there are three classes of Greeks?*—Cic.: where we might equally well have had, *Quis ignorat tria . . . esse* (§ 507).

(3.) *Æquidem nunquam domum misi unam epistolam, quin esset ad te altera, In fact, I have never sent a single letter home without there being a second to you.*—Cic.

*Nullus fere dies est quin Satrius meam domum venisset, There is hardly a day that Satrius does not keep coming to my house.*—Cic.

§ 462. *Quin* is also used with the Indicative in the sense of *Why not?* (*quid ne*); and expresses an animated appeal: as,

*Quin igitur expergiscimini? Why not then be up and doing?*—Sall.  
*Quin consendimus equos? Why not to horse at once?*—Liv.

*Obs.* *Quin* with the Imperative is used in expostulations: as,  
*Quin tu hoc audis, Nay but do you hear me.*—Ter.

§ 463. *Quominus*, *that not*, is similar to *quin*, and is used with the Subjunctive after words and phrases which signify *hindrance*; as, *impedio, I impede*; *prohibeo, I prevent*; *officio, I obstruct*, etc.; also after *per me stat, fit, it is owing to me* (that something does not take place): as,

*Non recūsabo quominus omnes mea scripta legant, I will not object to all men's reading my writings.*—Cic.

*Caesar cognovit per Afranium stare quominus dimicaretur, Caesar ascertained that it was owing to Afranius an engagement did not take place.*—Caes.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Dolus*, *i. m.* (*dólos*), *guile, treachery*; always in a bad sense. *Fraus*, *dis, f.*, *dishonesty*; especially in acts. *Fallacia*, *ae, f.*, *deceit*; especially *deceit in speaking*. *Astus*, *us, m.* (*ástus*), *subtlety, craft*. *Calliditas*, *atis, f.*, *the wariness arising from experience*; *adroitness, cunning*. *Sollertia*, *ae, f.*, *ingenuity, cleverness*; in good sense:—

*Versare dolos astu, Cunningly to practise tricks.*—Virg.

*Ne qua fraus, ne quis dolus adhibeatur, That no dishonesty, no guile may be used.*—Cic.

*Hic, ex fraude fallacis, mendacis, constare totus videtur, This man seems to be wholly made up of trickery, deception, and falsehood.*—Cic.

2. *Necto*, *xui, xum, 3*, to *twine, weave*. *Nexo*, *avi, atum, 1*, *frequentative of necto*. *Nōdo*, *avi, atum, 1*, to *tie up in a knot*. *Ligo*, *avi, atum, 1*, to *bind so as to prevent things from falling asunder*. *Vincio*, *xui, netum, 4*, to *bind so as to deprive of freedom*:—

*Nectere eorūm, To weave a garland.*—Hor.

*Nodāti crines, Knotted hair.*

*Vincire hominem, To put a man in chains.*—Liv.

3. *Extemplo* (*perb. ex, templum*), in a moment, *forthwith*. *E vestigio*, on the spot, *straightway*, in reference to place. *Rēpente*, *suddenly, unexpectedly, subito*, *suddenly, as not seen beforehand*.

1. *Portus, æ, m., a harbour, port. Statio, ònis, f., a road or anchorage for ships to ride in:—*  
*Statio maledida cùrnis, An anchorage treacherous to shipping.—Virg.*  
*Plenissimus nàvium portus, A harbour very full of ships.—Cic.*
5. *Vendo, dīdi, ditum, 3 (vēnum, dō), to sell, dispose of by sale. Vendito, āvi, ātum, 1 (frequent of vendo), to offer for sale; to hawk about; to extol (as a pedlar his wares). Mancipo, āvi, ātum, 1 (mānus, cāpio; the thing being symbolically laid hold of by the hand), to alienate from oneself and legally transfer property.*
6. *Aegrē, with much ado: refers to the agent. Vix, hardly, scarcely: signifies that a thing was near not taking place.*

## PHRASES.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Eng. <i>I fear that I shall.</i>                              | Lat. <i>Vereor nē, with subj.</i>           |
| " <i>I fear that I shall not.</i>                             | " <i>Vereor ut, with subj.</i>              |
| " <i>To take anything amiss, be offended at anything.</i>     | " <i>Aegrē, prācter, moleste fero.</i>      |
| " <i>It was owing to you (that something did not happen).</i> | " <i>Per te stētit quōmīnus, with conj.</i> |
| " <i>There is hardly a day.</i>                               | " <i>Dies fere nullus est.</i>              |

## EXERCISE LI.

1. Crispinus, fearing that some treachery (*dolus*) was being planned<sup>1</sup> by the Carthaginian, had sent messengers to<sup>2</sup> the neighbouring states. 2. I am afraid that we shall be cut off (*interclūdo*). 3. I fear that Caesar is going to give up the city to be plundered by his soldiers.<sup>3</sup> 4. I fear that Dolabella will not be of much<sup>4</sup> service to us. 5. On the side of (*apud*) the Romans there was a fear that the enemy would at once attack the camp. 6. I fear you will not support all the toils which I see you undertaking (*infin.*). 7. If Pompey should remain, I fear that he cannot have an army sufficiently strong. 8. I do not doubt that you will zealously do everything (in your power) for the sake of Lamia himself. 9. Such is the confusion that there is no one who does not wish to be anywhere rather than where he is. 10. Death does not deter the wise man from consulting (the interests of) the state and his own (*suus*). 11. The soldiers of Caesar were with difficulty restrained from bursting into the town, and they were offended (see Phrases) because they did not obtain possession of the town (*abl.*). 12. It was owing to Trebonius that they did not obtain possession of the city. 13. Nor does age prevent our retaining a fondness<sup>5</sup> for cultivating<sup>6</sup> land. 14. And will any one doubt that the war ought to be entrusted<sup>7</sup> to him who seems (*subj.*) to have been born to terminate<sup>8</sup> all the wars of our time<sup>9</sup>? 15. And will any one doubt what he will achieve (*fut. subj. of proficīo*) by valour, who has achieved (*perf. subj.*) so much by his influence? 16. I do not doubt that you will achieve great things.

<sup>1</sup> Say, *woon, necto: plet, conallium.*

<sup>2</sup> Use *circa*, with *acc.*

<sup>3</sup> Say, to (*his*) soldiers, to be plundered (*diripio*).

<sup>4</sup> Say, enough (*satis*): to be of service, *prosum, ful, prōdesse* (with *dat.*).

<sup>5</sup> Use plur. of *studium*.

<sup>6</sup> Use the gerundive in agreement with the substantive (*gen.*).

<sup>7</sup> Permitto, *mis, missum, 3.*

<sup>8</sup> Use prep. *ad* with gerundive (*con-ficio*)

<sup>9</sup> Say, of our memory.

## .II.—ORATIO OBLIQUA.

§ 464. When a speech is reported not in the exact form in which it was delivered, but so as to make the speaker the Third Person instead of the First, it is called *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar legātis respondit: diem se ad deliberandum sumptūrum (esse), *Caesar made answer to the ambassadors that he would take time to consider.*—Caes.

(Words of Caesar reported in their original form: Diem ego ad deliberandum sumam, *I will take time to consider.*)

§ 465. When a speech is thus transferred to the *oblique* form, the following changes of Mood take place:—

- (A.) The Indicative Mood used in *direct* and *independent* statements is changed into the Infinitive.
- (B.) The Indicative Mood used in *dependent Relative* sentences is changed into the Subjunctive.
- (C.) The Indicative Mood used in *Questions* becomes the Subjunctive.
- (D.) The Imperative Mood becomes the Subjunctive.
- (E.) Verbs used by the speaker in the Subjunctive for the most part remain in the same Mood in the *oratio obliqua*.

§ 466. (A.) All direct and independent statements, when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*, become dependent upon some such Verb as *dixit*, *he said*, expressed or implied, and therefore the Accusative Case takes the place of the Nominative, and the Infinitive Mood the place of the Indicative (§ 507): as,

Ariovistus respondit, . . . Aeduis se obsides reddītūrum non esse, *Ariovistus answered that he would not restore the hostages to the Aedui.*—Caes.

(Direct form: Obsides non reddam.)

Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit, "*velle se de his rebus agere cum eo,*" *Ariovistus sends ambassadors to Caesar (saying, that he wished to speak with him on these points.*—Caes.

(Direct form: Volo de his rebus tecum agere.)

§ 467. (B.) The subordinate Verbs in Relative sentences, used by the original speaker in the Indicative Mood, are turned into the Subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit, . . . haec esso quae ab eo postulāret, *Caesar sends ambassadors with these instructions, . . . that the following were the demands he made of him, &c.*—Caes.

(Direct form: Haec sunt quae a te postulo.)



Apud Hypnium fluvium Aristoteles ait, bestiolas quasdam nasci, quas unum diem vivant. *On the banks of the river Bog, Aristotle tells us there are insects produced which live only one day.*—Cic.

(Direct form : Sunt bestiolae quaedam quas unum diem vivunt.)

Obs. But if a statement of the *writer's* be interwoven with the *oratio obliqua*, it of course stands in the Indicative : as,

Quis potest esse tam aversus a vero, qui neget haec omnia, quas videmus, deorum immortalium potestate administrari, *Who can be such a stranger to truth, as to deny that all these things, which we see, are managed by the power of the immortal Gods ?*—Cic.

§ 468. (C.) Questions transferred to the *oratio obliqua* take the Subjunctive Mood; being dependent upon *rogavit*, or some such word, expressed or understood (§ 434) : as,

Furere omnes tribuni plebis .. "quidnam id rei esset?" *All the tribunes of the commons were furious: (they asked) "What did that mean?"*—Liv.

(Direct question : Quidnam id rei est?)

Quid de praeda faciendum censerent, *What did they think should be done about the spoil ?*—Liv.

(Direct question : Quid de praeda faciendum censerent?)

§ 469. But when the Interrogative form is merely rhetorical, the question containing its own answer, and being therefore equivalent to a direct statement, it is usually expressed with the Accusative and Infinitive : as,

"Si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum memoriam depōnere posse?" *"Even if he were willing (he said) to forget an ancient affront, could he banish the recollection of recent injuries?"*—Cic.

(Here, num depōnere posse = non depōnere posse.)

Interrogabat .. "quando ausuros exposcere remedia, nisi .. etc." *He asked "When would they venture to demand redress, if not .. etc.?"*—Tac.

(Quando ausuros = nunquam ausuros.)

An quicquam esse superbius? *Could anything be more arrogant ?*—Liv.

(An quicquam esse = nihil esse.)

§ 470. (D.) Commands and exhortations, when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*, also take the Subjunctive; *impēravit*, or some such word, being expressed or understood (see § 451) : as,

(Orāre) .. *ferrent* opem, *adjūvarent*, *(He begged them) to come to his assistance and help.*—Liv.

"Sin bello persaequi persēveraret, remissioeretur pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum," *"If however he should be bent on prosecuting the war against them, (he bad him) remember the original prowess of the Helvetii."*—Caes.

§ 471. (E.) Verbs used by the speaker in the Subjunctive for the most part remain in the same Mood in the *oratio obliqua*: as,

*Caesar respondit* .. "nullos in Galliâ vacâre agros, qui dâri tantae multitudinî *possint*," *Caesar replied* .. that "there were no lands in Gaul that could be given to so vast a multitude."—Caes.

(Direct form: "Nulli in Galliâ vacant agri, qui dari *possint*." comp. § 480.)

"Intellectûrum quid invicti Germânî, .. qui inter quatuordecim annos tectum non subissent, virtute *possint*," "He (*Caesar*) would learn what the unconquered Germans, who for fourteen years had not had a roof over their heads, could do in the field of battle."—Caes.

(Direct form also: "Qui subissent (§ 476) .. *possint*" (§ 434).

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Jusjurandum*, *juramentum*, *n.*; and *Juramentum*, *i. n.*; denote a *sworn oath*. *Sacramentum*, *i. n.*, is a *military oath*, by which a soldier pledges himself not to forsake his standard:—

*Obligâre aliquem militiae sacramento*, To bind a man by oath to be a soldier.—Cic.

*Jurâvi vërisimûm pulcherrimûmque jusjurandum*, I swore a most true and honourable oath.—Cic.

2. *Iterum*, a second time. *Rursum* and *Rursus*, *once more*, another time. *Denuo* (de novo), *anew*. *De integro*, quite afresh, as if nothing had been done before:—

*Fâbulam iterum lëgëre*, To give a play a second reading.—Cic.

*Iterum atque tertium tribûnus*, Tribune for a second and a third time.—Cic.

*Rursus instâre et proëlium rëintegrâre coëperunt*, They began to press the attack once more, and to renew the engagement.—Caes.

3. *Infans*, *ntis*, *c.* (in, fari), an infant; a child in his (or her) earliest years. *Puer*, *eri*, *m.*, a male child, a boy in his dependent years, from about seven to sixteen. *Adolescens*, *ntis* (ad and rt. oi-, to grow), a youth growing up into manhood, from about sixteen to twenty-four. *Juvenis*, *is*, *c.*, a young man or woman in the prime of life, from about twenty-five to forty-five.

4. *Silva*, *ae*, *f.*, any forest or wood. *Saltus*, *us*, *m.*, a wild place or wood among mountains: often a mountain defile or pass. *Nëmus*, *oris*, *n.*, woodland with pastures. *Lûcus*, *i*, *m.*, a sacred grove.—

*Silvae rëcentes saltusque rëconditi*, Woods freshly leaved and hidden glades.—Catul.

*Te nëmus omne clement*, Thy praise all the woodland shall sing.—Virg.

*Pios errâre per lûcos*, To roam through hallowed groves.—Virg.

## EXERCISE LII.

1. He shows<sup>1</sup> (them) that the war must be waged on a plan widely different from that<sup>2</sup> on which it has been waged before. 2. The whole multitude shouts out together<sup>3</sup> that Vercingetorix is a most excellent general, and<sup>4</sup> that the war could not<sup>5</sup> be managed with greater skill (*râtio*). 3. The equites shout out together that it should be enacted<sup>6</sup> by a most sacred oath, that that man<sup>7</sup> should not be received within a house, who has not twice ridden-through the enemy's forces. 4. Considius says that the mountain which he wished (*perf. subj.*) to be seized<sup>8</sup> by Labienus is held by the enemy

5. He  
fight  
Caesar  
had  
finish  
the c  
they  
of La  
was  
all th  
thing  
some  
weigh  
ronde  
shoul  
Scipio  
were  
(*an*  
hear  
thing  
was  
toil,<sup>10</sup>

1 Sa  
2 Or  
longe  
3 Ex  
compos  
4 Ar  
5 Co  
6 Is  
7 Oc  
8 Tu  
express  
sum,  
10 E

LIII.—

§ 4  
juncti  
not si  
§ 4  
lowed  
belong  
Had  
should  
(Qu

5. He said that if they wish to try a second time, he was ready to fight (*décerto*) a second time. 6. Ariovistus sends ambassadors to Caesar (saying) that he wished to speak of (*de*) those things which had begun<sup>8</sup> to be treated-of<sup>9</sup> between them, and<sup>4</sup> had not<sup>4</sup> been finished. 7. To (*ad*) this (*pl.*) Caesar replied that he would preserve the city, if, before the battering-ram touched (*pluperf. subj.*) the walls, they had surrendered themselves. 8. They relate that Ptolemy, son of Lagos, (when) an infant, being exposed by his mother in the woods, was preserved by an eagle. 9. He said that even<sup>10</sup> the bravest of all those of whom Troy could boast, ought not to attempt<sup>11</sup> those things which could not be done. 10. Liscus says that there are some whose influence with the common-folk<sup>12</sup> is of the greatest weight.<sup>13</sup> 11. Caesar sends ambassadors (urging that) he should render this favour to himself and the Roman people; (that) he should restore the hostages which he had from the Aedni. 12. Scipio said that it was (being) reported<sup>14</sup> to him that certain knights were declining<sup>15</sup> that (military) service. If any were so disposed (*animatus*) let them (said he) express<sup>16</sup> what they felt; he would hear them indulgently.<sup>17</sup> 13. To the armed soldier, carrying nothing with him besides the implements of war, what (he asked) was unsurmountable? To take<sup>18</sup> Saguntum what danger,<sup>19</sup> what toil,<sup>20</sup> for (*per*) eight months, had been gone through<sup>20</sup>?

<sup>1</sup> Say, teaches (*dōceo*).

<sup>2</sup> On a plan widely different from, longe àllā ratiōne atque . . .

<sup>3</sup> Express together by cum (con) in composition.

<sup>4</sup> And . . . not, nēc.

<sup>5</sup> Confirmari oportere.

<sup>6</sup> Is: see St. L. Gr. 372.

<sup>7</sup> Oecipo, āvi, ātum, 1.

<sup>8</sup> To begin, before a passive verb, is expressed by the passive form coeptus sum.

<sup>9</sup> Ago, Egi, actum, 3.

<sup>10</sup> Even . . . not, nū . . . quidem.

<sup>11</sup> Tento, āvi, ātum, 1.

<sup>12</sup> Plebs, plēbis, f.

<sup>13</sup> To have the greatest weight, plūrimū vālēre.

<sup>14</sup> Rēnuntio, āvi, ātum, 1.

<sup>15</sup> Dēcreto, āvi, ātum, 1.

<sup>16</sup> Exprōmo, psi, ptum, 3.

<sup>17</sup> Cum bōnā vēmā.

<sup>18</sup> Say, that Saguntum might be taken, ut with subj.

<sup>19</sup> Partitive gen.

<sup>20</sup> Exhaurio, si, stum, 4 (lit. to swallow off, drink to the dregs).

### LIII.—USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

§ 474. The Relative and Relative particles take the Subjunctive (according to § 421) when they are used in stating not simply a fact, but a conception of the mind.

§ 475. *Qui hypothetical.*—The Relative *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, is followed by the Subjunctive when the clause to which it belongs contains a virtual hypothesis (§ 431): *as*,

*Hæc qui videat, nonne cogatur fatēri deos esse.* Would not the man, who should see these things, be compelled to confess that there are gods?—*Cic.*  
(*Qui videat* = *si quis videat*, if any one were to see.)

Nec quisquam rex Persarum potest esse, qui non ante Magorum disciplinam perciperit, Nor can any one be king of the Persians who has not first learnt the discipline of the Magi.—Cic.

(Qui non perciperit = nisi perciperit, unless he has learned.)

Obs. To this head belongs the phrase quod sciam, as far as I know, if only I know.

§ 476. Hence the Relative takes the Subjunctive in stating the reason of something: as,

O fortunāte adolescens, qui tunc virtutis Hōmērum præcōnem invēneris, O fortunate youth, who hast found (i. e. in that thou hast found) a Homer to be the herald of thy prowess.—Cic.

Ut cubitum discessimus, me et de viā et qui ad multam noctem vigilassem, actior solēbat somnus complexus est, No sooner had we retired to rest, than what with the journey and my having sat up to a late hour of the night, sounder sleep than usual embraced me.—Cic.

(Qui vigilassem = quum vigilassem, § 483.)

§ 477. The force of qui as introducing a reason is augmented by ut, utpōte, quippe: as,

Magna pars Fidenātiū, ut qui cōlōni additi Rōmānis essent, Lātine sciēbant, A great part of the Fidenates, (as might well be) from their having been joined as settlers with Romans, knew Latin.—Liv.

Multa de meā sententiā questus est Cæsar, quippe qui ab eo in me esset incensus, Caesar complained much of the opinion expressed by me, having been goaded on against me by him (Crassus).—Cic.

Obs. But quippe qui is also found with the Indicative: as,

Animus fortunā non eget, quippe quæ prōbitatem . . . nēque dāre neque eripere potest, The soul needs not fortune, since goodness she can neither give nor take away.—Sall.

§ 478. Qui of Purpose.—Qui takes the Subjunctive when it involves the meaning of ut, and denotes a Purpose (§ 449): as,

Sunt multi qui eripiunt aliis quod aliis largiantur, There are many who take from one to bestow on another.—Cic.

(Quod largiantur = ut largiantur.)

Olusini legatos Rōmān qui auxilium a sēnātū pētērent, misēre, The people of Clusium sent ambassadors to Rome to beg help from the senate.—Liv.

(Qui pētērent = ut pētērent.)

§ 479. Qui of Result.—Qui is also followed by the Subjunctive when there is involved in it the force of ut as indicating a Result (§ 449): as,

In enōdandis nōmīnibus, quod misērandum sit, lābōrātis, In explaining names, you (Stoics) trouble yourselves to a degree that is pitiable.—Cic.

(Quod misērandum sit = ut misērandum sit.)

Mājus gaudium fuit quam quod universum hōmīnes cāpērent, The joy was too great for men to receive all at once.—Liv.

(Major quam quod cāpērent = major quam ut cāpērent.)

§ 4  
dignus  
is won

Liv  
plays a

Nu  
quam  
age tho

Hō  
The w

§ 4  
defini  
qui, th  
some u

Sun  
some u

Fāc  
There v  
—Sall.

1. Ōdiū  
enoy.  
Simu

Ōdi  
Sim  
me.—

Tlō  
to be d

2. Liber  
hence,  
a roll  
separat  
tablet  
scroll.

3. Obtin  
proper  
or obta  
Suan  
house-  
Ut q  
Suan  
from th

Eng. And

9. At

§ 480. Qui is especially so used after the adjectives dignus, indignus, idôneus, and the like, to denote what a person is worthy of or fit for : as,

*Liviæne fabulæ non satis dignæ sunt quas iterum leguntur, The plays of Livius are not well worthy of being read a second time.—Cic.*

*Nulla mihi vidébatur aptior persona quæ de senectute loqueretur, quam Catonis, No character seemed to me fitter to speak concerning old age than that of Cato.—Cic.*

*Hominēs scelerāti indigni mihi vidēbantur, quōrum causam agerem, The wicked men seemed unworthy that I should plead their cause.—Cic.*

§ 482. The Subjunctive is generally used after such indefinite expressions as *sunt qui*, *there are some who* ; *non desunt qui*, *there are not wanting men who* ; *reperiuntur*, *there are found some who* : as,

*Sunt qui discessum animi a corpore putent esse mortem, There are some who think death to be the departure of the mind from the body.—Cic.*

*Fuere qui crederent M. Crissum non ignarum ejus consilii fuisse, There were some who believed M. Crassus to be no stranger to this scheme.—Sall.*

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Odium*, i, n. (ōdī), *hatred*. *Invidia*, æ, f. (invidéo), *ill-feeling, odium, envy*. *Inimicitia*, æ, f., often plural (in, amica), *enmity, animosity*. *Simultas*, atis, f. (simul), *a feud, quarrel* :—

*Odium est ira inveterata, Hatred is anger deeply rooted.—Cic.*

*Simultates quas mecum habuit deposevit, He laid aside the feuds he had with me.—Cic.*

*Tactas magis inimicitiae timendæ sunt quam aperta, Silent enmity is rather to be dreaded than that which is open.—Cic.*

2. *Liber*, bri, m., strictly, *the inner rind or bark of trees*, as writing material ; hence, *a book of any kind ; a section of a work*. *Volumen*, inis, n. (volvo), *a roll (of parchment)*. The sections of works were generally contained in separate scrolls. *Codex*, icis, m., strictly, *the trunk of a tree ; also a billet or tablet of wood waxed for writing ; a (bound) book*, as distinguished from a scroll.

3. *Obtineo*, ui, entum, 2, is to *hold, occupy*. *Impetro*, avi, atum, 1 (in, patro), properly, *to execute* ; hence *to obtain by entreaty*. *Adipiscor*, eptus, 3, to *get or obtain* :—

*Suam quisque domum tam obtinebat, Each man at that time occupied his own house.—Cic.*

*Ut quod me oravisti impetres, To obtain what you implored of me.—Cic.*

*Summos honores a populo Romano adeptus est, He obtained the highest honours from the Roman people.—Cic.*

## PHRASES.

Eng. *And he who reads these.*

Lat. *Quis (he) who reads (subj.),*  
*Quæ qui legat.*

At the very time, *oritur.*

Ipsa tempore, *discriminans.*

## EXERCISE LIII.

1. He has conquered, who has not inflamed (his) hatred by success, but softened it by clemency. 2. For there is this common fault (*vitiū*) in men, that they disparage<sup>1</sup> those who are eminent. 3. He sent Gongylus of Eretria<sup>2</sup> to deliver a letter to the king, in which these things were written. 4. Sixteen books (*volūmina*) of letters, sent to Atticus, were published (*ēdo*); and (he) who reads these does not feel the want of<sup>3</sup> a (regular) history of those times. 5. For he invited those whose character was not uncongenial with<sup>4</sup> his own. 6. It is thought to be (the mark) not of a liberal, but a worthless (*lēvis*) man, to promise what he cannot perform (*præsto*). 7. He did not go to<sup>5</sup> parties with his father, for he<sup>6</sup> only very rarely came into the town. 8. He had been cruelly wronged (*viōlo*) by the tyrant, who had ordered him to be sold (as a slave). 9. Then at length Titurius, who had made no provision<sup>7</sup> beforehand, (began to) hurry and run to and fro, as<sup>8</sup> is usually the<sup>9</sup> case with (*in*) those who at the very time of action are compelled to be forming their plans.<sup>1</sup> 10. But Cotta, who had thought (*subj.*) that these things might<sup>11</sup> occur on the march, was in no respect found wanting<sup>12</sup> to the common safety. 11. Nor am I, says he, the man to be the most alarmed of you all (*ex vōbis*) by the fear of death. 12. They beg (him) to (*ut*) defend (them) from wrong on the part of Cassivelaunus (*gen.*), and to send into (their) state some one to<sup>13</sup> preside and hold (*obtinēo*) the sovereign-power. 13. Caesar, in the beginning<sup>14</sup> of the summer, sent his lieutenant Q. Pedius to (*quē*) march<sup>15</sup> his legions into the interior (part of) Gaul. 14. He who obeys modestly seems to be worthy one-day<sup>16</sup> of ruling. 15. The character of Laelius seemed a suitable one to discourse<sup>17</sup> about friendship. 16. (The things) which to some seem marvellous, there are many who think<sup>18</sup> nothing of.

<sup>1</sup> Dētrūho, xl, etum, 3: foll. by de.<sup>2</sup> Eretriensis.<sup>3</sup> To feel the want of, dēsidēro, avi, etum, 1.<sup>4</sup> To be uncongenial with, ābhorrēre (*subj.*) ab.<sup>5</sup> To go to parties, convivia inire.<sup>6</sup> Quipe qui, St. L. Gr. 447.<sup>7</sup> Ut qui nūll ante prōvidisset.<sup>8</sup> Say, that which, id quod.<sup>9</sup> Accidere consuevit.<sup>10</sup> To form a plan, consilium cāpēre.<sup>11</sup> Posse.<sup>12</sup> Nulla in re deerat.<sup>13</sup> Qui with subj.: to preside, praesum, fui, esse.<sup>14</sup> In ita aestate (*abl. absol.*).<sup>15</sup> Dēdūco, xl, etum, 3.<sup>16</sup> Aliquando. Of ruling, Qui impēret.<sup>17</sup> See Obs. 12: to discourse, dissero, ul, etum, 3.<sup>18</sup> To think nothing of, pro nihilo hābēre.

## LIV.—USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CONJUNCTIONS.

## Quum.

§ 483. Quum. — The Conjunction *quum* takes the Subjunctive when it denotes cause (*quum causale*); it may then generally be translated by *as*, *since*, or *although*: *as*,

*Quum vita sine amicis insidiarum et metus plena sit, ratio ipsa*

mōnet &  
and alasQuum  
nari ex  
the gene  
—Cic.  
Phō  
was alw§ 48  
sequenSocr  
multa n  
was bein  
are I do  
Quos  
lēgis li  
appoint  
king's liObs.  
a§ 48  
cative  
place:Quum  
rejecti su  
put off ti  
Quum  
produce

Quum

§ 48  
cative  
place:Quum  
rejecti su  
put off ti  
Quum  
produce

Quum

1. Sēgrōg  
flock).

etum, 3.

Ōves  
severedPēdū  
of a tem2. Aegrit  
m., oppr  
discompoQuant  
does my1. Cālāmī  
misfortu  
misery.Ubi  
cannot a

*mōnet amicitias comparāre, Since life without friends is full of treachery and alarm, reason itself bids us form friendships.*—Cic.

*Quum in communibus suggestibus consistere non auderet, contionari ex turri altā solēbat, As he (Dionysius) dared not take his stand in the general platform, he used to deliver his harangues from a high tower.*—Cic.

*Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset, Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich.*—Nep.

§ 484. *Quum* also takes the Subjunctive in describing the sequence of events in proper historical narrative: as,

*Socrātes in pompā quum magna vis auri argentique ferretur, quam multa non dēsidero! inquit, When a great quantity of gold and silver was being carried in procession, said Socrates, "How many things there are I don't want!"*—Cic.

*Quos quum tristiōres videret, trīginta minas accēpit, nē aspernari Rēgis liberalitatem videretur, When he (Xenocrates) saw them rather disappointed, he accepted thirty minas, in order not to seem to slight the king's liberality.*—Cic.

Obs. The Perfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive with *quum* supply the lack of a Perfect Participle Active in Latin (comp. § 526).

§ 485. But *quum* is used with all Tenses of the Indicative to denote the precise time *at which* something takes place: as.

*Quum te jam adventare arbitrabāmur, repente in mensem Quintilem rejecti sumus, Just when I was looking for your arrival, I was all at once put off till the month of June.*—Cic.

*Quum testes dābo ex Sicilia, quem vōlet ille eligat, When I shall produce my witnesses from Sicily, let him choose which he pleases.*—Cic.

*Quum ver eūse coepērat, When it had begun to be spring.*—Cic.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Sēgrēgo*, *avi*, *ātum*, 1 (se, grex), to separate from the rest (lit. from the flock). *Sēpōno*, *pōsi*, *pōsitum*, 3, to lay apart, or reserve. *Sējungo*, *xi*, *ctum*, 3, to disjoin, put asunder.—

*Ōvesque sēgrēgātas ostendit prēcūl, And he points out in the distance sheep severed from the rest.*—Phaed.

*Pēcūniam in aedificatiōnem templi sēpōsuit, He reserved money for the building of a temple.*—Liv.

2. *Aegrītudo*, *inis*, *f.*, heaviness of heart, soul-sickness, vexation. *Angor*, *ōris*, *m.*, oppression of mind; distress or anguish. *Sollicitudo*, *inis*, *f.*, anxiety or discomposure. *Cūra*, *ae*, *f.*, concern, care, in general sense:—

*Quantū me cūrā et sollicitūdine afficit gñātus, How much concern and anxiety does my son cause me!*—Ter.

3. *Cālāmitas*, *atis*, *f.*, a disastrous blow, a calamity. *Infortūnium*, *i*, *n.*, a misfortune, as the loss of property. *Misēria*, *ae*, *f.*, a pressing state of affliction, misery. *Infēlicitas*, *atis*, *f.*, ill-luck, want of success:—

*Ubi est virtus, ubi misēria esse non pōtest, Where virtue is, (lasting) misery cannot exist.*—Cic.

4. Vectigal, alis, n. (vēho), revenue from duty paid on imports or exports. It is used of all sorts of taxes. Tribūtum, i, n. (tribuo), the money which all citizens pay in proportion to their wealth. Exactio, ōnis, f., a levying, or gathering of taxes:—

Lēvare agrum vectigālī, To release land from the payment of dues.—Cic.

Ōnūs impērātōris praeda finem attulit tribūtis, The spoils of a single commander put an end to (the payment of) tribute.—Cic.

Ācerbiſſimā exactio cāpitum, A most cruel exaction of poll-tax.

#### EXERCISE LIV.

1. Since he is a citizen, he must not be separated from the number of the citizens. 2. I do not doubt that you will prevail (*impētro*), since you promise to be<sup>1</sup> a friend to us. 3. When the Lacedaemonians, in a severe war, were pressing-hard-on<sup>2</sup> the Athenians, Codrus, laying aside his royal garb,<sup>3</sup> entered the enemy's camp. 4. When Chabrias, a general of the Athenians, was most bravely fighting in a naval battle, his ship began to sink (*sido*). Although he could have escaped from this-position<sup>4</sup> if he had thrown himself into the sea, he preferred rather to perish than abandon the ship. 5. M. Atilius Regulus, although in the first Punic war he had broken the power of the Carthaginians, at last fell (*venio*) into the hands of the enemy. 6. When a certain old man<sup>5</sup> at Athens had come into the theatre, a place was nowhere given him by his fellow-citizens: but when he had come to the Lacedaemonians, who, since they were ambassadors, were seated<sup>6</sup> in a certain place, they all arose together. 7. When we consider,<sup>7</sup> with attentive mind, the things which are past, then regret follows if they are bad, joy if they are good. 8. Never ought we to be more modest (*vērēcundus*) than when we speak of God. 9. When it is asked what can be done, we must look to it<sup>8</sup> how it is to be done. 10. When the entire management of everything<sup>9</sup> is in the-power-of (*pōnes*) one (man), that one (man) we call a king. 11. He acts unjustly who does not, when he can, ward off an injury from his friends. 12. In other things, when calamity comes, then loss is sustained<sup>10</sup>; but (*at*) in revenues not only the approach of evil, but even the very fear (of it) brings a calamity

<sup>1</sup> Acc. with future inf. after a verb of promising.

<sup>2</sup> Prēmo, sai, suum, 3.

<sup>3</sup> Abl. absol., depōſitā rēglā veste.

<sup>4</sup> Say, hence, hinc (as first word).

<sup>5</sup> Quidam grandis nātū.

<sup>6</sup> Pluperf. of consideo, sēdi, sessum, ?

<sup>7</sup> Intueor, itus, 2 (lit. to gaze upon)

<sup>8</sup> Videndum est.

<sup>9</sup> Omnium suūma rerum..

<sup>10</sup> Say, is received, accipitur.

#### LIV.—USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CONJUNCTIONS

Quod (Quo), Cui, Quippe, Quoniam.

§ 486. Quod (quo) and quia.—The Conjunctions quod and quia, because, both take the Indicative in stating the actual reason of something: as,



*Ideiro sum tardior quod non invēnio fidum tabellarium, I am the more backward because I cannot find a trusty letter-carrier.—Cic.*

*Urbs quae quia postrēma aedificata est, Neapōlis (νέα πόλις) nōmīnātur, A city which, because it was the last built, is called Neapolis (Neotown).—Cic.*

*Obs. Quia states a reason more directly and positively than quod.*

§ 487. But when it is implied that a supposed reason is not true in point of fact, the Subjunctive with *non quod, non quia*, is used.

The difference between the use of *quia* or *quod* with the Indicative and with the Subjunctive, is clearly seen in the following example:—

*Pugiles etiam quum feriunt adversarium ingemiscunt, non quod dolent aut move succumbant, sed quia profundenda voce omne corpus intenditur, Prize-fighters even when in the act of striking an antagonist, fetch a groan; not because they are in pain (supposed, but false reason), but because, in discharging the sound, the whole body is put in tension (real reason).—Cic.*

§ 489. *Quod* is also used with the Indicative after sundry Impersonal expressions: *as, juvat, it delights*; *vītiū est, it is a fault*; *laudābile est, it is praiseworthy*, and the like, with the same distinction as before between the Indicative and Subjunctive: *as*,

*Juvat me, quod vident studia, praeferunt se ingenia hominum, It is a pleasure to me that intellectual pursuits flourish, that the abilities of men display themselves.—Plin. Ep.*

*Magnum beneficium naturae est, quod necesse est mori, It is a great boon of nature that we must die.—Sen.*

§ 492. *Quippe (quia-pe)*, because, as being, is chiefly used in connexion with the Relative Pronoun (see § 477), as also before Relative or illative particles, *as, quum, quod, quia, quoniam, ubi, enim*, etc. It takes the Indicative or Subjunctive Mood according as fact or hypothesis is indicated: *as*,

*Ego vero laudo: quippe quia magnarum saepe id remedium aegritudinum est, I do praise it (such conduct), inasmuch as that is often the remedy for serious troubles.—Ter.*

*Lēve nōmen habet utraque res: quippe lēve enim est hoc tōtum, risum mōvere, Both things have a trivial name: for in fact this whole matter of provoking laughter is trivial.—Cic.*

§ 493. *Quippe* is also used with the Indicative in giving an ironical reason:—

*Quippe vētor fātis! Because forsooth I am forth-tlen by the fates!—Virg.*

*Mōvet me quippe lūmen cūriae! Forsooth that luminary of the senate-house disconcerts me!—Cic.*

§ 494. *Quoniam* (*quum jam*), *since*, is used in stating a reason, and generally, but not always, takes the Indicative: as,

*Quoniam res in id discrimen adducta est, Seeing matters have been brought to such a crisis.*—Cic.

De suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, *quoniam* civitati consulere non possent, *They began to make petition to him concerning their own private concerns, seeing they could not consult the safety of the state.*—Caes.

(The Subj. appears to be used here to indicate that such was the reason by which they justified themselves merely: v. § 487.)

Itaque *quoniam* ipse pro se dicere non posset, verba fecit frater ejus, *Accordingly, seeing he could not speak on his own behalf, his brother acted as spokesman.*—Nep.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Discēdo*, ssi, esum, 3, *to retire or go away*, often as a mark of respect so as to make room for another. *Discēdo*, ssi, esum, 3, *to go away to some other place, to depart.* *Ab eo*, li, itum, 4, *to go away, not to remain*:—

*Idem ibeunt qui venerant, The same persons who had come, depart again.*—Cic.

*Eo die Capuā discessi et Calibus mansi. The same day I departed from Capua and abode at Cales.*—Liv.

*Multi obviam prodierunt de provincia descendentī, Many went forth to meet him as he withdrew from his province.*—Cic.

2. *Valdē* (*vāldē*) and *admōdum*, *very*, are used with verbs, adjectives, and adverbs. *Admōdum* (*ad mōdum*), lit. *to the (proper) degree, quite.* *Multum* and *magnōpère*, *greatly*, are used with verbs. *Magnōpère* is sometimes written *magno opère*; superl. *maximōpère* or *maximo opère*, *very greatly.* *Perquam* (a colloquial word), *exceedingly*:—

*Perquam velim scire, I should exceedingly like to know.*—Plin. Ep.

*Crassus quum esset admōdum adolescens, When Crassus was quite a young man.*—Cic.

*Quidquid vult, valde vult, Whatever he wishes, he intensely wishes.*—Caes.

3. *Laeso*, ei, sum, 3, *to inflict a physical injury, to hurt.* *Violo*, āvi, ātum, 1 (*vis*), *to violate*; esp. *to injure a person's rights.* *Offendo*, di, sum (*ob, fendo*), *absol., to strike*, *to strike against*, *to wound a person's feelings, to affront*:—

*Quae laedunt ocellum festinas domēre, Objects which hurt the eye, you hasten to remove.*—Cic.

*Violare fidem, To break faith.*—Cic.

*Iustitiae partes sunt, non violare homines; veritundiae non offendere, The province of justice is not to wrong men; of delicacy, not to wound them.*—Cic.

## PHRASES.

Eng. *To make war on any one.*

Lat. *Bellum ālicui inferre.*

„ *To be better off.*

„ *Melius se habere.*

„ *To cause to be done.*

„ *Faciendum curare.*

„ *Before the commencement of his tribuneship.*

„ *Ante tribūnatū inītum.*

„ *Such is the state of morals.*

„ *Ita se mores habent.*

„ *Aloof from public affairs (politics).*

„ *Prōcul a rēpublicā.*

„ *To make much of a person.*

„ *Amplecti āliquem.*

„ *To be unsuccessful, to fail.*

„ *Frustra esse.*

1. 7  
2. By  
so earn  
spect)  
4. The  
to me  
5. But  
mence  
benefit  
of me  
more s  
because  
read,  
tained  
9. Let  
fortune  
war, el  
against  
to me  
12. Th  
aloof fr  
indolen  
every d  
failed.  
you by  
will do  
(nūmēro

1 Dimi  
2 Tam  
3 Dillig  
4 Say,  
gerundiv  
5 Tibi  
6 Conp  
7 Can li  
8 Eo m  
9 Abl.  
njūriam  
10 Meet

LVI. U

Dun

§ 497  
until, wi  
a simple

FR. L.

## EXERCISE LV.

1. This concerns (*mōveo*) me not, that these who have been let go<sup>1</sup> by me, are said to have departed to (*ut*) make war on me again.  
 2. By this very (means) you diminish my sorrow, that you labour so earnestly<sup>2</sup> to diminish (it). 3. Those very men are in this (respect) better off than we, because they are many in one spot (place).  
 4. Thus much (*tantum*) will I say, that nothing is more gratifying to me than that you love<sup>3</sup> her, and take care to write<sup>4</sup> (her) letters.  
 5. But what does it benefit (*jūvat*) me, that I came before the commencement of (his) tribuneship, if (the fact) itself that I came, benefits me naught?<sup>5</sup> 6. You are not pleased<sup>6</sup> that he has written of me to (*ad*) many somewhat harshly.<sup>7</sup> 7. You write to me both more seldom than you used (to do), and more briefly; I suppose because you have nothing (to say) which you suppose I can like to read.<sup>8</sup> 8. I am the more unhappy,<sup>9</sup> because though I have sustained a very severe injury,<sup>10</sup> I am not even allowed<sup>10</sup> to grieve.  
 9. Let them,<sup>11</sup> since such is the state of morals, be liberal from the fortunes of their friends! 10. T. Manlius Torquatus, in the Latin war, slew his son, because he, contrary to orders,<sup>12</sup> had fought against the enemy. 11. All charge (*cāra*) of public affairs seems to me far from desirable,<sup>13</sup> because honour is not given to merit.<sup>14</sup>  
 12. There are (some) who, because I have resolved to spend my life aloof from public affairs, bestow<sup>15</sup> on my useful toil the name of indolence. 13. The commander made more and more of Jugurtha every day,<sup>16</sup> inasmuch as no plan nor undertaking of his<sup>17</sup> (ever) failed. 14. Since nature is now putting<sup>18</sup> an end to my life, I adjure you by this right hand to hold these (your) brothers dear. 15. I will do this, not because I believe the man, but because I reckon (*nūmēro*) you among my dearest friends.

<sup>1</sup> Dimitto, mīsi, missum, 3.

<sup>2</sup> Tam valde.

<sup>3</sup> Diligo, exi, ctum, 3.

<sup>4</sup> Say, give; i. e. to the letter-carrier (gerundive).

<sup>5</sup> Tibi non placet.

<sup>6</sup> Compar. of aspirē: St. L. Gr. 351.

<sup>7</sup> Can like to read, libenter legere posse.

<sup>8</sup> Eo miserior.

<sup>9</sup> Abl. absol.: to sustain an injury, injuriam accipere.

<sup>10</sup> Licet, with dat. of Eng. subject.

<sup>11</sup> Begin, sint sūne (the latter word ironical).

<sup>12</sup> Contra imperium.

<sup>13</sup> Minime cupiendus.

<sup>14</sup> Virtus.

<sup>15</sup> Impōno, 3: with acc. and dat.

<sup>16</sup> In dies, gradual as time being denoted.

<sup>17</sup> In as much as... of his, quippe... ejus.

<sup>18</sup> To put an end to, finem facere, with gen.

## LVI. USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CONJUNCTIONS.

Dum, Dummodo, Antequam, Priusquam, Postquam, Quamvis, Quanquam, Etai, Etiamai.

§ 497. Dum, whilst, is construed with the Indicative; dum, until, with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according as a simple fact or a purpose is indicated: as,

PR. L.—IV.

K

*Ea redemptio mansit..... dum iudices rejecti sunt, That bargain remained in force..... until the judges were rejected.—Cic.*

*Obsidio deinde per paucos dies magis quam oppugnatio fuit dum vulnus ducis curāritur, The siege then took the form of a blockade rather than an assault for a few days, so that meanwhile (dum) the general's wound might be cured.—Liv.*

*Iratiss subtrahendi sunt ii, in quos impetum facere conantur, dum se ipsi colligant, Angry persons must have the objects of their attacks put out of their reach, so that meanwhile they may collect themselves.—Cic.*

§ 498. *Dummōdo* (also simply *dum* or *mōdo*), *provided that* (Hypothetical; § 425), is construed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

*Odērint, dum mētuant, Let them hate provided only they fear.—Suet.*  
*Omnia recta et honesta negligunt, dummōdo potentiam consequantur, They disregard all that is right and honourable, if they can only obtain power.—Cic.*

§ 500. The (so-called) Conjunctions, *antēquam*, *priusquam*, *before that*, take the Subjunctive when they refer to an hypothetical case: as,

*In omnibus negotiis, priusquam aggrediāre, adhibenda est præparatio diligens, In all undertakings, before you attempt anything, you must make careful preparation.—Cic.*

§ 501. When *antēquam*, *priusquam*, and *postquam*, are used with reference to actual facts, they usually take the Indicative, but sometimes the Subjunctive: as,

(a.) *With Indicative.*

*Antēquam ad sententiam redeo, de me pauca dicam, Before I return to the resolution, I will say a few words about myself.—Cic.*

*Non ante finitum est proelium, quam tribunus militum interfectus est, The battle was not brought to a close till a tribune of soldiers had been slain.—Liv.*

*Ante aliquanto quam tu natus es, A good while before you were born.—Cic.*

*Decessit post annum quartum quam expulsus erat, He died four years after he had been banished.—Nep.*

(b.) *With Subjunctive.*

*Prius Placentiam pervenēre quam satis sciret Hannibal ab Ticino profectos, They reached Placentia before Hannibal was well aware that they had left the Ticinus.—Liv.*

*Interfuit pugnae navali apud Salaminā, quae facta est prius quam poenā liberāretur, He was present at the naval battle of Salamis, which was fought before he was liberated from his penalty.—Nep.*

§ 502. *Quamvis*, *however much*, and *licet*, *although*, used concessively, govern the Subjunctive: as,

*Quamvis Elysios mirētur Graecia campos, However much Greece may admire her Elysian plains.—Virg.*

tatio  
Thou  
Quin  
V  
shoul  
\$  
Indi  
disti  
Q  
sagm  
suffici  
Q  
would  
Se  
But a  
virtue

1. Spe  
(spe  
termi  
to the  
upon.  
4, to  
Spe  
Gu  
sweet  
Cor  
Virg.  
Om  
Imp  
Om  
1. Amb  
freq.  
briber  
Amb  
myself  
Lex

Eng. To  
On  
To  
I sh

1. W  
Gauls co  
farther

*Quamvis sit magna (expectatio), tamen eam vinces, Though expectation be ever so high, you will yet go beyond it.*—Cic.

*Licet ipsa vitium sit ambitio, frequenter tamen causa virtutum est* Though ambition in itself be a fault, yet it is often the cause of virtues.—Quint.

*Vita brevis est licet supra mille annos exeat, Life is short even if it should exceed a thousand years.*—Sen.

§ 503. *Quanquam, etsi, etiamsi, although*, take either the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the fundamental distinction between those Moods (§ 421): as,

*Quanquam, —etsi priore foedere staretur, satis cautum erat de Saguuntinis, Although, —even if the former treaty were adhered to, —sufficient security had been taken for the Saguuntines.*—Liv.

*Quanquam festinas, non est mora longa, Though thou art in haste, it would involve no long delay.*—Hor.

*Sed quanquam negent, nec virtutes nec vitia crescere, attamen, etc., But although they (the Stoics) should deny (it), affirming that neither virtues nor vices increase, yet, &c.*—Cic.

## SYNONYMS

1. *Sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, 3, to reject with scorn, refuse. Aspernor, ātus, 1 (sperno), to reject, decline, refuse (less strong than sperno). Contemno (rarely temno, Virg.), mpsi, mptum, 3, to make light of what men usually fear or prize, to think little of. Despicio, exi, etum, 3 (de, sprēo), to look (arrogantly) down upon. Negligo, exi, ectum, 3 (nec, lēgo), to disregard. Fastidio, lvi, itum, 4, to loath, distaste:—*

*Sperne viciuitates, Scorn (sensual) pleasures.*—Hor.

*Gustatus quod valde dulces est aspernatur, The palate refuses what is overly sweet.*—Cic.

*Contemnere ventos, spes, Not to care for the winds, not to care for riches.*—Virg.

*Omnes despicere, To look down upon everybody.*—Cic.

*Impērium illudjū negligere, To disregard any one's authority.*—Cic.

*Omnia fastidire, To feel a distaste for all kinds of food.*—Hor.

2. *Ambitio, ōnis, f. (amb, eo), a going round, suing for favour or office; less freq. ambitio. Ambitus, ūs, m., a circuitous route; illegal canvassing, bribery:—*

*Ambitiōne rēlēgātā dicere possum, I may say, without seeking to ingratiate myself.*—Cic.

*Lex ambitūs, A bribery law.*—Cic.

## PHRASES.

Eng. *To make arrangements for the* Lat. *Reframentariam expēdit.*  
*commissariat (of an army);*

” *On the following day.*

” *To recover from fear.*

” *I should like you to write.*

” (Often) *Postulāre ejus diti.*

” *Se ex terrōre rēlēpēre.*

” *Velim scribas.*

## EXERCISE LVI.

1. While these things were (*say, are*) being transacted (*gēro*), the Gauls convened<sup>1</sup> a council of (their) chiefs. 2. While they were farther distant<sup>2</sup> from the fortification, the Gauls had the advantage<sup>3</sup>

from the multitude of their missiles. 3. While these things were being transacted in Spain, C. Trebonius, the lieutenant, who had been left at Marseilles, began <sup>4</sup> *(instīto)* to advance his battering-towers towards the town. 4. Caesar promises to provide (give) corn from that time until they reach <sup>5</sup> the river Varus. 5. Caesar came from that place to Gergovia: he determined that he ought to take no steps <sup>6</sup> concerning the siege, before he had made arrangements for the commissariat. 6. Thus the battle was rallied, and all the enemy turned their backs; nor did they cease from (their) flight until they reached the river Rhine. 7. On the following day, Caesar, before the enemy could recover from their alarm, led his army into the territories of the Suessiones. 8. However much I love my friend, as I both do, and ought (to do), yet this I cannot praise that (*quod*) he did not come-to-the-aid-of (*subvenio*, with *dat.*) such men. 9. Truth, though (*licet*) she obtain no patron or defender, is nevertheless defended by herself. 10. Even if there be (*fut.*) nothing for you to write, yet I should like you to write this very thing, that you had nothing to write, only not <sup>7</sup> (just) in these words. 11. However much he may despise those pleasures which he just now praised, I shall nevertheless remember what in his opinion is <sup>8</sup> the chief good. 12. Though (*licet*) all (possible) terrors impend over (*in*) me, I will undergo (them).

<sup>1</sup> Indico, xi, etum, 3 (*to give notice of, advertise*).

<sup>2</sup> *To be farther distant, longius ābesse.*

<sup>3</sup> *To have the advantage, plus prōficere.*

<sup>4</sup> *To advance battering-towers, turre āgēre or admōvērē.*

<sup>5</sup> Use *impers. pass.*, dum veniatur, St. L. Gr. 632.

<sup>6</sup> *To take no steps about anything, nō āgēre de āllqua re.*

<sup>7</sup> *Quomodo nō, sc. scribas.*

<sup>8</sup> Say, what seems to him (to be), quid ei videatur.

## LVII.—THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

§ 504. The Infinitive Mood is an indeclinable verbal Substantive, capable of being used as a Nominative or an Accusative only. For the other Cases, the Gerund takes the place of the Infinitive.

### 1. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.

§ 505. The Infinitive is used as Subject chiefly in connexion with such quasi-impersonal Verbs as *jūvat*, *delectat*, (*it*) *delights*; or such phrases as *pulchrum*, *dēcōrum est*, (*it*) *is fine, becoming, &c.*: as,

*Jūvat integros accēdere fontes, atquo haurire, It is delightful to repair to untroubled fountains and drink.*—*Iuv.*

(Here *accēdere*, *haurire*, form subjects to *jūvat*.)

At *pulchrum est digito monstrāri, et dicier*, "he est," *But it is a fine thing to be pointed at with the finger, and for it to be said, "There he is!"*—*Petr.*

## 2. THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT.

§ 506. The use of the Infinitive as Direct Object is rare, and chiefly confined to the poets: as,

*Quid sit futurum eras fage quaerere, What is to be on the morrow, hear inquiring.*—Hor.

*Pro nobis mitte precari, Give over praying for us!*—Ov.

## 3. ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

§ 507. Verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, and hearing*, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive in the proposition which they introduce: as,

*Thales Milesius aquam dixit esse initium rerum, Thales of Miletus affirmed that water was the first principle of all things.*—Cic.

*Sentit animus se moveri, The soul is conscious that it moves.*—Cic.

*Nou enim ambrosia deos aut nectare laetari arbitror, For I do not believe the gods delight in nectar and ambrosia.*—Cic.

§ 509. Also many Verbs denoting various *feelings* of the mind, as, *joy, grief, wonder, etc.*, may be followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

*Salvum te advenire gaudeo, I rejoice that you come in safety.*—Plaut.

*Inferiores non dolere (debent) se a suis superari, Inferiors ought not to be grieved at being surpassed by their friends.*—Cic.

*Minor te ad me nihil scribere, I am surprised that you write nothing to me.*—Cic.

§ 510. Various impersonal phrases, such as *certum est, it is certain; manifestum est, it is manifest; aequum, justum est, it is fair or just; opus, necesse est, it is necessary; sequitur, it follows; constat, it is acknowledged; expedit, it is expedient*, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

*Certum est liberos a parentibus amari, It is certain that children are loved by their parents.*—Quint.

*Quae liberum scire aequum est adolescentem, Things which it is proper a young gentleman should know.*—Ter.

*Constat ad salutem civium inventas esse leges, It is acknowledged that laws were devised for the safety of citizens.*—Cic.

*Legem brevem esse oportet, quod facilius ab imperitis teneatur, A law ought to be short, that it may the more readily be comprehended by the illiterate.*—Cic.

*Obs. Restat, reliquum est, it remains; proximum est, the next thing is, and the like; as also sometimes, sequitur, it follows; expedit, it is expedient; mos (moris) est, it is a custom, are often followed by ut and the Subjunctive: as,*

*Proximum est ut doceam deorum providentia mundum administrari, The next thing is for me to show that the world is managed by the providence of the gods.*—Cic.

*Si haec enuntiatio vera non est, sequitur ut falsa sit, If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.*—Cic.

§ 511. Verbs signifying willingness, or permission (including *jubeo*), and the like, with their contraries, govern the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

*Maiores corpōra jūvēmum firmāri lābōre cōfluērent*, Our ancestors wished the bodies of youth to be strengthened by hardship.—Cic.

*Senātui placet, Crassum Syriam obtinēre*, It is the pleasure of the senate that Crassus should hold Syria.—Cic.

*Verres hōmīnem corripī jussit*, Verres ordered the man to be arrested.—Cic. (comp. § 451).

*Cipio me esse clementem*, I desire that I may be merciful.—Cic.

*Obs.* 1. Verbs of wishing are in many cases followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive, or the Subjunctive alone (v. § 443, sqq.).

*Obs.* 2. *Impēro* is sometimes used like *jubeo* (v. § 451), with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

*Has omnes actūarias impērat fīri*, He orders that all these (vessels) be made swift-sailers.—Cues.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Hūmo*, *avi*, *ātum*, *i* (*hūmus*), to cover with earth, hence to bury: opposed to *crēmo*. *Sēpēlio*, *ivi*, *ultum*, 4, to inter the remains of the dead in any way, in the ground, or in a sepulchral urn. *Effēro*, *extūli*, *elātum*, 3, to carry forth (to the grave), celebrate the funeral of:—

*Caesōrum reliquias ūno tūmulo hūmare*, To bury the remains of the slain in one mound.—Suet.

*Lex vētāt sēpēliri in urbe*, The law forbids (a corpse) to be interred within the city.—Cic.

*Elātus publice*, Honoured with a public funeral.—Nep.

2. *Angustus*, *a*, *um* (*ango*, to press tight), opp. to *lātus*, straitened, narrow. *Arctus* or *artus* (*arceo*), opp. to *laxus*, fast, tight, closely fenced in. *Densus*, *a*, *um*, closely pressed together without wide gaps between, thick together, crowded; opp. to *rārus*. *Spissus*, *a*, *um*, packed so closely together that no space is left unoccupied; opp. to *sōlūtus*. *Crassus*, *a*, *um*, of thick or coarse composition; opp. to *tēnuis*, *subtilis* (*fine*):—

*Angusta dōmus*, A confined house.—Cic.

*Arctioribus vinculis tēnēri*, To be confined in tighter bonds.—Cic.

*Acie densi milites*, Soldiers standing closely in line.—Liv.

*Spissae partes*, Particles closely packed (without vacuum).—Lucr.

*Crassus Boeōtum aer*, The thick air of Boeotia.—Hor.

3. *Bōnus*, *a*, *um*, most general term for good, in whatever way or degree, honourable, virtuous, well-principled. *Sanctus*, *a*, *um* (*sancio*), unblemished, pure and moral:—

*Bōnum vīrum fīelle crēdēres*, You would readily believe him to be a good man.—Tac.

*Hōnesta res dividitur in rectum et laudābile*, That which is honourable divides itself into the right and the praiseworthy.—Cic.

*Hōmīnes frūgālissimī, sanctissimī*, People of most honest and unblemished life.—Cic.

4. *Incōla*, *ac*, *e*. (*in cōlo*), an inhabitant in general, whether in town or country. *Inquilinus*, *i*, *m*. (*incōla*), a tenant, as opposed to the owner, of a house (*dominus*). *Cōlōnus*, *i*, *m*. (*cōlo*), a tiller of the soil, a farmer; a settler to whom land has been assigned. *Civis*, *is*, *e*, the member of a state, a citizen. *Urbānus*, *i*, *m*. (strictly an adjective), one who lives in the city (capital), a cit:—  
*Sōcrātes tōrtus mundi se incōlam et civem arbitrabātur*, Socrates deemed himself an inhabitant and citizen of the whole world.—Cic.



*Te inquilino,--non enim dñmo, While you the occupant of the house--for you were not the owner of it.*—Cic.

*Optimus colonus, frugalissimus, parcissimus, An exceedingly good, honest, thrifty farmer.*—Cic.

*Deducere colonos in coloniam, To conduct settlers to their settlement.*—Cic.

5. *Fossa, ae, f. (fidio), a trench, a moat. Incile, is, n. (incido), a drain. Fovea, ae, f., a pitfall. Scrobs, is, m., a hole or trench made for the purpose of planting in. Lācūna, ae, f. (lācus), a ditch in which water stands:--*

*Fossa cui nomen Drūsianae (est), The dyke called after Drusus.*—Tac.

*Incilla apētre, To open the drains.*—Cato.

*In foveam incedere, To tumble into a pitfall.*—Cic.

*Cāvae sūdant hūmōre lācūnae, The hollow watercourses exude with moisture.*

—Virg.

## PHRASES.

Eng. *This kind of life.*

Lat. *Haec vita.*

„ *To pitch a camp.*

„ *Castra facere, lācare.*

„ *To cause any one danger.*

„ *Alleui periculum facere.*

## EXERCISE LVII.

1. It is better<sup>1</sup> to receive than to do an injury. 2. Their (his) custom was not to bury the bodies of their (countrymen) without their being<sup>2</sup> previously torn by wild beasts. 3. This is the characteristic of a well-regulated<sup>3</sup> mind, both to rejoice at good things and to grieve at the contrary (plur.). 4. For nothing is (the mark) of so narrow and so mean (parvus) a soul as to love riches: nothing more honourable and grand<sup>4</sup> than to think little of<sup>5</sup> money. 5. Lycurgus required (iubeo) all the citizens to dine together in public (adv.): besides this, he required the boys to exercise in various ways (adv.) their powers of body and mind. 6. Do you wish, Democles, since this kind of life (haec vita) delights you, yourself (nom.) to taste the same, and try my lot<sup>6</sup>? 7. Solon, when he was asked why he had fixed no punishment for (in with acc.) the murderer<sup>7</sup> of a parent, answered that he had thought no one would be guilty<sup>8</sup> of such a crime. 8. Themistocles used to walk by night in a public (place) because he could (subj.) not get (any) sleep: to those who asked him<sup>9</sup> (why he did so), he replied that he was aroused from sleep by the trophies of Miltiades. 9. We call to witness (testor) gods and men that we have taken up arms, neither against our country nor with the intention of<sup>10</sup> causing peril to others. 10. Philip, king of the Macedonians, used to say that all fortresses could be taken<sup>11</sup> into which only (modo) a little ass laden with gold could climb (ascendo). 11. Who does not know that it is the first law of history that you should not dare to say anything false (gen.)? 12. Socrates on being asked to what country he belonged,<sup>12</sup> answered that he was a citizen of the world<sup>13</sup>: for he believed himself to be an inhabitant of the whole world. 13. If it is best to live agreeably to nature, it necessarily follows that the wise are always happy, for they live agreeably to nature. 14. When the Persians had crossed over into Attica, they wished to come to an engagement<sup>14</sup> before the Lacedaemonians came (pluperf. subj.) to the help of the Athenians.<sup>15</sup>

15. The Romans used to surround their camp, even if it was pitched for (in) one night (only) with a palisade and a ditch, in-order-to keep off those foes whom they saw (*subj.*), and to prevent their being injured<sup>16</sup> by those whom they saw not. 16. When a-large-number-of<sup>17</sup> ships had been wrecked, as (*quam*) the rest from the loss<sup>18</sup> of anchors and other tackling were useless, a great confusion was caused throughout the whole army.<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Praestat, stetit, 1.

<sup>2</sup> Without their being, nisi with *pluperf. subj.*

<sup>3</sup> Bene institutus.

<sup>4</sup> Magnus: see St. L. Gr. 65, III.

<sup>5</sup> Contemna, mpsi, ptum, 3.

<sup>6</sup> Fortuna.

<sup>7</sup> Say, him who should have killed (*neco*, 1).

<sup>8</sup> Say, would do it.

<sup>9</sup> Pres.-part. of quaero.

<sup>10</sup> Say, that we might (*quo*).

<sup>11</sup> Expugno, 1.

<sup>12</sup> Say, of what country (*cujas*) he was.

<sup>13</sup> Mundanus (*olvis* being understood).

<sup>14</sup> Confugo, xi, etum, 3.

<sup>15</sup> See St. L. Gr. 297.

<sup>16</sup> And to prevent their being injured, *neve* with *subj.*

<sup>17</sup> Complures.

<sup>18</sup> Perf.-part. of amitto, in abl. absol. constr.

<sup>19</sup> Say, of the whole army.

#### LVIII.—THE INFINITIVE MOOD—continued.

##### 4. VERBS WHICH GOVERN THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

§ 512. Verbs signifying *willingness or determination, ability, lawfulness, duty*, or the like, with their contraries, govern the Infinitive without an Accusative: as,

*Studeo ex te audire quid sentias, I desire to hear from you what you think.*—Cic.

*Amicitia, nisi inter bonos, esse non potest, Friendship can only exist between the good.*—Cic.

*Optat arare caballus, The nag would like to draw the plough.*—Hor. (cf. § 447).

*Dici beatus ante obitum nemo debet, No one ought to be called happy before his decease.*—Ov.

*Caesar bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit, Caesar resolved to make war upon the Germans.*—Caca.

§ 513. When a predicative Adjective or Substantive is attached to the Infinitive Mood in the above cases, it agrees in case with the Subject of the Infinitive: as,

*Ubi völes pater esse, ibi esto, When you choose to be the father, then you must be so.*—Plaut.

*Cupio in tantis republicae periculis, me non dissolutum videri, I am desirous in such perils as menace the state, that I may not seem lax.*—Cic.

*Licuit esse otioso Themistocli, Themistocles might have been inactive.*—Cic.

*Obs.* The Imperfect and not the Perfect Infinitive (as in English), is used after the above Verbs: thus, *I wished to have been consul*, is *völuí me consulem esse*, not *fuisse*. see last example.

§ 514. Verbs signifying to begin, continue, or leave off; also to be or become accustomed, govern the Infinitive: as,

*Lucepe, parve puer, matrem cognoscere risu, Begin, little child, to know thy mother by her smile! — Virg.*

*Illud jam mirari desino, That I am now ceasing to wonder at. — Cic.*

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Auctoritas*, *atq.*, *f.*, influence acquired by some eminent quality such as rank, integrity, wisdom. *Gratia*, *ae.*, *f.*, influence or favour acquired by kindness or friendship:—

*Auctoritas propter magnam in rempublicam merita, Influence because of great services to the state. — Cic.*

*Propter labores meos nonnulla apud bonos gratia, Because of my exertions, (I enjoy) some influence with the good. — Cic.*

2. *Percontor* or *percunctor*, *atus sum*, *1*, to ask questions eagerly, particularly in reference to public matters or reports. *Interrögo*, *ävi*, *ätum*, *1*, to ask with a view to get a man's opinion. *Sciscitor* or *scitor*, *atus sum*, *1* (*scio*), to seek information. It often implies curiosity or inquisitiveness:—

*Tu quod nihil refert percontari desinus, Cease you to ask of what concerns you not. — Ter.*

*Ille quod te interrögo responde, Answer what I ask you. — Plaut.*

*Non desino per litteras sciscitari, I cease not to make inquiry by letter. — Cic.*

## PHRASES.

Eng. *The majority.*

„ *To exchange hostages.*

„ *To raise an army.*

„ *At dinner-time.*

„ *I am at liberty to do this.*

Lat. *Majör pars.*

„ *Obsides inter se.*

„ *Exercitum parare.*

„ *Inter cenam.*

„ *Nihil tibi hoc facere.*

## EXERCISE LVIII.

1. A part of the enemy began to surround the legions on their exposed flank;<sup>1</sup> a part to make-for (*pöto*) the highest point (*löcus*) in the camp (*gen.*). 2. The majority however decided<sup>2</sup> in-the-mean-time to bring the matter to an issue,<sup>3</sup> and defend the camp. 3. Wherefore in (this my) novel design, I resolved not to prepare (any) defence (of my conduct); I determined (only) to lay before you an explanation<sup>4</sup> founded-on (*de*) no consciousness of fault. 4. The barbarians began to dispatch ambassadors, to band together<sup>5</sup>, to exchange hostages, to raise troops. 5. On their<sup>6</sup> arrival invested-as-they-were-with<sup>7</sup> authority, and attended-by<sup>7</sup> a great multitude of men, they attempt to carry on the war. 6. Nor is it lawful to remain longer than a year in one place for the sake of an abode.<sup>8</sup> 7. These at first began to put to death all the worst (characters), and (such as were) hateful to all. 8. No one is at liberty to take up arms for the sake of making war on his country. 9. Romulus was believed to have passed<sup>9</sup> to the gods alive. 10. Caesar, while at supper (*inter coenum*), is reported<sup>10</sup> to have said that a quick and unexpected death is the best termination of life. 11. Alexander wished to gain-possession-of the whole of India, and had already crossed the rivers Indus and Hydaspes. 12. The enemy were unwilling to desist from the

siege of the city, and yet they were not able to take it. 13. Turning to Charidemus, the Athenian, a man skilled in war, and personally hostile<sup>11</sup> to Alexander because of his exile (since it was at his instigation<sup>12</sup> that he had been banished from Athens), he began to inquire whether he thought<sup>13</sup> him sufficiently equipped for crushing<sup>14</sup> the foe? 14. After<sup>15</sup> a few days had been given to the soldiers (*sing.*) not for repose, but to restore their spirits, he began vigorously to pursue the foe, fearing that he would make for the interior<sup>16</sup> of his kingdom.

<sup>1</sup> Aperto lātore (without prep.)

<sup>2</sup> Use placet, with *dat.* of subject.

<sup>3</sup> Rēi eventum expēiri.

<sup>4</sup> Sātisfactio.

<sup>5</sup> Coniūro, avi and ātus sum, 1.

<sup>6</sup> Gen. pl. of qui.

<sup>7</sup> Invested with, attended by, cum with *abl.*

<sup>8</sup> Incōclendi causā.

<sup>9</sup> Transeo, vi, itum, 4, irr.

<sup>10</sup> Fertur.

<sup>11</sup> Infestus.

<sup>12</sup> Abl. absol. (jūbeo).

<sup>13</sup> Say, whether he seemed to him, etc.

<sup>14</sup> Obtēro, trivi, tritum, 3 (gerund-ive).

<sup>15</sup> Abl. absol.

<sup>16</sup> Neut.-pl. of intērior, us.

## LIX.—THE INFINITIVE MOOD—continued.

### 5. THE INFINITIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.

§ 516. The Infinitive is used in exclamations to denote surprise, without any preceding Verb being expressed: as,

Mēne dēsisitēre victam, (*To think that*) I should give over as vanquished!—Virg.

Non pūduisse verbērire hōmīnem sēnem (*To think that*) he should not be ashamed to beat an old man!—Ter.

### 6. HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.

§ 517. The historical writers often use the Imperfect Infinitive instead of the corresponding tenses of the Indicative: as,

Intērēa Manlius in Etrūriā plēbem sollicitāre, *Meanwhile Manlius in Etruria was stirring up the common people to insurrection.*—Sall.

Suo quisque mētū pēricula mētiri, *Each one was measuring the extent of the danger by his own fears.*—Sall.

### 7. CIRCUMLOCUTION FOR THE FUTURE INFINITIVE.

§ 518. Instead of the Future Infinitive, whether in the active or Passive Voice, we often find *fore ut* with the Subjunctive: as,

Clāmābant hōmīnes, *fore ut ipsi se dii immortāles ulciscerentur*, *The men exclaimed that the immortal gods themselves would avenge themselves.*—Cic.

Es  
Sp  
may J  
§ 1

1. Eg  
(ōpe  
limit  
The  
dicu  
Is  
obsce  
neces  
Vi  
almo  
In  
rathe

2. Fes  
1, to  
Pi  
your  
Qu  
Rome  
3. Vinc  
the a  
from  
Te  
Odi  
sul, I  
him:

Eng. Ab  
" In

1. A  
C. Figu  
2. Mea  
people,  
resentm  
all: the  
thoroug  
suring  
But afte  
line ma  
now (m

Especially of course when a Verb wants the Supine: as,  
*Spēro fore ut contingat id nobis, I hope such a piece of good fortune may fall to us.*—Cic.

§ 519. Infinitive in Oratio Obliqua: see § 466.

## SYNONYMS

1. *Egestas*, *ane*, *f.*, *destitution*; esp. as the result of profligacy. *Inopia*, *ae*, *f.* (*opes*), a want of means, scarcity. *Paupertas*, *atis*, *f.*, or *pauperies*, *ei*, *f.*, limited means, humble circumstances. *Mendicitas*, *atis*, *f.* (*mendicus*), beggary. The pauper *homo* possesses but little; the *Inops* and *egenus* too little: the *mendicus* nothing at all:—

*Istam paupertatem, vel potius egestatem et mendicitatem tuam nunquam obscure tollisti, That poverty of yours, nay rather want and beggary, you have never made any secret of.*—Sen.

*Vixi in summā paupertate et paene inopiā, I have lived in extreme poverty and almost privation.*—Plin.

*Inopia vel potius ut Læcilius ait, egestas patris sermonis, The deficiency, or rather as Læcilius says, the poverty of our mother-tongue.*—Cic.

2. *Festino*, *avi*, *atum*, 1, to hasten impatiently; to hurry. *Præpero*, *avi*, *atum*, 1, to hasten energetically, with all suitable expedition (without hurry):—

*Plura scripsissem nisi tui festinarent, I would write more were it not that your servants are in a hurry.*—Cic.

*Quae causa our Rōmam præperaret? What was his purpose in hastening to Rome?*—Cic.

3. *Vindico*, *avi*, *atum*, 1 (*vim*, *dicto*), to avenge as an act of justice: especially of the action of the laws and magistrates. *Ulciscor*, *ultus*, *sui*, 3, to revenge, from a feeling of anger:—

*Te valde vindicavi, I have fully avenged you.*—Cic.

*Odī hūmānem et odēro: utinam ulcisci possem, sed illum ulciscuntur mōres sui, I detest and will detest the man: would that I could wreak my vengeance on him: but his own character will do it (for me).*—Cic.

## PHRASES.

Eng. About the beginning of June.

" In the consulate of M. Tullius  
 Cæsar and C. Antonius.

Lat. *Circa* *Kalendas* *Jūnias*.

" *M. Tullio Cicerōne, C. Antonio*  
*consulibus* (Coss.).

## EXERCISE LIX.

[N.B. An asterisk indicates the use of the Historical Infinitive.]

1. About the beginning of June, in the consulship of L. Cæsar and C. Figulus, he first began to-address-himself-to<sup>1</sup> single (persons).  
 2. Meantime Manlius in Etruria was stirring-up<sup>\*</sup> the common-people, at once (*stimul*) on the ground of their poverty<sup>2</sup> and (their) resentment for their wrongs (*sing.*).<sup>3</sup>  
 3. Suddenly a gloom fell-upon<sup>\*</sup> all: they hurried-about, they were agitated<sup>4</sup>; they (could) not thoroughly (*satis*) trust<sup>\*</sup> any person or place: each one was measuring<sup>\*</sup> (the extent of) the danger (*pl.*) by his own fears (*sing.*).  
 4. But after Antonius began to approach (*imperf.*) with his army, Catiline marched<sup>5</sup> through the mountains, shifted<sup>\*</sup> (*mōveo*) his camp now (*mōdo*) towards the city, now in the direction of Gaul,<sup>6</sup> (but)

gave\* the enemy no opportunity of coming to an engagement.\* 5. The veterans, mindful of their former valour, fought\* fiercely at close-quarters; the other side<sup>10</sup> offer an undaunted resistance<sup>11</sup>; the contest-is-maintained<sup>12</sup> with the greatest determination (*vis*). 6. Caius Memmius, of whose hatred for the predominance (*pōtentia*) of the nobles<sup>13</sup> we have before spoken, amid the hesitation and delay (*pl.*) of the senate, by his harangues urged\* the people to inflict retribution<sup>14</sup>; he warned\* (them) not to abandon the state nor their own liberty. 7. Caesar has himself recorded<sup>15</sup> the greater part of his achievements<sup>16</sup> in Gaul; and from his own words it may be inferred, that that country would not have been<sup>17</sup> easily subdued had not the inhabitants quarrelled among themselves. 8. They cried out that an innocent man ought not to perish unavenged. 9. Theophrastus when dying, is said to have found-fault-with<sup>18</sup> nature for giving so scanty (*exiguus*) a life to men; for that if it could (only) have been<sup>19</sup> longer, all the arts would have been<sup>17</sup> perfected. 10. Think you that Cn. Pompeius would have rejoiced over his three consulships (and) his three triumphs, had he known that he was to be butchered in desertion amongst the Egyptians<sup>20</sup>?

<sup>1</sup> Appello, āvi, ātum, 1.

<sup>2</sup> Abl. without prep.

<sup>3</sup> Object. gen.; St. L. Gr. 268.

<sup>4</sup> Invādo, āi, sum, 3.

<sup>5</sup> Trēpido, āvi, ātum, 1.

<sup>6</sup> Iter facio, 3.

<sup>7</sup> In Galliam versus.

<sup>8</sup> Pugno, āvi, ātum, 1.

<sup>9</sup> Cōtinuus, opp. to cōtinuus. <sup>10</sup> Illi.

<sup>11</sup> Haud timidi rēsistunt: comp. St. L. Gr. 343.

<sup>12</sup> Certo, āvi, ātum, 1 (*impers. pass.*).

<sup>13</sup> Nōbilitas: abstr. for coner., St. L.

Gr. 592.

<sup>14</sup> Vindico, 1.

<sup>15</sup> I record, mēmōriæ prōdo, dīdi, dītum, 3.

<sup>16</sup> Say, of those things which he achieved (*perfecio*).

<sup>17</sup> Use circumlocution, with sūtūrum fuisse.

<sup>18</sup> Accuso, āvi, ātum, 1.

<sup>19</sup> Pōtuisset esse (not fuisse), the time being indicated by the f. mer of the two verbs, not the latter as in English.

<sup>20</sup> In sūlītidine Aegyptiōrum.

## LX.—PARTICIPLES.

§ 520. The Participle expresses the same notion as the Verb to which it belongs, but in the form of an Adjective. It does not contain the *Copula* (§ 213, *Obs.* 1) involved in the Verb, and is chiefly used in the way of *Apposition*: as,

*Dionysius, cultros mētuens tonsōris, cudenti carbōne sibi adurēbat capillum, Dionysius, being afraid of barbers' razors, singed his hair with a live coal.—Cic.*

§ 521. Active Participles govern the same Case as the Verb to which they belong: as,

*Ipsa suā Dido conelidit ūsa mīnu, Dido fell, by (Lit., using) her own hand.—Ov.*

*Fuer bēno sibi fidens, A youth trusting well to himself.—Cic.*

*Obs.* When a Participle is used as an Adjective denoting *disposition* or *capacity* for, it governs the Genitive: see § 277.

§ 5.  
havin  
and in  
ciple  
Partic

Obs.

c

Obs.

b

st

co

§ 52

as going

Curi

lissent, 1

at his f

scrip

expecting

importun

Obs.

oft

§ 524

as havin

only in

The

which 1

Audeo,

Gaudeo,

Sōleo,

Fido (& co

Jūro,

Coeno,

Prandeo,

Nūbo,

ōai,

§ 525.

in an Ac

the prin

Adīpt

Cōmīt

§ 522. The Latin Verb is deficient in its Participles, having in the Active Voice only an *Imperfect* and a *Future*; and in the Passive only a *Perfect* and the Gerundive Participle of *Necessity*. Thus the Active Voice has no *Perfect* Participle and the Passive no *Imperfect*.

*Obs. 1.* Deponents are the only Verbs in Latin which form a Perfect Participle Active: as, *ādeptus*, *having acquired*; *usus*, *having used*, &c. (See § 103.)

*Obs. 2.* The lack of an Imperfect Participle Passive is in some cases supplied by the Gerundive: as,

Multi in *equis parandis* adhibent edram, in *amicis eligendis* negligentes sunt, *Many take pains in getting horses (Lit. horses being got), but are careless in choosing friends.*—Cic.

This construction of the Gerundive is explained in § 537.

§ 523. The *Imperfect* Participle Active represents a thing as *going on* at the time spoken of: as,

Curio ad focum *sedenti* magnus tauri pondus Samnites quum attulissent, *repuñiati* sunt, *When the Senator brought Curius as he was sitting at his fireside a great weight of gold, their offers were rejected.* Cic.

Scripta tua jam diu *expectans* non audeo tamen flagitare, *While expecting for a long while past your writings, I yet do not venture to importune you for them.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Instead of the Imperfect Participle, *quum* with the Past-Imperfect is often used: as,

Audivi *quum diceret*, *I heard him saying.*—Cic.

§ 524. The *Perfect* Participle Active represents a Person as *having done* something at the time spoken of. It is found only in Deponents and in certain Active Verbs.

The following is a list of the principal Active Verbs which have a Perfect Participle with an Active sense:—

Audeo,	<i>I dare,</i>	ausus,	<i>having dared.</i>
Gaudeo,	<i>I rejoice,</i>	gāvīsus,	<i>having rejoiced, rejoicing.</i>
Soleo,	<i>I am wont,</i>	sōlītus,	<i>having been wont.</i>
Fido (& comp.),	<i>I trust,</i>	fīsus,	<i>having trusted.</i>
Jūro,	<i>I swear,</i>	jūrātus,	<i>having sworn.</i>
Coeno,	<i>I dine,</i>	coenātus,	<i>having dined.</i>
Prandeo,	<i>I breakfast,</i>	pransus,	<i>having breakfasted.</i>
Nūbo,	<i>I am married,</i>	nupta,	<i>having married.</i>
Ōdi,	<i>I hate,</i>	ōsus,	<i>having hated, hating.</i>

§ 525. Some Deponents use their Perfect Participle both in an Active and a Passive sense: the following are among the principal ones that do so:—

Ādīpīscor,	<i>I attain to,</i>	ādeptus, <i>having attained, or having been attained.</i>
Cōmītor,	<i>I accompany,</i>	cōmītātus, &c.

Confiteor,	<i>I confess,</i>	confessus, <i>having confessed, or having been confessed</i>
Mātor,	<i>I measure,</i>	mensus, &c.
Expārior,	<i>I try,</i>	expertus, &c.
Mēditor,	<i>I practise,</i>	mēditātus, &c.
Testor,	<i>I call to witness,</i>	testātus, &c.
Mōdēror,	<i>I control,</i>	mōdērātus, &c.
Pōpūler,	<i>I devastate,</i>	pōpūlātus, &c.
Partior,	<i>I divide,</i>	partitus, &c.
Pāciscor,	<i>I bargain,</i>	pactus, &c.

§ 526. The want of a Perfect Participle in other Verbs is supplied in two ways:

(A.) By the Perfect Participle *Passive* in agreement with its Substantive as an *Ablative Absolute*.

(B.) By *quum* with the Subjunctive Mood.

(A.)

*Cognito Caesāris aduentu, Ariovistus legātos ad eum mittit, Having heard of Cæsar's arrival, Ariovistus sent ambassadors to him.*—Caes.

*Dextrā Hercūles datā ōmen se accipere ait, Hercules offering his right hand, said he accepted the omen.*—Liv.

(B.)

*Epāminōndas quum viciisset Lacēdaemōnios apud Mantīnēam, atque ipse grāvi vulnere se exālmāri vidēret, quacūq̄v, salvusne esset clipeus, Epāminōndas, having conquered the Lacēdaemōnians in the battle of Mantinea, and seeing himself to be dying of a bad wound, asked if his shield were safe.*—Cic.

(For more examples see St. L. G. 332.)

§ 527. The *Future Participle Active* is used to denote (1) simple futurity; (2) intention or purpose: as,

*Delli mōrtitūre, O Dellius, who art (one day) to die.*—Hor.

*Perseus rēdit, belli cāsū de integro tentāturus, Perseus returned intending to try the chances of war afresh.*—Liv.

*Obs.* The *Future Participle* occurs most frequently in combination with the verb *sum*.

§ 528. The Neuter of the Perfect Participle is sometimes used as an Abstract Substantive: as,

*Nam priusquam incipias, consullo; et ubi consulueris, mātūre facto ōpus est, For before you make a beginning, you want counsel; and when you have taken counsel, you want prompt action.*—Sall.

*Nihil pensī neque mōdērātī habēre, They exercised no reflection, no restraint.*—Sall.

530. *Frequent use of Participles.*—Participles are very



often used in Latin, so as to avoid the use of Conjunctions where several predicates are united in a sentence: as

*Victa piētas jacet, Piety is vanquished and lies prostrate.—Ov*  
*Rursus in obliquum verso perrumpit ātrō, Again he turns the plough,*  
*and breaks up (the soil) in a cross direction.—Virg.*  
*Tyrtæus carmina commissa exercitui recitavit, Tyrtæus composed*  
*songs and repeated them to the army.—Justin.*

## SYNONYMS.

1. **Ineo**, ī, itum, 4, to enter upon; figuratively, to engage in. **Intrōeo**, ī, itum, 4, to go into a place: freq. followed by ad, in. **Intro**, āvi, ātum, 1 (transitive), to enter, as by crossing a threshold or boundary. **Ingrēdior**, gressus sum, 3, to enter (= intro); fig. to enter upon (= ineo):—

*Inire societatem cum aliquo, To form an association with a man.—Cic.*

*Intrōit in tabernaculum, He goes into his tent.—Sall.*

*Tu illam domum ingrēdi ausus es? tu illud limen intrāre? Hadst thou the hardihood to enter that house, to cross that threshold?—Cic.*

2. **Agrestis**, e, wild, as though growing or bred in the fields: fig. rude, boorish. **Rusticus**, a, um, living in the country: fig. clownish, awkward. The *agrestis* would violate the natural, the *rusticus* the conventional, laws of good-breeding. The former is opposed to *hūmānus*, the latter to *urbānus*:—

*Agrestis et inhūmāna negligentia, Boorish and unrefined neglect (of person).—Cic.*

*Hūmo impēritus mōrum, agrīcōla, et rusticus, A man unused to the ways of the world, a farmer and country-bred.—Cic.*

3. **Destino**, āvi, ātum, 1 (de, sta-), lit. to fasten down; make fast: fig. to form a decided resolution. **Décerno**, crēvi, crētum, 3, to determine after deliberate consideration; to decree. **Stātuo**, ul, ātum, 3, to station; to settle (what was before undetermined). **Constituo**, ul, ātum, 3, to station (a large body or number); to settle (with anybody), to resolve:—

*Rātes ancōris destinābat, He moored the rafts by anchors.—Caes.*

*Præter opīniōnem destinātam ālīcujus, Contrary to a man's fixed opinion.—Liv.*

*Capitvōs vinctos in mēdio stātuit, He set prisoners bound in the midst.—Liv.*  
*Quam apud flūmen classem constituisset eam, Having stationed his fleet near the (mouth of) the river.—Nep.*

*Constitui cum hōmīnibus, I made an appointment with the men.—Cic.*

*Constituēram ut in Arpino manērem, I had resolved to stay in Arpinum.—Cic.*

## EXERCISE LX.

1. He dared not enter-on an unknown road without a guide; trusting, however, to the good-fortune (*abl.*) of the king, he ordered (some) rustics to be laid-hold-of<sup>1</sup> who might serve-as<sup>2</sup> guides in the march (*gen.*) 2. There remains but this one decisive-contest<sup>3</sup> for us, after traversing<sup>4</sup> so many lands in (*in* with *acc.*) hope of victory. 3. Parmenio, however, ignorant what was the fortune of the king on the right wing, checked his men; Magaeus, when<sup>5</sup> space was thus given him for flight, crosses the Tigris, not in a straight course but by a circuitous-route. 4. Wearied and wounded (as they were<sup>6</sup>), thirst was particularly oppressive to them;<sup>7</sup> and in-every-direction<sup>8</sup> (*passim*) by all the streams they lay-outstretched,<sup>9</sup> catching

gaping mouth the water as it flowed by. 5. The speech was received with the greatest alacrity on the part of the soldiers (*gen.*), who bade (*part.*) him lead them whithersoever he wished. 6. The other (*ille*) after having received the gifts and joined (a compact of) friendship, proceeds to carry out what had been determined on.<sup>7</sup> 7. Alexander restrained his soldiers from ravaging<sup>8</sup> Asia, affirming<sup>10</sup> that those things ought not to be destroyed which they were come to possess (*fut. part.*). 8. The king sent<sup>9</sup> Hephæstion into the region of Bactria<sup>11</sup> to provide supplies against the winter. 9. Arsaces ravaged<sup>12</sup> Cilicia with fire and sword, in-order-to-make a desert for the foe: whatever could be of use<sup>13</sup> he destroyed<sup>12</sup> (*corrumpo*), in-order-to-leave the soil barren and naked. 10. He ordered<sup>12</sup> thirty thousand of the younger men to be collected from all the provinces, and brought to him, armed; intending-to-hold-them at once (as) hostages and soldiers. 11. Vercingetorix was charged with treachery, because by his departure the Romans had come at so-favourable<sup>14</sup> an opportunity and with such speed: "he wished," they said, "rather to have the supremacy (*regnum*) in Gaul (*gen.*) by the permission of Cæsar than by their good-will."

<sup>1</sup> Exemplo, cēpi, ceptum, 3, to meet and stop on the way.

<sup>2</sup> Say, be.

<sup>3</sup> Diserimen, inis, n.

<sup>4</sup> Abl. absol. (fmetior).

<sup>5</sup> Abl. absol.

<sup>6</sup> Say, particularly parched (*pēdro*) them: the predicates *wearied* and *wounded* agreeing with the object of the verb.

<sup>7</sup> Say, had stretched on their bodies: prosternere, strāvi, strālum, 3.

<sup>8</sup> Destituta.

<sup>9</sup> Use *subs.* (pōpūlatio).

<sup>10</sup> Praefatus.

<sup>11</sup> Adj. Bactrianus, a, um.

<sup>12</sup> Hist. present.

<sup>13</sup> See St. L. Gr. 297.

<sup>14</sup> Say, so great (tantus).

## LXI.—THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE.

§ 531. The Gerund is a Verbal Substantive used in all cases except the Nominative and Vocative: as, *rēgendi*, of ruling; *rēgendo*, to, for, or by ruling; *ad rēgendum*, for the purpose of ruling.

*Obs.* Instead of a Nominative Case of the Gerund, the Infinitive Mood is used (see § 505).

§ 532. The Cases of Gerunds have the same construction as the corresponding Cases of ordinary Substantives: as,

*Gen.*—*Omnis loquendi elegantia expōlitur scientiā literārūm*, Every kind of elegance of speech is made more refined by an acquaintance with literature.—Cic.

*Dat.*—*Aqua nitrosa utilis est bibendo*, Water impregnated with natron is useful for drinking.—Plin.

A  
viven  
honou  
A  
—Cic  
O

§ 5  
the p  
Pa  
famili  
expens  
Di  
Diogen  
and th

§ 5  
necess  
mean  
from  
struct

NOT

§ 53  
the Ge  
stantiv

Dilig

Obs.  
(L)

§ 536  
than th  
with est  
FR. L.

*Acc.*—*Brevē tempus actātis sātis longum est ad bēne hōnestēque vivendum.* The brief time of life is long enough for living virtuously and honourably.—Cic.

*Abl.*—*Orātor in dicēdo exercitātus.* An orator practised in speaking.—Cic.

*Obs.* The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions: otherwise the Imperfect Infinitive is used: see § 506 sqq.

§ 533. The Gerund as a Verbal Substantive still retains the power of governing its proper case as a Verb: as,

*Parasimōnia est scientia vitandi sumptūs superfluos, aut ars re familiāri mōderātē utendi.* Economy is the science of avoiding needless expense; or the art of using one's income with moderation.—Sen.

*Diōgēnes dicēbat, artem se trādere vērā ac falsā dijūdicandi.* Diogenes professed to impart the art of distinguishing between the true and the false.—Cic.

§ 534. The Gerundive Participle signifies that a thing is necessary or proper to be done. It is always Passive in meaning, whether coming from a Verb strictly Passive or from a Deponent. It has the following modes of construction:—

(A.) It is used in the Nominative Case along with the Verb *est*, *sunt*, etc., in agreement with a Substantive, to signify that something ought to be done.

(B.) It is used (impersonally) in the Neuter Gender along with the Verb *est*, with the same force as in the former case.

(C.) It is used in all Cases except the Nominative or Vocative, in agreement with a Substantive, as equivalent to a Gerund governing the case of its Verb.

*NOTE.* The agent or doer in both (A) and (B) is put in the Dative Case (comp. St. L. G. 294).

§ 535. (A.) If the verb is one that governs an Accusative, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative of its substantive in gender, number, and case: as,

*Diligentia est colenda.* We must practise diligence.—Cic.

*Obs.* Such a construction as *poenas timendum est*, we must fear punishment (Luar.), is exceptional, and is borrowed from the Greek.

§ 536. (B.) If the verb is one that governs any other case than the Accusative, the Gerundive is used impersonally with *est*, in the Nominative Singular Neuter: as,

PR. L. —IV.

L

*Resistendum senectūti est, We must resist old-age.—Cic.*  
*Corpōri subveniendum est, We must aid the body.—Cic.*

*Obs. 1.* In such cases the Gerundive Participle governs the same Case as the Verb to which it belongs. (See examples.)

*Obs. 2.* The Dative of the Agent is frequently omitted. (See examples.)

*Obs. 3.* But the Gerundives of some Deponent Verbs which govern an Ablative, as *fruor*, *utor*, *fungor*, are used both impersonally and in agreement with substantives: as,

*Utendum erit verbis iis, quibus jam consuetudo nostra non utitur, We shall have to employ words which our present usage does not employ.—Cic.*

*Non paranda nobis solum sapientia, sed fruenda etiam est, We must not only get wisdom, but enjoy the benefit of it.—Cic.*

§ 537. (C.) The Gerundive is frequently used instead of the Gerund, when the verb governs the Accusative. The following changes then take place:—

1. The Accusative is put in the same case as the Gerund

2. The Gerund is changed into the Gerundive.

3. The Gerundive being an Adjective agrees with its Substantive in gender, number, and case: thus

*Ars pueros educandi difficilis est*

becomes

*Ars puerorum educandorum difficilis est*

in the following way: (1.) The Substantive *pueros* is put in the same case as the Gerund *educandi*; consequently *puerorum*. (2.) The Gerund *educandi* is changed into the Gerundive *educandus*, *a*, *um*. (3.) The Gerundive is made to agree with *puerorum* in gender, number, and case; consequently, *educandorum*. For example:

*Nihil Xenophonti tam regale videtur, quam studium agri colendi, Nothing seems to Xenophon so princely as the pursuit of tilling the soil.—Cic.*

*Regulus retinendi officii causā cruciatum subit voluntarium, Regulus for the sake of keeping to his duty submitted to voluntary torture.—Cic.*

*Obs.* The Gerund is used in preference to the Gerundive, when the use of the latter would cause any ambiguity, especially when the Object of the Verbal Substantive is a neuter Adjective: as,

(*Pars honesti*) in *tribuendo suum cuique versatur, A part of virtue consists in giving to every one his own.—Cic.*

§ 538. The Dative of the Gerundive is very often used with its Substantive to denote a Purpose or Result: as,

*Valerius consul comitia collegae subrogando habuit, Valerius the consul held the elections for choosing himself a fresh colleague.—Liv.*

*Decemviri legibus scribundis, Decemvirs for framing a code of laws.—Liv.*

# THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE. 147

## SYNONYMS.

- 1 **Vasto**, *vī, ātum, 1 (vastus), to lay waste. Pōpūlor, ātus sum, 1 (pōpūlus), prop. to strip of inhabitants; to ravage (by pillage and fire). Dēpōpūlor, ātus sum, 1 (intensive of preceding), utterly to ravage:—*

Noctu pōpūlabātur agros, *He ravaged the country by night.*—Cic.

Agros et urbem dēpōpūlātus est, *He laid waste country and town.*—Liv.

Omnia ferro et incendiis vastāre, *To lay all waste with fire and sword.*—Liv.

- 2 **Prīmo**, *at first, has reference to time. Prīmum, first, firstly, to order or arrangement:—*

Nēque illi crēdēbam prīmo, *Nor did I at first believe it.*—Ter.

Prīmum igitur est de hōnesto, tum de ūlli dissērendum, *First see have to discuss the honourable, next the useful.*—Cic.

- 3 **Dēmum**, *at length, not till now. Dēnīque (opp. to prīmum), finally, in short. Tandem, at last, often after many efforts or disappointments. Postrēmo, last in order of time, lastly:—*

Vab! nunc dēmum intelligo, *Bless me, I see it now!*—Ter.

En dēmum vērā est amicitia, *That, and nothing short of it, is true friendship.*—Sall.

Dēnīque quid rēliqui hābēmus? *Finally what have we left?*—Sall.

Jam tandem Itāliae fugientes prēdūmus grās, *Now at last we grasp the flying coats of Italy.*—Virg.

Quaero postrēmo, *Lastly I ask, &c.*—Cic.

## PHRASES.

Eng. *It is said that a stone fell from heaven.* Lat. *Dicitur lāpis de coelo lapens esse.*

" *I think I ought not to omit.*

" *The states were unable to pay.*

" *To make away with a man.*

" *To join battle.*

" *Mihi praetermittendum non videtur*

" *Civitates solvendo non frant.*

" *Aliquem vitā prēdere.*

" *Proelium committere.*

## EXERCISE LXI.

1. The three tribunes, when (*postquam*) it became evident (*appareo*) that the Volscians would not join battle with them, parted (*discēdo*) into three-divisions to (*ad*) devastate their territories. 2. A plan was entered upon of surprising<sup>1</sup> the warlike<sup>2</sup> enemy by means of an ambuscade. 3. So alarming tidings<sup>3</sup> had been brought to Rome that, laying-aside now their hatred for the decemviri, the senate<sup>4</sup> decreed that night-watches should be maintained (*hābeo*) within (*in*) the city. 4. Minucius had neither the same fortune nor (the same) vigour of mind in action:<sup>5</sup> for while no serious<sup>6</sup> disaster was sustained (by him), he timidly<sup>7</sup> confined himself to his camp (*abl.*). 5. Meantime the Flamen of Quirinus<sup>8</sup> and the Vestal Virgins, abandoning all concern for their own property, held-a-consultation which of the sacred things they should carry<sup>9</sup> with them, and which should be left behind. 6. Both the friendly and the unfriendly had been persuaded<sup>10</sup> that there was no man (living) at the time<sup>11</sup> (who was) so great in war. 7. When the Gauls summoned the Romans to surrender (*subs.*) on-the-ground-that-they-were-

starving,<sup>12</sup> in order to<sup>13</sup> remove<sup>14</sup> that impression, it is said that bread was tossed from the Capitol to the posts of the enemy. 8. It is not denied that Demosthenes possessed very great eloquence:<sup>15</sup> but it is also agreed that he was very fond of hearing Plato. 9. And since I am speaking of orators, I think I ought not to pass by those two thunderbolts of the forum, Tiberius and Caius Gracchus. 10. He determined that since this charge did not seem possible to be disproved,<sup>16</sup> all the ship-captains<sup>17</sup> (who were) the witnesses to his guilt must be made away with. 11. You fixed<sup>18</sup> the expenses of the ambassadors at too high a sum, though the states were not able to pay it. 12. The property of many citizens is-at-stake, which you must care for<sup>19</sup> both on your own account and on that of the republic.

<sup>1</sup> Capto, avi, itum, 1.

<sup>2</sup> Ferox, deis.

<sup>3</sup> Say, so great alarms.

<sup>4</sup> Patres.

<sup>5</sup> Say, in carrying on (the) business (negotium gerere).

<sup>6</sup> Magnopere: St. L. Gr. 546, 4.

<sup>7</sup> Adjective: St. L. Gr. 343.

<sup>8</sup> Quirinalis, e.

<sup>9</sup> Use *pass.* (gerundive).

<sup>10</sup> See St. L. Gr. 234, Obs. 2: friendly,

unfriendly, acquus, iniquus.

<sup>11</sup> Ea tempestate.

<sup>12</sup> Say, by hunger.

<sup>13</sup> Causa, foll. by gerundive.

<sup>14</sup> Averti, ti, sum, 3.

<sup>15</sup> Vis dicendi.

<sup>16</sup> Tollo, sustuli, sublatus, 3.

<sup>17</sup> Navarchus, i.

<sup>18</sup> Say, you determined (decerno) too large expenses for the ambassadors.

<sup>19</sup> Consulo, ul, itum, 3 (gerundive).

## LXII.—THE SUPINES.

§ 542. The two Supines in *um* and *n* are properly the Accusative and Ablative Cases of Verbal Substantives of the Fourth Declension.

§ 543. The Supine in *um* is used only after Verbs signifying *motion*, and denotes a Purpose. It is thus equivalent to *ut* with the Subjunctive: as,

Fabius Pietor Delphos ad Oraculum missus est scitatum quibus precibus deos possent placare, *Fabius Pietor was sent to Delphi, to the oracle; in order to enquire by what prayers they might propitiate the gods.*—Liv.

Cubitum iro (or, of several persons, cubitum disculere), *To go to bed.*—Cic.

Themistocles.....Argos habitatum concessit, *Themistocles retired to live at Argos.*—Nep.

§ 544. The Supine in *n* (which is properly an Ablative of Manner, § 311) is used after such Adjectives as *jucundus*, pleasant; *facilis*, easy; *honestus*, honourable; *credibilis*, credible,

*mirābilis, wonderful; and the like, with their contraries, to denote in what respect they are predicated of anything: as,*

*Quid est tam jucundum cognitu atque auditu, quam sapientibus sententiis gravibusque verbis ornata oratio? What is so delightful, whether in the learning or the hearing, as speech adorned with wise sentiments and weighty words?—Cic.*

*Id dictu quam re facilius, That were easier in the saying than in the doing.—Liv.*

*Nefas est dictu, There were an impiety in so saying!—Cic.*

*Obs. 1. Tacitus (once) uses the Supine in u instead of the Infinitive Mood after the Verb pūdet: as,*

*Pūdet dictu, I am ashamed as I say it!—Agr. 32.*

*Obs. 2. The Supine in u may often be translated by the English Infinitive Mood: as,*

*Mirābile dictu, Marvellous to relate!—Virg.*

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Lēgātus, i, m. (lēgo), an ambassador; also a lieutenant. Orātor, ōris, m. (ōro), one who pleads a cause or speaks for another, an envoy, a spokesman; an orator. Rhētor, ōris, m. (rhētop), a rhetorician, one who gives lessons in rhetoric:—*

*Pyrrhus de captivis redimendis missus orātor, Pyrrhus was sent as envoy respecting the ransoming of the prisoners.—Cic.*

*Rhētor māgister declāmandi, A rhetorician (is a) professor of declamation.—Cic.*

*Grātūlor (grātus) ātus sum, I, to congratulate, wish one joy: less freq. to give thanks. It has a variety of constructions. Grātor, ātus, i (chiefly poet.), to give thanks, congratulate. Congrātūlor (con, grātūlor) is used, generally of many persons, in the same sense as grātūlor:—*

*Grātūlor tibi affinitate viri, I congratulate you on your alliance with the man.—Cic.*

*Mihi de filio grātūlāris, You congratulate me on my son.—Cic.*

*Quā in re tibi grātūlor, On which matter I offer you my congratulations.*

*Ad coenam vocant, adventum grātūlantur, They invite him to supper, they welcome his arrival.—Tac.*

*Eāmus Jūvi Maxīmo grātūlātum, Let us go and give thanks to Jupiter most great.—Scipio in Gell.*

*Si mihi tum essent omnes congrātūlāti, If all had then joined to congratulate me.—Cic.*

*Jūvis templum grātantes ōvantesque ādeunt, They repair in thankful procession to the temple of Jupiter.—Liv.*

*Grātātur rēdices, He congratulates them on their return.—Virg.*

• *Et serves to connect, in the most general manner, words or sentences which may be deemed of equal importance. Que indicates a closer connection, as when one thing is an appendage of another. It is always attached as an enclitic to the word to which it belongs. Atque (ad, que) or ac is similar to que, but gives more importance to what is added. Ae is rather used before consonants (excepting c): atque before vowels and consonants.*

## PHRASE.

*Eng. If it may be said without impiety, Lat. Si hoc fas est dictu*

## EXERCISE LXII.

1. The people of Veii, quelled<sup>1</sup> by (their) defeat, sent envoys to Rome to ask for peace. 2. When the war with the Helvetii was finished, ambassadors from almost the whole of Gaul (*gen.*) came to congratulate Caesar. 3. The viceroys<sup>2</sup> of the king of Persia sent ambassadors to Athens, to complain that Chabrias was waging war against the king, in-alliance-with<sup>3</sup> the Egyptians. 4. Upon the Saguntines requesting<sup>4</sup> (to be allowed) to go to see Italy, guides were given them, and letters were sent to the different<sup>5</sup> towns (instructing them) to receive the Spaniards courteously. 5. Hannibal (though) unconquered in Italy, was recalled to defend his country against P. Scipio, son of the Scipio<sup>6</sup> whom he had routed first at the Rhone, a second time at the Po, a third time at the Trebia. 6. The soul of man can be compared with nothing else than with God himself, if this may be said without impiety. 7. Nor does he go further in narration than to state what needs to be known. 8. Though they had nowhere ventured on<sup>7</sup> anything worth being related, they agreed, for two months<sup>8</sup> pay and corn, to a truce for thirty days. 9. He proves to them that it would be an easy matter<sup>9</sup> to carry out their enterprise,<sup>10</sup> because he himself was shortly about to obtain (*fut. part.*) the supreme power in his own state (*gen.*). 10. Hannibal, incredible to tell, in the-space-of-two-days<sup>11</sup> and two nights, reached Adrumetum, which is distant from Zama about three hundred miles.

<sup>1</sup> Subjugo, Egl, actum, 3. Defeat, adversa pugna. (Clades is a great or disastrous defeat.)

<sup>2</sup> Praefecti.

<sup>3</sup> Say, together with (*una*).

<sup>4</sup> Abl. absol. : to request, pēto, Ivi, itum, 3.

<sup>5</sup> Say, through the towns, per oppida.

<sup>6</sup> Say, of him (is).

<sup>7</sup> Part. constr., omitting *though* : for nowhere anything, say nothing anywhere.

<sup>8</sup> Bimestris, c.

<sup>9</sup> Perfacile factu.

<sup>10</sup> Cōstita (*neut. pl.*).

<sup>11</sup> Space of two days, bīdium.



## QUESTIONS ON SYNTAX.

SERT.

211. What may the subject of a sentence be?
212. Can the Infinitive Mood stand as the subject? Why?
213. What may the predicate of a sentence be?
214. When is a substantive said to be in apposition with another substantive? What is usually the case, number, and gender of the latter substantive?
215. When does the Predicate usually follow the gender and number of the original subject? When does it usually agree with the apposition rather than with the original subject?
217. When the English words 'as' or 'when' are omitted in Latin does apposition take place? Give an example.
219. In what respects does a verb agree with its subject?
220. If two or more substantives form the joint subject, what will be the number of the verb?
221. What is the rule when subjects of different persons have a common predicate?
222. If the subject be a collective substantive, what is usually the number of the verb?
223. In what respects does an adjective agree with a noun?
224. Does the perfect participle in the compound tenses of the passive voice follow the same rule?
225. What rules must be observed when an adjective or participle is predicated of two or more subjects at once?
228. In what respect does the Relative agree with its Antecedent?
229. Suppose the Predicate of the Relative to be of a different gender from the Antecedent, with which does the Relative usually agree? Give an example.

SERT.

230. Suppose the Antecedent be a whole proposition, how is it treated? What is then used in stead of the simple Relative? Give an example.
231. What does the Nominative Case denote?
232. Does the Nominative ever denote the Predicate? After what four classes of Verbs especially?
234. What does the accusative denote? What kind of verbs govern the Accusative?
235. What Accusative frequently follows Intransitive Verbs? Give an example.
236. Explain how *Lugeo, Horreo, &c.*, often govern an Accusative. In what writers is this idiom chiefly found?
238. Name the Prepositions which, in composition with intransitive verbs of motion, give them a transitive force.
239. Name the Prepositions which, in composition with intransitive verbs of motion, frequently give them a transitive force.
240. Name the Preposition which gives a transitive force to intransitive verbs of rest, such as *jaceo*.
241. With *Pudet, Piget, &c.*, what cases are used? What do these cases respectively, represent? Give examples.
242. Name the impersonal verbs which take an accusative of the Person, but no Genitive after them.
243. What verbs take a double accusative after them? Give examples.
244. Name other verbs, many of which take a similar construction. What do the two accusatives represent?
245. After what verbs is the Fictive Accusative used? Give examples of it.
246. What compound Transitive Verbs take after them a double accusative? Give examples.

## SECT.

247. In what case are the names of Towns, and small Islands, put after verbs signifying motion towards?
249. In what case are duration of Time, and extent of Space, put after 'how long,' 'how far,' &c.?
251. By what writers is the Accusative of Closer Definition generally used? What does it indicate? What is the usual construction in Prose?
252. How is a Passive Verb, by a Greek idiom, often used? Illustrate this by a quotation from Horace.
254. Name the expressions in which the Accusative is used adverbially.
257. What rule is to be observed with the names of Towns and small Islands, in answer to the question 'Where'?
258. What other substantives also follow this rule?
259. In what case are names of Towns and small Islands put in answer to whither? Do the Poets extend the use of this construction? Give an example.
260. What two Accusatives have the same construction as the names of towns? Give an example.
261. In what case are names of towns and small islands put in answer to 'Whence'? Give an example.
263. State the general rule for the Genitive. Express in Latin a *ship of gold*.
264. Name some ablatives on which the Genitive depends. What is the usual position of the Genitive with these words?
265. In what case does the person or thing, to which anything belongs, usually stand?
266. What Genitive often follows the verb 'Sum'? What English word must then be expressed in the translation? With what words is this construction not admissible?
269. What do you understand by the Partitive Genitive?
270. Name the Adjectives and Pronouns after which the Partitive Genitive is used. May these neuters ever depend on Prepositions?
271. After what kind of Adverbs, used sub-

## SECT.

- stantively, is the Partitive Genitive found? Name these adverbs.
272. After what other words is the Partitive Genitive used?
273. Give examples of each.
274. If a substantive of quality, quantity, &c., have an adjective joined with it, in what case does it stand? Can the Genitive and Ablative ever be used without an adjective?
276. Name the class of adjectives which govern a genitive of the object. Give an example of each. What other adjectives follow the same rule?
277. Is there any difference of meaning between *patiens laborum* and *patiens laboris*? Give an explanation of it.
278. What case do verbs of Remembering and Forgetting usually govern?
279. After what verbs is the Genitive used to denote the Charge? What other construction is sometimes found? With what word is this the only admissible construction? With what adjectives is the Genitive also used?
280. How is the Genitive sometimes used after verbs of condemning? Is any other case ever used? Give an example of each.
281. By what words is the price or value expressed after verbs? How is a definite price expressed? Name some Genitives that are used to express *of no value at all*.
282. Name the verbs of feeling which take a genitive of the cause of emotion. What case do Miseror and Commiseror govern?
283. How is the Genitive used with Interest and Refert? What construction must be used in the case of Personal Pronouns? How is Refert generally used?
284. What case is used after Verbs and Adjectives of Separation or Removal?
288. After what Verbs may the Dative be used? What construction must be used when for signifies *in defence of, on behalf of*?
289. Explain the Dative with *Voco, Nubo, &c.*

## SECT.

290. WI  
cl  
291. Na  
re  
H  
ve  
an  
co  
In  
ac  
Ro  
'S  
acc  
sat  
292. Wha  
Da  
sat  
con  
two  
293. How  
fect  
294. After  
Dat  
295. What  
Dat  
Lic  
296. What  
val  
fied  
verb  
297. What  
sign  
How  
298. After  
of  
used  
foun  
How  
ness  
306. After  
Separ  
is the  
307. After v  
often  
308. What  
est?  
310. After v  
of Or  
311. What d  
after  
tives  
a Pass

SECT.

290. What is meant by the 'Dativus Ethicus'? With what dative is it closely connected?
291. Name the verbs, which though apparently transitive, govern a Dative. How must the Passives of these verbs be used? What case do Juro and Adjuro govern? What is the construction of Medeor and Adulor? In what sense does Aemulor take an accusative? What case do Jubeo, Rogo, and Guberno take after them? 'Some verbs have different meanings according as they govern the Accusative or Dative.' Give examples.
292. What compound Verbs govern the Dative? What verbs take an accusative in addition? Name some compound Verbs that often take two constructions. Give examples.
293. How is the Dative used after the Perfect Tenses Passive?
294. After what part of the Verb does the Dative regularly express the Agent?
295. What impersonal Verbs govern the Dative? What is often found with Licet, &c.?
296. What is 'Sum' with a Dative equivalent to? When a name is specified after 'Esse,' or any similar verb, into what case is it attracted?
297. What two Datives are used with verbs signifying to be, or become, &c.? How is a Dative of result often used?
298. After what Adjectives may the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage be used? What construction is often found with Similis and Dissimilis? How may an Adjective denoting fitness or ability be construed?
306. After what Verbs is the Ablative of Separation or origin found? What is the usual construction in Prose?
307. After what adjectives is the ablative often used?
308. What is the construction of *Opus est*?
310. After what participles is the Ablative of Origin especially found?
311. What does the Ablative usually express after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives? When is the Ablative, after a Passive Verb used with a Preposi-

SECT.

- tion? When is it used without a Preposition?
312. When is the Ablative of manner generally used without 'Cum'? When is the Ablative of manner generally used with 'Cum'? Name the Substantives which never take 'Cum.' When will the English 'with' always be translated by 'Cum'? When will it always be translated by the Ablative only?
313. How is the Ablative used with Intransitive Verbs?
314. What sort of Adjectives are followed by the Ablative of Cause? Name examples.
315. Name the Deponent Verbs which govern the Ablative. What were these Deponents originally? How is the Ablative with Potior probably governed? When does Potior take a Genitive?
316. What Verbs and Adjectives are used with an Ablative of Price? Why is the Ablative used to express the price? How is an indefinite price expressed? Name the exceptions to this rule.
317. What Verbs and Adjectives govern an Ablative of Means or Manner? What other case is sometimes used with them? What case does 'indigeo' always take? What other verbs come under this rule? What other adjective also governs an ablative?
318. How is the Ablative of Quality used? In what respect is it like the Genitive of Quality?
319. How is the Ablative used after Comparatives? What rule must be observed when two Predicates are compared?
320. What case do Dignus and Indignus govern?
321. What does the Ablative of Measure denote? and how does it occur? Give examples.
322. How is the answer to 'When' expressed? Give examples.
323. If a Substantive denoting time is without any attributive word, what rule is to be observed? Name any exceptions to this rule.

## SECT.

324. How is the answer to 'within what time' expressed?
325. How is the answer to 'how long before' or 'how long after' expressed? Give the forms of expression that may be used with the same meaning. When may 'Ante' or 'Post' used in this way govern a dependent proposition? Give the forms that may be used when 'ante' or 'post' are followed by quam and a verb.
326. How is the answer to the question 'Where' expressed?
327. What is the rule for the construction of the names of Towns and small Islands?
328. Name the Ablatives which are used without a preposition in answer to the question 'Where'?
330. With what Adjective may a noun be placed in the Ablative without a preposition?
331. What rule must be observed in all other cases? Do the Poets observe these restrictions?
332. How do you define the Ablative Absolute? How may this Ablative be explained? How must the Perfect Participle active in English usually be dealt with in Latin?
333. How is the Substantive sometimes represented, in the Ablative Absolute? With what words does this construction most frequently occur?
334. Since the verb Sum has neither Present nor Perfect Participle, what often occurs in this construction?
339. How is a Masculine or Nenter adjective often used? What must be expressed if the termination of the adjective would not be a sufficient guide?
341. How is an Adjective sometimes used in Latin? With what words is this especially the case?
343. How are Adjectives often used with Verbs? Name some that are most frequently used in this way. Which of these are of rare occurrence?
345. What Adjectives may be used with a Noun, to substitute an English relative clause with 'to be'? What

## SECT.

- is the difference between 'Primus dixit' and 'Primum dixit'?
346. In what case is the second member of a comparison put when the connection is made by quam?
347. If the first member of a comparison be governed by a word which does not belong to the second, what must then be used? If the first member of the clause is in the accusative, in what case is the second frequently placed?
348. What case does the comparative frequently govern?
349. How are Plus, Amplius, and Minus used with words of quantity?
350. When two adjectives are compared together, how is the comparison made?
351. What does the Comparative degree often denote? How may the same notion be otherwise expressed?
353. What forms are used to express the highest degree possible?
354. By what other words may a superlative be strengthened?
355. In what other way may comparison be made?
356. How would 'All the wisest,' 'All the best,' and similar phrases be expressed?
357. When are the Personal Pronouns not usually expressed?
359. What is the distinction between *nostrum*, *vestrum*, and *nostri*, *vestri*? Are *Nostri*, *Vestri*, plural or singular?
360. To what do the cases of Sui and the Possessive Pronoun Suus always refer?
361. In principal sentences to what does Suus sometimes refer?
362. In subordinate propositions to what may the cases of Sui, and the possessive Suus sometimes refer?
363. When are the Possessive Pronouns frequently omitted in Latin? What do the Possessive Pronouns often denote?
364. What is the person of the Demonstrative 'Hic,' and how may it be often translated?
365. What is the person of the Demon

## SECT.

366. What
368. What
369. What
370. To
371. What
375. How
376. How
377. With
379. Name
381. What
382. By
383. How
384. How
385. What
386. In
388. What
389. What
390. What
392. What
393. What
394. What
395. What

3207. strative 'Ille'? What does it often denote?
366. When *Hic* and *Ille* are used together, how are they distinguished?
368. What is the person of the Demonstrative *Iste*, and what does it denote?
369. What other signification has '*Iste*'? Are these distinctions of meaning also found in the adverbs derived from these pronouns?
370. To what does the pronoun '*Is*' refer?
371. When are the Accusative and Dative of this pronoun often omitted?
375. How may '*Idem*' often be translated when it denotes similarity or opposition to something already mentioned?
376. How may '*Ipse*' often be translated?
377. With what does '*Ipse*' agree when joined to a personal pronoun?
379. Name the principal relative pronouns with their respective correlatives. Give the corresponding adverbs. Are *qualis*, *quantus*, &c., always expressed after *talis*, *tantus*, &c.? Is it to be supposed that the relative '*qui*' is regularly preceded by '*is*' or '*idem*'? When are these pronouns to be used?
381. When is the Superlative in Latin inserted in the Relative clause?
382. By what may '*qualis*', '*quantus*', be governed in their own clause?
383. How do you distinguish '*aliquis*' from '*quis*'?
384. How is '*Quispiam*' used?
385. What does '*Quidam*,' a certain one, denote?
386. In what sort of propositions are '*Quisquam*' and '*Ullus*' used?
388. What does '*Quisque*' denote? What is its position in principal sentences?
389. What other use of '*Quisque*' may be noticed?
390. What do '*Alius*' and '*Alter*' respectively denote when repeated?
392. What does the Present Tense express?
393. What is meant by the Historical Present?
394. What does the Past-Imperfect Tense denote?
395. What else does this Tense denote?
- SECT.
397. How is the Past-Imperfect of the Verb *Sum* sometimes used?
399. What is the meaning of the Future Tense?
400. In what senses is the Perfect Tense used in Latin?
401. For what is the Perfect often used after '*postquam*,' &c.? What does '*postquam*' take when a precise time is specified?
402. What does the Past-Perfect Tense indicate?
405. What does the Future Perfect Tense indicate?
407. When are both the Future Perfect and the Simple Future Tenses sometimes used in Latin?
408. How is the Indicative Mood used with Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs?
409. What interrogative particles are also used to indicate a question?
410. What is the use of the particle '*ne*'? How is it placed?
411. What is the use of '*Nonne*'?
412. What does the particle '*num*' indicate?
414. What particles are used in asking double direct questions? How are *utrum*, *an*, and *ne* respectively placed? How are *neque* and *autem* written? What particle is often omitted?
415. Is '*an*' ever used in single questions?
416. Give the sequence of the interrogative particles and double questions.
421. What does the Subjunctive Mood express? What is it therefore used to indicate?
422. On what is the Subjunctive Mood always dependent?
423. What is the fundamental rule for the sequence of the tenses in the Subjunctive Mood?
424. Of what parts does an hypothetical sentence consist? When is the verb of each member of the sentence in the Indicative? When are both verbs in the Subjunctive?
426. When are the present and perfect tenses of the Subjunctive used with the conditional conjunctions?
427. When are the past tenses used with the same conjunctions?

SECT.

432. What other use is there of the Subjunctive?
433. What mood is used after words of doubt or uncertainty?
434. What is an Indirect Question? In what mood will its verb stand?
435. In indirect single questions how is 'num' used?
436. In indirect double questions what particles may be used?
439. After what expressions is the particle 'an' used? What do the phrases 'hand scio an,' 'nescio an,' &c., imply?
440. What is meant by the 'subjunctivus dubitativus'?
443. How is the Subjunctive often used without any preceding verb?
444. What kind of wish does the Present Tense Subjunctive express?
445. How is the first person plural of the same tense used?
447. Is a verb of wishing often expressed? What construction may then follow? How is 'opto' generally construed? What are 'volo,' 'nolo,' and 'malo' frequently joined to?
449. With what conjunctions is the Subjunctive used to express purpose or result?
450. How is the conjunction 'ut' used in connexion with the Subjunctive Mood?
451. After what verbs are 'ut' and 'ne' used with the Subjunctive, the former in a positive, the latter in a negative sense?
453. In what sense is 'quo' used with the Subjunctive? When is 'quo' chiefly used? What is it then equivalent to? Is 'quo' ever used to denote a result?
454. How is 'ne' used with the subjunctive? To what is it then equivalent?
456. When a purpose is signified, what is used for 'ut nemo,' 'ut nullus,' &c.?
457. If only a result is signified, what forms must be used?
460. What is the difference between 'ut' and 'ne,' after verbs signifying fear or anxiety? Instead of 'ut,' what is sometimes found?

SECT.

461. When is 'quin' used with the Subjunctive? Give an example of each class. Are the expressions 'haud multum abfuit,' 'minimam abfuit,' &c., ever personal?
462. In what sense is 'quin' used with the Indicative? What does it then express?
463. After what sort of words is 'quoniam' used?
464. What is meant by *Oratio Obliqua*?
465. Name the changes of mood that take place when a speech is transferred to the oblique form?
466. On what verb, expressed or implied, do all direct statements become dependent when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*?
467. In what mood are the subordinate verbs of Relative sentences placed in the *oratio obliqua*? Suppose a statement of the *writer's*, not of the *speaker's*, be interwoven in the *oratio obliqua*, in what mood will its verb stand?
468. In what mood will questions be placed when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*? On what word will they be dependent?
469. How is a rhetorical question expressed in the *oratio obliqua*?
470. How are commands and exhortations expressed when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*? What word would be either expressed or understood?
471. In what mood do the verbs remain in the *oratio obliqua* which were used by the speaker in the Subjunctive?
474. When do the relative and relative particles take the Subjunctive?
475. When is *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, followed by the Subjunctive? What common phrase may be referred to this rule?
476. When stating the reason for something, what mood does the relative take?
477. How may the force of 'qui,' when introducing a reason, be augmented? Is this ever found with the Indicative?
478. When 'qui' denotes a purpose, what mood does it take?

SECT.

479. Is 'W'...
480. After...
482. After...
483. When...
484. How...
485. How...
486. When...
487. When...
489. After...
492. With...
493. What...
494. How...
497. With...
498. How...
500. When...
501. When...
502. How...
503. What...
504. What...
505. With...
506. By...

- Sect.**
479. Is 'qui' ever used to denote a result? With what mood is it then used?
480. After what adjectives is 'qui' especially so used?
482. After what expressions is the Subjunctive generally used?
483. When does 'quum' take the Subjunctive?
484. How is the sequence of events in historical narrative expressed?
485. How is 'quum' used with the tenses of the indicative?
486. When do the Conjunctions *Quod* and *Quia* take the Indicative? Which of the two states a reason more directly?
487. When is the Subjunctive used with 'Non Quod' or 'Non Quia'? Quote a passage which illustrates the difference between *Quia* or *Quod* with the Indicative and the Subjunctive.
489. After what Impersonal expressions is *Quod* with the Indicative used?
492. With what parts of speech is 'Quippe' chiefly used? What Moods follow it?
493. What force has 'Quippe' sometimes with the Indicative? Quote examples.
494. How is 'Quoniam' generally used? With what Mood?
497. With what Mood is 'Dum' *whilst* construed? With what is 'Dum' *until* construed?
498. How is 'Dummodo' construed?
500. When do the Conjunctions 'antequum,' &c., take the Subjunctive Mood?
501. When do they usually take the Indicative?
502. How are 'Quamvis' and 'Licet' construed?
503. What Moods do 'Quamquam,' 'Etsi,' 'Etiamsi,' take?
504. What is the Infinitive Mood in reality? In what cases may it be used? What takes its place in other Cases?
505. With what Impersonal Verbs and Phrases is the Infinitive used as a Subject?
506. By what writers is the Infinitive chiefly used as a *Direct Object*?
- Sect.**
507. What Verbs are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive?
509. What other Verbs are also thus construed?
510. What Impersonal Phrases are followed by the Accusative and the Infinitive? Name some which are usually followed by the Subjunctive.
511. How are Verbs of *Willingness* or *Permission* usually construed? Have they ever any other construction? How is 'impero' sometimes construed?
512. What Verbs govern the Infinitive without an Accusative?
513. In what Case will a Predicative Adjective or Noun be when joined to an Infinitive Mood? Is the same Tense used in Latin as in English after 'Verbs of Wishing,' &c.?
514. What other Verbs govern the Infinitive?
516. How is the Infinitive used in Exclamations? Quote examples.
517. How do Historical Writers often use this Mood?
518. What circumlocution is used for the Future Infinitive? When is this especially the case?
520. How does a Participle express the Notion of the Verb? In what way is it chiefly used?
521. What case do Active Participles govern?
522. In what Participles is the Latin Verb deficient? What class of Verbs alone form a Perfect Participle? How is the lack of an Imperfect Participle Passive sometimes supplied?
523. What does the Imperfect Participle represent? What is often used in stead of it?
524. What does the Perfect Participle Active represent? In what Verbs only is it found? Name the principal Active Verbs which have a Perfect Participle with an Active sense.
525. What sense belongs to the Perfect Participle of some Deponents? Name the principal ones in which this is the case.

## SECT.

526. In what two ways is the want of a Perfect Participle in other Verbs supplied?
527. What does the Future Participle Active denote? With what verb does it most frequently occur?
528. How is the Nenter of the Perfect Participle sometimes used?
530. How are Participles oftentimes elegantly used in Latin?
531. What is the Gerund? In what Cases is it used? What often takes the place of the Nominative?
532. What construction have the cases of Gerunds? How only is the Accusative of the Gerund used?
533. Can the Gerund, like the verb, govern its proper case?
534. What does the Gerundive Participle signify? Name its various modes of construction. In what case is the Agent or Doer to be put?
535. If the Verb governs the Accusative

## SECT.

- with what will the Gerundive agree. Is such a construction as 'Poema timen-lum est' usual?
536. If the Verb governs any other Case than the Accusative how will the Gerundive be used? What case will the Gerundive govern in such instances? What is often omitted?
537. For what is the Gerundive often used? When? What changes then take place? When is the Gerund to be preferred to the Gerundive?
538. For what is the Dative of the Gerundive often used?
539. What are the two Supines in *um* and *a* properly?
543. After what Verbs is the Supine in *um* used? What does it then denote?
544. After what adjectives is the Supine in *u* used? How may it be translated?

Ab eo, 1.  
abnuo, 7.  
abolo, 8.  
ac, 149.  
accudo,  
accido, 7.  
accipio,  
acer, 6.  
acerbus,  
acles, 4.  
adimo, 51.  
adipiscor,  
adjuvo, 4.  
admodum,  
adolescens,  
adversari,  
aedes, 42.  
aeger, 50.  
agere, 117.  
aegritudo,  
agrotatio,  
agrotus, 4.  
aemulus, 1.  
aequalis, 5.  
aequor, 14.  
aeternus, 1.  
aevum, 19.  
affatim, 71.  
affinis, 41.  
agger, 15.  
agito, 57.  
agnomen, 2.  
agnosco, 15.  
agrestis, 14.  
aies, 50.  
alii, 16.  
alimenta, 11.  
aliquand, 1.  
altus, 50.  
altus, 76.  
amans, 83.  
amarus, 100.  
amator, 83.  
ambitio, 131.  
ambitus, 131.  
amens, 100.  
amico, 26.  
amicus, 69.  
amicus, 81.  
amitto, 74.  
annus, 6.  
impulsus, 21.



## INDEX OF SYNONYMS.

## AERO.

## A.

Abeco, 128  
abnuo, 76  
aboluo, 8  
ac, 149  
accendo, 21  
accido, 75  
accipio, 11  
acer, 6  
acerbus, 100  
aces, 4  
adimo, 51  
adipsor, 123  
adjuvo, 45  
admodum, 128  
adolescens, 120  
adversarius, 21  
aedes, 42  
agger, 50  
aggre, 117  
aggritudo, 125, 59  
agrotatio, 59  
agrotus, 50  
agminis, 109  
aequalis, 51  
aqualis, 51  
aequor, 14  
aeternus, 10  
aevum, 19  
affatim, 71  
affinis, 42  
agger, 15  
agito, 57  
agnosce, 21  
agnosco, 15  
agrestis, 143  
aies, 30  
alii, 16  
alimenta, 113  
aliquando, 15  
altus, 50  
altus, 76  
amans, 81  
amarus, 100  
amator, 81  
ambitio, 131  
ambitus, 131  
amens, 100  
amico, 26  
amicus, 69  
amicus, 83  
amitto, 74  
arania, 6  
suppilus, 21

## CARO.

amo, 90  
amoenus, 6  
amor, 53, 47  
andie, 72  
angor, 125  
angustus, 131  
anima, 8  
animus, 8  
animales, 64  
antiquus, 32  
aperte, 13  
appello, 8  
arbitror, 6  
arcus, or arius, 114  
ardus, 76  
aridus, 71  
arrogantia, 59  
ascla, 14  
aspemor, 131  
astus, 116  
atque, 149  
auctoritas, 117  
audacia, 34  
aufero, 51  
aufugio, 14  
aura, 57  
auxillor, 45  
aveo, 15  
avia, 60

## B.

Beatus, 21  
bellus, 14  
bellum, 53, 10.  
benevolentia, 53  
bestia, 14  
bonus, 114  
brachium, 25  
brevis, 62

## C.

Cactumen, 15  
caeremonia, 81  
caesaries, 11  
calamitas, 125  
calliditas, 116  
callis, 69  
capillus, 11  
caput, 46  
catus, 97  
caritas, 47  
cava, 31

## CUBITUS.

catena, 15  
catpina, 86  
celober, 27  
celus, 76  
cerno, 7  
certator, 107  
ceteri, 36  
cibus, 113  
cito, 8  
civis, 134  
civitas, 2  
clarus, 27  
clementia, 100  
clipeus, 72  
codex, 123  
codicilli, 67  
coepl, 81  
cognomen, 21  
cognosco, 16  
colis, 15  
colo, 14  
colonus, 131  
columna, 55  
coma, 11  
comissatio, 80  
comitia, 71  
commoror, 55  
communico, 93  
concessum est, 46  
concellum, 46, 71  
concremo, 21  
confidentia, 14  
congratulator, 149  
conviveo, 8  
conor, 113  
constitum, 46  
constituo, 143  
consuetudo, 81  
contemno, 131  
contentio, 90  
contestatio, 90  
contingo, 75  
contio, 71  
conventus, 71  
convivium, 80  
cothurnus, 62  
corium, 67  
corrumpo, 59  
crassus, 114  
crebro, 32  
cremo, 21  
creo, 71  
crinis, 11  
cruciatu, 109  
cruror, 47  
cubitus, 25

## DIVP.

culpa, 17, 1  
cultus, 69  
cuncti, 78  
cupiditas, 110  
cupido, 110  
cupio, 15  
cura, 125  
curia, 16  
curtus, 61  
cutis, 67  
cynaba, 1

## D.

Daniosus, 79  
decedo, 118  
decerno, 143  
decipio, 6  
defendo, 40  
deinde, 62  
de integro, 15  
delecto, 91  
deleo, 8  
delictum, 17  
delubrum, 42  
demens, 100  
demiui, 147  
denique, 147  
denus, 134  
denuo, 120  
depopulor, 146  
depravo, 59  
desero, 45, 75  
deserta loca, 55  
desidero, 15  
deciderum, 110  
despicio, 131  
desitio, 143  
desituo, 76  
Dens, 29  
deversorium, 86  
dico, 6  
dicto audientem esse,  
104  
diligito, 14  
dignitas, 81  
dignosco, 16  
diligio, 90  
dimidium, 68  
discedo, 128  
discrimen, 37  
disputatio, 90  
dissimilo, 17  
ditio, 14  
dives, 11

## DIVITIAR.

divitiar, 3  
divus, 29  
doceo, 10  
doctus, 36  
dolus, 116, 46  
dominatio, 5  
dorsum, 15  
duco, 21  
ducto, 21  
ductor, 25  
dulcis, 6  
dux, 20

## E.

Edico, 93  
editus, 76  
edocoo, 10  
educo, 29  
educo, 29  
effari, 93  
effero, 114  
effigies, 19  
effugio, 14  
egenus, 11  
egeoo, 97  
egestas, 97  
egestas, 139  
egregius, 33, 64  
eminens, 64  
emo, 40  
ensis, 25  
epistola, 50  
epula, 80  
epulum, 80  
eripio, 51  
erro, 97  
erudio, 29, 10  
eruditus, 36  
esca, 113  
et, 149  
evenio, 75  
averticulum, 93  
e vestigio, 116  
exactio, 126  
excellens, 64  
excelsus, 76  
excipio, 11  
excor, 100  
exiguus, 62  
eximius, 33, 64  
eximo, 51  
existimatio, 81  
exitialis, 79  
exitiosus, 79  
expedio, 107  
experior, 107  
extemplo, 116  
extrico, 107

## F.

Facies, 37  
facinus, 18  
fallacia, 116, 46  
fallo, 6

## HABITUS.

fama, 33  
famulus, 40  
fanum, 42  
fari, 6  
fas est, 48  
fasti, 64  
fastidio, 131  
favor, 53  
felix, 21  
fera, 14  
fere, 23  
ferio, 14  
ferme, 23  
fero, 57  
festinus, 139  
fidelis, 8  
fidelitas, 34  
fides, 78, 34  
fiducia, 34  
fidus, 8  
figura, 64  
firmus, 11  
flagitium, 1, 38  
flagito, 5  
flamma, 62  
flatus, 57  
flumen, 6  
fluvius, 6  
forma, 64  
fortunatus, 21  
fossa, 135  
fovea, 135  
fraudo, 6  
fraus, 116, 46  
frequens, 32  
fretum, 14  
frumentum, 31  
fruo, 62  
frustra, 5  
fugitivus, 107  
funda, 93

## G.

Gaudeo, 59  
gazae, 3  
gemitus, 86  
genero, 71  
gestio, 59, 15  
gigno, 71  
gladius, 25  
grandaevus, 17  
grandis, 16  
grates agere, 88  
gratia, 137  
gratiam or gratias habere, 88  
gratiam referre, 88  
gratias agere, 88  
grator, 149  
gratulor, 145  
gravis, 7

## H.

Habito, 55  
habitus, 69

## INVIDIA.

historia, 64  
homo, 17  
honoratus, 40  
honestus, 40  
hospitalitas, 86  
hospitium, 86  
hostis, 21  
humanitas, 50  
humo, 134  
humus, 78

## I.

ico, 24  
ignavus, 45  
ignis, 62  
ignoro, 64  
illustris, 27  
imago, 19  
imbecillus, 13  
immanis, 13  
impedimenta, 88  
imperator, 20  
imperium, 53  
impertio, 93  
impetio, 123  
improbus, 109  
incendium, 62  
incendo, 21  
inchoo, 83  
incelle, 135  
incipio, 83  
inclytus, 27  
incola, 134  
incolumis, 5  
indigeo, 97  
indulgeo, 8  
induo, 25  
industria, 64  
ineo, 143  
infans, 120  
infelicitas, 125  
inflammo, 21  
infortunium, 125  
ingens, 16  
ingredior, 143  
inimicus, 123  
inimicus, 21  
innocentia, 50  
inopia, 139, 17  
inquinus, 134  
insanus, 100  
inscius, 45  
insignis, 64  
in (singulos) dies, 33  
insolentia, 59  
integer, 5  
integritas, 50  
intelligo, 16, 34  
interdum, 15  
interficio, 3  
interrogo, 137  
intolerantia, 59  
intro, 143  
intro, 143  
invidia, 12

## MAR.

ira, 107  
iracundia, 107  
irascor, 45  
irritum facere, 5  
irritus, 5  
iter, 69  
iter facere, 28  
iterum, 120

## J.

Jucundus, 6  
Jugum, 15  
juramentum, 126  
jus, 42  
jurandum, 126  
juvenis, 120  
juvenis, 19  
juventas, 19  
juventus, 18

## L.

Labans, 33  
labor, 64  
lacetus, 25  
lacuna, 135  
lacus, 85  
laedo, 25, 128  
laetor, 59  
laqueus, 25  
legatus, 149  
letum, 8  
lex, 42  
liber, 123  
libertas, 113  
libet, 48  
licentia, 113  
licet, 48  
ligo, 116  
linquo, 75  
littera, 50  
littera, 67, 50  
littera, 33  
loca vasta, 55  
locuples, 11  
locus, 62  
longaeus, 17  
loquor, 6  
lucus, 120

## M.

Magnopere, 128  
magis, 23  
magnus, 16  
malus, 109  
mandipium, 40  
maniplo, 117  
maneo, 55  
manifeste, 93  
mansuetudo, 100  
manus, 109  
mare, 14

medeor, 40  
meditum, 40  
memini, 40  
meministi, 40  
men, 8  
mercor, 40  
mereo, 83  
mereor, 83  
merum, 1  
metuo, 2  
millia, 53  
miserari, 1  
miserere, 1  
miserere, 1  
miseria, 123  
miseria, 123  
monia, 1  
mostus, 11  
mollor, 119  
mollis, 57  
mons, 15  
monstrum, 8  
morbidus, 53  
morbis, 59  
morigeror, 13  
mori, 27  
mors, 8  
mos, 81  
multa, 17  
multum, 128  
mundamentum  
munditia, 97  
murus, 3

## N.

Navis, 1  
navis oneraria,  
neco, 3  
necto, 116  
negligo, 131, 40  
nego, 76  
nemo, 69  
nemus, 120  
nequidquam, 5  
nescio, 64  
nescius, 45  
nex, 8  
nexo, 116  
nimis, 100  
nimium, 100  
nitor, 113  
nobilis, 27  
nocens, 1  
nodo, 116  
nomen, 11  
nominis, 3  
nominum, 15  
novus, 81  
nuho, 42  
nufus, 69  
numen, 29  
nundina, 40  
nundior, 40

# INDEX OF SYNONYMS.

151

## MEROR.

mercor, 45  
meridum, 67  
meridui, 37  
mendicantia, 139  
mendia, 8  
mercor, 40  
merco, 83  
mercor, 83  
merum, 15  
meruo, 2  
millia, 51  
miserari, 10  
miserari, 10  
miserescere, 40  
miseria, 123  
moula, 1  
mostus, 11  
molior, 113  
molli, 57  
mons, 15  
monstrum, 83  
morbidus, 10  
morbis, 10  
morigeror, 104  
morior, 27  
mora, 8  
mora, 81  
molita, 17  
multum, 128  
munimentum, 97  
munio, 97  
murus, 3

## N.

Navis, 1  
navis oneraria, 7  
neco, 3  
necto, 116  
negligo, 131, 40  
nego, 76  
nemo, 60  
nemus, 120  
nequidquam, 3  
nescio, 64  
nescio, 45  
nex, 8  
nexo, 116  
nimis, 100  
nimium, 100  
nitor, 113  
nobilis, 27  
nocens, 1  
nodo, 116  
nomen, 21  
nomino, 8  
nonnunquam, 13  
novus, 81  
nubo, 42  
nullus, 60  
numen, 20  
mundina, 40  
mundum, 40

PK. L.—IV.

## PENURIA.

### O.

Obedio, 104, 29  
obeco, 27  
obitus, 8  
oblittero, 8  
obsecro, 48  
obsequor, 101  
obsideo, 21  
obtemperare, 104  
obtestor, 48  
obteneo, 123  
obvenio, 75  
occasio, 20  
occido, 27, 1  
odium, 121  
offendo, 128  
omnia, 78  
onerarius, 7  
oneratus, 7  
opera, 64  
opes, 3  
opinor, 6  
opitulari, 45  
oppeto, 27  
oppidum, 2  
opportunitas, 20  
oppugno, 23  
opto, 15  
ora, 33  
oratio, 11  
orator, 103  
ordior, 83  
oro, 48  
oscines, 50  
ostentare, 35

### P.

Pacificor, 72  
paco, 72  
paene, 23  
palam, 93  
palor, 97  
palumbes, 53  
palus, 85  
par, 53  
pareo, 104, 39  
paria, 53  
paries, 3  
pario, 71  
parma, 72  
participo, 93  
parvus, 16, 62  
pator, 57  
patria, 42  
paupertas, or pau-  
peries, 139, 17  
peccatum, 17  
peculiaris, 74  
pecus, 32  
pellis, 67  
pelta, 72  
penuria, 17

## PROVINCIA.

peris, 113  
percontor, or percontor, 137  
percontio, 24  
perdo, 74  
perdoceo, 10  
perfuga, 107  
perigliari, 28  
periculor, 107  
periculum, 17  
peritus, 16  
permitto, 8, 57  
perniciosus, 79  
perpetuus, 10  
perquam, 128  
peto, 5  
plus, 11  
placet, 48  
plaga, 91, 15  
placuit, 86  
plane, 21  
plangor, 26  
plebs, 11  
plus, 23  
poena, 109, 17  
poeta, 11  
polleo, 10  
pollutus, 9  
pontus, 14  
populus, 135  
populus, 11  
portentum, 25  
portus, 117  
posco, 5  
possum, 10  
postea, 62  
postremo, 147  
postulo, 5  
potatio, 5  
potentia, 14  
potestas, 14  
potio, 5  
potus, 5  
praeda, 105  
praenomen, 1  
praestans, 63  
pravius, 109  
precor, 48  
praecipio, 13  
primo, 147  
primum, 147  
principatus, 53  
priscus, 38  
pristinus, 38  
procella, 57  
procerus, 76  
prodigium, 85  
proelium, 4  
profanus, 9  
proficiscor, 38  
profugus, 17  
prophetia, 33  
prope, 43  
propero, 139  
propinquus, 42  
proprius, 74  
provincia, 15

## SALUTARIS.

prudens, 8  
prudentia, 53  
puro, 120  
pugna, 33  
pugna, 4  
pulo, 6

### Q.

Que, 119  
queo, 10  
querela, 83  
querimonia, 83  
queritatio, 86  
questus, 86  
quotidie, 33

### R.

Rapina, 105  
recens, 81  
receptaculum, 110  
receptus, 110  
recognosco, 16  
recordor, 37  
recuso, 76  
reco, 67  
regio, 15  
regnum, 53  
religio, 78  
relinquo, 74  
reliqui, 16  
reminiscor, 17  
renuo, 76  
repente, 116  
repudio, 76  
rete, 93  
reus, 3  
revenio, 67  
revereor, 14  
revertor, 67  
rex, 3  
rhetor, 149  
ripa, 33  
ritus, 81  
rivalis, 107  
rivus, 6  
robustus, 33  
rogo, 5  
ruina, 15  
rumor, 33  
rurani, 120  
rus, 42  
rusticus, 141

### S.

Sacer, 9  
sacramentum, 120  
sacrosanctus, 1  
sagitta, 13  
salus, 120  
salubris, 38  
salutaris, 38

M

SALVUS.	TEMETUM.	VAGOR.	VELTOR.
salvus, 5	actalis, 3	tempestas, 57, 10	valde, 123
sanctus, 114, 19	actio, 76	templum, 42	valeo, 10
rangula, 47	solidus, 33	tempus, 19	valeitudo, 59
sano, 45	sollitudo, 55	tenet, 57	validus, 11
sapiens, 8	sollertia, 116	tento, 157	vasto, 146
sapientia, 56	solllicitudo, 125	tergus, 67	vastus, 16
sarcina, 88	solum, 78	terra, 78	vates, 11
satis, 73	sons, 3	timeo, 2	veco, 100
sancio, 25	sospes, 5	tignum, 23	vectigal, 126
scapha, 1	species, 64	tormentum, 120	vehemens, 6
scelus, 1, 18	sperno, 111	totus, 78	vellus, 67
scientia, 55	spiculum, 11	trabs or trabes, 21	vendito, 117
sciscitor or scitor, 117	spissus, 114	tractus, 62	vendo, 117
scroba, 115	spoliata, 115	trames, 69	venerum, 19
sentium, 72	sponte, 48	transfuga, 107	veneris, 14
securis, 14	stagnant, 85	tribuo, 91	ventus, 57
seditionis, 97	stallo, 117	tributum, 126	vercor, 2
segrego, 125	status, 19	tristis, 11	vertex, 46
sejungo, 125	statio, 141	triticum, 11	vesanus, 100
semila, 67	stomachor, 41	trucidio, 1	vestimentum, 51
semper, 71	strages, 15	tinor, 40	vestio, 25
sempternus, 10	studium, 51	tum, 62	vestis, 69
senatus, 16	suavis, 6	tumulus, 15	vetus, 17, 18
senecta, 15	subito, 116	tumultuarius, 97	via, 69
senex, 17	sublimis, 76	tumultuosus, 97	vibro, 57
senecta, senectus, 35	subterfugio, 14	tumultus, 10	victus, 71
senium, 35	subvenio, 45	turba, 10	vide, 7
sententia, 17	succendo, 21	turbulentus, 97	vincto, 116
sentio, 34	succenseo, 45	tyrannus, 1	vincto, 29
sepiello, 114	succurreo, 45		vinculum, 25
sepono, 123	suesco, 76		vindico, 119
sermo, 11	superbia, 59		vinum, 15
servus, 40	supero, 29		violio, 123
sica, 25	superstition, 78		virus, 11
siccus, 71	supplicium, 173		viscera, 11
silva, 120	supplicio, 48		vita, 31
similia, 33	sutripio, 51		vital, 17
similia aliena, 12	suscipio, 11		vivo, 27
similia alienus, 12	sustineo, 57		vix, 117
simulacrum, 19	suus, 74		voco, 15
simulo, 17			volo, 15
similitas, 123			volsamen, 123
singularia, 64			vulgus, 11
singulis diebus, 31			vulnere, 75
sino, 8			vultus, 55
soccus, 64			
socius, 9			

T.  
Tandem, 147  
tellus, 78  
telum, 11  
tomentum, 35

U.  
Urbanus, 114  
uldisco, 179  
uligo, 85  
ultra, 48  
ultra, 25  
universal, 78  
urbs, 2  
usque, 73  
usurpo, 62  
utor, 62  
uxorem duco, 43

V.  
Vagor, 97

abando  
dulsum,  
ul, ertum,  
lictum, 3.  
abando:  
tus, a, um;  
abide, t  
2; expecto,  
abide by, s  
(Ex. 28), w  
ability:  
se, f. = tale  
able, be  
posse; queo  
; valeo, ul  
abode, di  
domicilium,  
aborigin  
am, c.  
abound,  
Abundo, avi  
structed with  
abounding  
tis (with abl.  
about, =  
prep., or (rar  
with abl. In  
after, ade, or  
circa, circum,  
fere, ade.  
above, su  
acc. and abl  
with acc. Cy  
prep. with acc  
of place, super  
major, us.  
abroad, R  
verbs of motio  
absence, at  
his, her, absen  
abundance  
se, f.; plurim  
abundance, ab  
tim (Ex. 17), a  
abundant;  
abundant (Ex.  
gen.  
access, adit  
accomplish  
f.  
accord, of  
sponte (prop. a  
spont, f.).

# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

## A. RANDOM.

### A

**abandon.** to, *dimittit, dimisit, dimissum*, 1 (Ex. 42); *dēsero, ul, ertum*, 3; *relinquo, liqui, lictum*, 3.  
**abandoned, in life.** *scēlētus, a, um*; *perditus, a, um*.  
**abide.** to, *maneo, si, sum*, 2; *expecto, avi, ātum*, 1: = to abide by, *sto, stēti, stātum*, 1 (Ex. 28), with *abl.*  
**ability.** = *power, pōtentia, ae, f.* = *talent, ingēnium*, 1, n.  
**able.** be to, *possum, pōtūl, posse*; *queo, quivi et li, itum*, 1; *valeo, ul, itum*, 2.  
**abode.** *dōmus, ūs and i, f.* *domiciliūm*, 1, n.  
**aborigines,** *abōrīgines, am, c.*  
**abound, or abound in.** to *ābundo, āvi, ātum*, 1 (construed with *ablative*).  
**abounding in,** *ābundans, tis* (with *abl.*).  
**about,** = *concerning, dē, prep.*, or (rarely) *sūper, prep.*, with *abl.* In point of time, *circiter, adv.* or *prep.* = *around, circa, circum, prep.* = *nearly, fere, adv.*  
**above,** *sūper, prep.*, with *acc.* and *abl.*; *sūpra, prep.*, with *acc.* *Of number, ultra, prep.* with *acc.*, also *adv.* *Adj.* of place, *superior, us.* *Of size, maior, us.*  
**abroad,** *foris, adv.* After verbs of motion, *foras, adv.*  
**absence,** *absentia, ae, f.* in *his, her, absence, abans, tis.*  
**abundance,** *ābundantia, ae, f.*; *plurimus, a, um.* In *abundance, ābunde, adv.*; *affluēt* (Ex. 17), *adv.*  
**abundant,** = *in abundance, āfūm* (Ex. 36), *adv.* with *gen.*  
**access,** *ādītus, ūs, m.*  
**accomplishment,** *ars, tis, f.*  
**accord, of one's own,** *sponsē* (prop. *abl.* of *obscure sponsa, f.*).

## ADRUMENTUM.

**accord.** to, = *to give, tribuo, ul, itum*, 3; *concedo, cessi, cessum*, 3: = *to agree, congruo, ul, 3*; *convenio, veni, ventum*, 4.  
**according to,** *secundum, prep.* with *acc.*  
**account of, on,** *propter* (with *acc.*), *causā, ergo* (with *gen.*); *in our, nostram vicem*.  
**accuse, to,** *accuso, āvi, ātum* 1 (constr. with *acc.* of person and *gen.* of crime; or instead of the latter, a neut. pron., or *abl.* with *de*); *falsely, insimūlo, āvi, ātum*, 1.  
**achieve, to,** *proficio, feci, factum*, 3.  
**achievement,** *factus, ūs, m.* In *plur.*, *res gestae, ex- ploite*.  
**Achilles,** *Āchilles, is, m.*  
**acknowledge, to,** *agnosco, gnovi, gnitum*, 3 (to *recognize*); *fateor, itus, 2* (to *confess*).  
**acquire, to,** *acquirō, quisi, qui*, 3.  
**acquit, to,** *absolvo, āvi, ātum* 1; *absolvo, vi, ātum* 1.  
**across, trans, prep. with *acc.*  
**act,** *factum*, 1, n.; *act of kindness* (Ex. 42), *bēnēficiūm*, 1, n.  
**act, to,** *facio, feci, factum*, 3; *āgo, ēgi, āctum*, 3.  
**action,** *actio, ōnis, f.* There is need of prompt action (Ex. 28), *opus est mātūre facti*.  
**add, to,** *adicio, jeci, jectum*, 3.  
**address, to,** *alloquor, allōcūtus sum*, 3.  
**adjure, to,** *oro, āvi, ātum*, 1; *obtestor, ātus sum*, 1.  
**admirable,** *admirābils, e.*  
**admire, to,** *miror, admiror, ātus sum*, 1; *to admire greatly, magna in admirātione habeo*, 2. (Ex. 42).  
**admonish, to,** *mōneo* (ad- *moneo*), *ul, itum*, 2.  
**admonition,** *admonitum, i, n.*, in *pl.*, *ea quae admonemur*.  
**adorn, to,** *orno* (or *exorno*), *āvi, ātum*, 1; *colo, ul, utum*, 3.  
**Adrumetum,** *Adrūmētum, i, m.***

## AGREEABLE.

**Aduatica,** *Aduātica, ae, f.*  
**advance, to,** *progredior* *gressus sum*, 3; *to bring forward, ahero, attali, allatum*, 3; *to advance battering-rams, agere turres*.  
**advantage, uilitas, ātis, f.; *to a man's advantage, often dat.* of person. (See Ex. 22).  
**advantageous, commodus, a, um; *to be advantageous to a man, alieni utilitati or ūsui esse, or expēdire*.  
**advice, consilium, 1, n.  
**Aedui,** *Aedui, grum, m.*  
**Aegatian islands,** *Aegātes, īnui, īnsulae, ārum, f.*  
**Aegean Sea, Aegaeum mare.**  
**Aelius, Aelius, 1, m.  
**Aemilius, Aemilius, 1, m.  
**Aeneas, Aeneas, ae, m.  
**Aeschylus, Aeschylus, 1, m.  
**Aesop, Aesopus, i, m.  
**Aethalia, Aethalia, ae, f. affair, *res, ei, f.*; *negotium*, i, n.  
**affection, caritas, ātis, f.; *amor, ōris, m.* In *pl.* *affectus* *us, m.*  
**affectionately, amanter** *adv.*; *studiosē, ade*; *piē, adv.*  
**affections, affectus, ūs, m.**  
**affirm, to,** *affirmo, āvi, ātum*, 1.  
**afraid, to be, vereor, itus** 2; *timeo, ui*, 2.  
**Afranius, Afranius, 1, m.  
**Africa, Africa, ae, f.** after, *post, prep.* with *acc.*, also *adv.*  
**afterwards, postea, adv.**  
**again, iterum, adv.** (ac- *against, contra, prep.* with *acc.*, *actas, ātis, f.*)  
**age, of proper, mātūras** *a, um*.  
**aged, senex, is** (Ex. 29), *m.*  
**agitate, to,** *agito, āvi, ātum*, 1; *moueo, movi, mōtum*, 2; *trépido, āvi, ātum*, 1.  
**agree, to,** *pāviscor, pactus sum*, 3; *together, convēnto, veni, ventum*, 4; *congruo, ul, 3*; *it is agreed, constat*.  
**agreeable, iacundus, a, um************************



**ask**, to, pēto, ivi and Yi, sum, 3 (acc. of thing; the person in abl. gov. by ab, de);  
**ask**, to, pēto, ivi and Yi, sum, 3 (acc. of person, and also of the thing).  
 = to make inquiry of, per-  
 centor, attus sum, 1; quaero,  
 sivi, situm, 3; interrogō, avi,  
 ātum, 1.  
**aspect**, fācies, ei, f.  
**ass**, āsinus, l. m.; āsellus,  
 l. m., a little ass.  
**assail**, to, invādo, al, sum,  
 3; hurno, ui, 3.  
**assemblage**, concursus, ūs,  
 m.  
**assessment**, census, us, m.  
**assistance**, subsidium, l.  
 n. To go to a man's assistance,  
 auxilio ālicui proficisci.  
**assistant**, adiutor, ōris, m.;  
 adiutrix, icis, f.  
**association**, societas, ātis, f.  
**assume**, to, assūmo, mpsi,  
 optum, 3.  
**Assyrian**, Aesyrus, a, um;  
 as subs. Aesyril, ōrum, m.  
**astray**, to go, abarro, āvi,  
 ātum, 1.  
**at**, ad, prep. with acc. = near  
 (at a place, see Ex. 15; at a  
 price, see Ex. 21.)  
**at all**, omnino, adv.  
**at first**, primo, adv.  
**at last**, tandem, adv., ad  
 postremum (Ex. 29).  
**at length**, demum, adv.:  
 then at length, tum demum.  
**at most**, summum (Ex.  
 14), used adv. bially.  
**at once**, extemplo, adv.;  
 simul, ad.  
**Athenian**, Athēnensis, is.  
**Athens**, Athēnae, ōrum, f.  
**Atilius**, Atilius, l. m.  
**Atridae**, Atridae, ōrum, m.  
**attack**, impetus, ūs, m.  
**attack**, to, impetum facio,  
 toll. by in with acc. (Ex. 14);  
 adōrior, ortus sum, 4.  
**attempt**, to, cōtor, ātus, 1.  
**attend**, to, ānshuadverto,  
 ti, sum, 3.  
**attention**, to give, often  
 ego, est, actum, 3 (Ex. 45).  
**attentive**, attentus, a, um;  
 intentus, a, um.  
**Attica**, Attica, ae, f.  
**Atticus**, Atticus, l. m.  
**attract**, to, allicio, lēxi,  
 lectum, 3.  
**attribute**, to, verto, verti,  
 verum (acc. of thing, and dat.  
 of person); do, dēdi, dātum, 1.  
**Attus**, Attus, l. m.  
**audacious**, audax, ācia

**audacity**, audacia, ae, f.  
**Augustus**, Augustus, l. m.  
**author**, auctor, ōris, m.;  
 scriptor, ōris, m. (veriter).  
**authority**, auctoritas, tātis,  
 f.  
**avarice**, āvāritia, ae, f.  
**avaricious**, āvārus, a, um.  
**avenge**, to, ulciscor, ultus  
 sum, 3; vindico, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**avert**, to, āverto, ti, sum, 3.  
**await**, to, tāneo, si, sum, 2.  
**aware**, concinus, a, um.  
**away**, far, longe gentium  
 (Ex. 17).  
**away**, to carry, abduco,  
 xi, ctum, 3.  
**axe**, sēcūris, is, f.  
**B**  
**Babylon**, Bābylōn, ōnis, f.;  
 the province of Babylon, Bāb-  
 ylonia, ae, f.  
**Babylon**, of or belonging to,  
 Bābylōnicus, a, um.  
**Bacchus**, Bacchus, l. m.  
**back**, tergum, l. n.  
**Bactrian**, Bactrianus, a,  
 um.  
**bad**, mālus, a, um; prāvus,  
 a, um (p. 109).  
**baggage**, impedimenta,  
 ōrum, n.; without baggage,  
 expeditus, a, um.  
**baile**, vādmonium, l. n.  
**band**, manus, ūs, f.  
**band together**, to, con-  
 juro, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**banish**, to, expello, pelli,  
 pusum, 3 (followed by ad,  
 alone, or with ex).  
**banished**, extorris, o (ex  
 terrā), expulsus, a, um.  
**bank**, ripa, ae, f.  
**banquet**, convivium, l. n.;  
 epulae, ōrum, f. (p. 20).  
**barbarians**, barbari, ōrum,  
 m.  
**barbaric**, barbāricus, a, um.  
**barbarous**, barbārus, a, um.  
**bare**, nūdus, a, um.  
**barren**, stētilis, e.  
**base**, turpis, e.  
**battering-ram**, āries, ōris,  
 m.  
**battle**, proellum, l. n., pug-  
 na, ae, f. (see p. 4).  
**be**, to, sum, fui, esse.  
**be-without**, to, cāreo, ui,  
 tum, 2 (with abl.).  
**beam**, trabs, trābis, f.  
**bear**, fero, tūli, lātum, 3, irr.;  
 pātor, passus sum, 3 (p. 47).  
**beast**, bestia, ae, f.; bellua,  
 ae, f. (see p. 14).

**BEYOND.**  
**beat**, to, caedo, cidi, cne-  
 sum, 3.  
**beauty**, pulchritudo, inia, f.  
**because**, quia, conj.; quod,  
 conj.; = of, propter, prep.  
 (gov. acc.).  
**become**, to = be becoming.  
 deorū, ult, 2 (with acc. and  
 inf.); = to be made, fio, factus  
 sum, 3. = be appointed, creor,  
 ātus sum, 1.  
**before**, antea, adv.  
**beforehand**, antea, adv.  
**beg**, to, pēto, ivi and Yi,  
 sum, 3 (followed by ab, de);  
 oro, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**beget**, to, pārio, pēperi,  
 partum, 3.  
**begin**, to, incipio, cepi, cep-  
 tum, 3; insituo, ui, ātum, 3;  
 coepi and coepit sum; begin-  
 ning of June, kalendae Iuniae.  
**behind**, post, prep. (gov.  
 acc.).  
**beloves**, it, oportet, ult,  
 2, imper. 2 with acc. and inf.  
**belief**, fides, ei, f.  
**believe**, to, credo, didi,  
 ditum, 3 (with dat. of person).  
**beloved**, as subs., dilectus,  
 ōrum, f.; as adj., āmātus, a, um.  
**below**, infra, prep. with acc.  
 also adv.  
**beneath**, infra, prep. with  
 acc., also adv.; subter, prep.  
 (gov. acc. and abl.).  
**beneficence**, bēnēfēcētia,  
 ae, f.  
**benefit**, bēnēfīcium, l. n.  
**benefit**, to, juvo, āvi, ātum,  
 1; adjuvo, 1; bēnēfācio, feci,  
 tactum, 3.  
**benignity**, bēnīgnitas, ātis, f.  
**beseech**, to, obtestor, ātus  
 sum, 1.  
**besides**, praeterea, adv.  
**besiege**, to, obsideo, edi,  
 essum, 2; the besieged, obsesi,  
 ōrum, m.  
**bespatter**, to, aspergo, si,  
 sum, 3 (with dat. and acc. or  
 acc. and abl.).  
**best**, optimus, a, um; all the  
 best men, optimus quisque.  
**bestow**, to, dono, āvi,  
 ātum, 1; tribuo, ui, ātum, 3.  
**betake oneself**, to, con-  
 fugio, ugi, itum, 3 (followed by  
 ad).  
**better**, melior, us; cāllus,  
 adv. comp. of sūus.  
**better**, to be, praesto, sūdi,  
 situm, 3.  
**between**, inter, prep. with  
 acc.  
**beyond**, ultra, prep. with  
 acc.; supra, prep. (gov. acc.).

ENGLISH.	CARE, TO.	CHANGE.
bid, to, jubeo, juss, jussim, 2; impero, avi, atum, 1.	building, aedificum, i, n.; aedes, is, f.	concern for, consilio, ul, utum, 3 (with dat.); to care for, facio, or pendo, with acc. and gen. (Ex. 21).
bill, libellus, i, m.	burden, onus, eris, n.	carefully, studiosè, adv.
bird, avis, is, c.	burden, to, onero, avi, atum, 1.	carry, to, fero, toll, latum, 3; gero, gessi, gestum, 3; dūco, xi, ctum, 3 (Ex. 13).
birth, genus, eris, n.; a man of high birth, nobili genere natus; a man of low birth, nullo genere natus.	burial, sepultura, ae, f.	carry away, to, abduco, duxi, ductum, 3.
birth, by, nātū (abl. of obsol. auba, nātus).	burn, to, trans, lucendo, dl sum, 3; intrans, ardesco (ardeo), st, 2; flagro, avi, atum, 1; deflagro, avi, atum, 1, to be burnt down.	carry on, to, gero, gessi, gestum, 3.
blood, sanguis, i, m.; erutor, eris, m. (p. 47).	burst into, to, irrumpo, rupi, ruptum, 3.	carry out, to, exsequor cūsum, 3. = to finish, perficio, feci, ectum, 3.
boast, to, jacto, avi, atum, 1; often followed by acc. of person; to make the same boast, idem gloriari.	bury, to, sepelio, ivi, ultum, 4; hūno, avi, atum, 1 (p. 124).	Carthage, Carthago, i, m.
Bocchus, Bocchus, i, m.	bushel, modius, ii, m.	Carthaginian (subs.), Carthaginensis, is, m.; Voentis, i.
body, corpus, eris, n.	business, negotium, i, n.; res, is, f.	Carthaginian (adj.), Punicus, a, um; Carthaginensis, e.
Boeotia, Boeotia, ae, f.	but, sed, conj.; autem, conj.	case, causa, ae, f.
Boii, Boli, trum, m.	butcher, to, trucidō, avi, atum, 1.	Cassius, Cassius, i, m.
book, liber, ri, m.; cōdex, tics, m.	buy, to, emō, emi, emptum, 3; mercor, atus sum, 1.	Cassivellaunus, Cassivellaunus, i, m.
born, to be, nascor, natus sum, 3.	by, a or ab, prep. (gov. abl.) = near, juxta, a to.	cast away, to, abjicio, feci, jectum, 3.
both, conj., et followed by another et, signifying "and"; — pron. uterque, uterque, utrumque, both of two.	by and by, olim, adv.	cast forth, to, projicio, feci, jectum, 3.
bounds of moderation, modus, i, m. in sing. (Ex. 9).	by means of, per, prep. (gov. acc.)	Castor, Castor, eris, m.
boy, puer, eri, m.	by no means, haudquāquam, adv.	catch at, to, capto (freq. of capio), avi, atum, 1.
brass, aes, aeris, n.		Catiline, Catilina, ae, m.
brave, fortis, e.		Cato, Cato, is, m.
bravely, fortiter, adv.		cattle, pecus, eris and adis, n. (not used in nom. and voc. sing.).
bread, panis, is, m.		Catulus, Catulus, i, m.
break, to, frango, frēgi, fractum, 3; infringo, frēgi, fractum (Ex. 9).		Caturiges, Caturiges, um, m.
breast, pectus, eris, n.		cause, causa, ae, f.
breeding, good, humilitas, atis, f.		causo, to, facio, feci, factum, 3.
brevity, brevitas, atis, f.		cavalry, equites, um, m.
bridge, pons, is, m.		cease, to, desito, sisti, stitum, 3.
briefly, breviter, adv.		centre, mediū, a, um; the centre, in mediū, or mediā parte.
bring, to, adduco, xi, ctum, 1; afferō, attuli, allatum, 3.		Centrones, Centrones, um, m.
bring about, to, facio (efficio), feci, factum, 3; to be brought about, fieri.		century (a division of troops), centuria, ae, f.; (an age), saeculum, i, n.
bring back, to, refero, tuli, atum, 3.		Ceres, Ceres, eris, f.
bring forth, to, pario, peperī, partum, 3.		certain, certus, a, um; for certain, pro certo; a certain (person), quidam, quoddam, quoddam.
bring to pass, to, efficio, feci, factum, 3.		certainly, profecto, adv.
bring up, to, (= rear), alio, al, altum or altum, 3.		Chabrias, Chabrias, ae, m.
Britain, Britannia, ae, f.		chain, vinculum or vinctum, i, n.
brother, frater, ris, m.		chance, periculum, i, n.
Brundisium, Brundisium, i, n.		change, mutatio, tuis, f.; political change, res novae.
brute beast, pēcus, pēculis, f.		change, to, mutō, s i atum, 1; convertio, ii, sum, 3.
Brutus, Brutus, i, m.		
build, to, construo, xi, tum, 3; aedifico, avi, atum, 1.		

## C

Caesars, Caesars, is, n.  
 Caesar, Caesar, eris, m.  
 Caius, Caius, i, m.  
 calamity, calamitas, atis, f.  
 call, to, appello, avi, atum, 1.  
 call together, to, convoco, avi, atum, 1.  
 call to mind, to, recordor, atus sum, 1.  
 call to witness, to, testor, atus sum, 1.  
 Calvisius, Calvisius, i, m.  
 camp, castra, trum, n. pl.  
 Campanians, Campani, trum, m.  
 can, possum, potui, posse; queo, quivi, 4.  
 Canius, Canius, i, m.  
 Caninius, Caninius, i, m.  
 Cannae, Cannae, trum, m.  
 Canusium, Canusium, i, n.  
 capable, capax, acis; of enduring, patiens, tis.  
 capital (subs.), caput, itis, n.  
 capital (adj.): capitallis, e.  
 capitol, capitolium, i, n.  
 captive, captivus, a, um.  
 Capua, Capua, ae, f.  
 carcass, cadaver, eris, n.  
 care, cura, ae, f.  
 care, to, = to take care of, curo, avi, atum, 1. = to have

concern for, consilio, ul, utum, 3 (with dat.); to care for, facio, or pendo, with acc. and gen. (Ex. 21).  
 carefully, studiosè, adv.  
 carry, to, fero, toll, latum, 3; gero, gessi, gestum, 3; dūco, xi, ctum, 3 (Ex. 13).  
 carry away, to, abduco, duxi, ductum, 3.  
 carry on, to, gero, gessi, gestum, 3.  
 carry out, to, exsequor cūsum, 3. = to finish, perficio, feci, ectum, 3.  
 Carthage, Carthago, i, m.  
 Carthaginian (subs.), Carthaginensis, is, m.; Voentis, i.  
 Carthaginian (adj.), Punicus, a, um; Carthaginensis, e.  
 case, causa, ae, f.  
 Cassius, Cassius, i, m.  
 Cassivellaunus, Cassivellaunus, i, m.  
 cast away, to, abjicio, feci, jectum, 3.  
 cast forth, to, projicio, feci, jectum, 3.  
 Castor, Castor, eris, m.  
 catch at, to, capto (freq. of capio), avi, atum, 1.  
 Catiline, Catilina, ae, m.  
 Cato, Cato, is, m.  
 cattle, pecus, eris and adis, n. (not used in nom. and voc. sing.).  
 Catulus, Catulus, i, m.  
 Caturiges, Caturiges, um, m.  
 cause, causa, ae, f.  
 causo, to, facio, feci, factum, 3.  
 cavalry, equites, um, m.  
 cease, to, desito, sisti, stitum, 3.  
 centre, mediū, a, um; the centre, in mediū, or mediā parte.  
 Centrones, Centrones, um, m.  
 century (a division of troops), centuria, ae, f.; (an age), saeculum, i, n.  
 Ceres, Ceres, eris, f.  
 certain, certus, a, um; for certain, pro certo; a certain (person), quidam, quoddam, quoddam.  
 certainly, profecto, adv.  
 Chabrias, Chabrias, ae, m.  
 chain, vinculum or vinctum, i, n.  
 chance, periculum, i, n.  
 change, mutatio, tuis, f.; political change, res novae.  
 change, to, mutō, s i atum, 1; convertio, ii, sum, 3.



CHARACTER.

character, persona, *ac. f.*  
characteristic, proprius, *a. um.*  
charge, = *an attack*, impetus, *as. m.* = *an accusation*, crimen, *inis. n.*  
charge, to (of troops), impetum facio, *fæci, factum, 3*; *foli. by in and acc.*  
Charidemus, Châridemus, *l. m.*  
chariot, vehiculum, *l. n.*  
Charles, Cârlius, *l. m.*  
check, to, teneo, *ul. tum, 2*; retineo, *ul. entum, 2*; *re-*  
cheerfully, lætè; lætus, *a. um* (*adly* agreeing with subject).  
cheese, cæseus, *l. m.*  
cherish, to, colo, *ul. cultum, 3*.  
chief, princeps, *clipsis (subs.); summus, a. um.*  
child, infans, *tis. c.* Children, liberi, *orum, n.*  
choose, to, deligo, *lægi, lectum, l.*  
Christ, Christus, *l. m.*  
Christian, Christianus, *a. um.*  
Cicero, Cicerô, *ônis. m.*  
Cilicia, Cilicia, *ae. f.*  
Cimbri, Cimbri, *orum, m.*  
Cimon, Cimon, *ônis. m.*  
circuitous route, circuitus, *us. m.*  
citadel, arx, *clis. f.*  
citizen, civis, *is. c.*  
city, urbs, *is. f.*  
civil, civilis, *e.*  
clad, see *to clothe*.  
class, genus, *eris. n.*  
clearness, perspicuitas, *âtis. f.*  
clemency, bonitas, *âtis. f.*  
climb over, to, supervado, *si. sum, 3*.  
cyme, coelum, *l. n.*  
close, = *end*, extrinseus, *a. um*, *close of the day*, extrinseum diel (see *St. Gr. § 343*); finis, *is. m.*  
clothe, to, amicio, *leui, lectum, 4*; luduo, *ul. âtum, l.*  
cloud, nubes, *is. f.*  
coast, ora, *ae. f.*; litus, *oris. n.* (*p. 31*).  
Codrus, Codrus, *l. m.*  
Coelius, Coelius, *l. m.*  
Cocparius, Cocparius, *l. m.*  
coffer, arca, *ae. f.*  
colla, to, signo, *âvi, âtum, l.*  
colled, signatus.  
cold, gelidus, *a. um*; frigidus, *a. um.*  
colleague, collega, *ae. m.*

COMPASSIONATE.

collect, comparo, *âvi, âtum, l.*  
colonist, colonus, *l. m.*  
colour, color, *eris. m.*  
combat, certamen, *inis. m.*  
come, to, venio, veni, ventum, *4*; pervenio, veni, ventum, *4*.  
come off, to, discedo, *essi, essum, 3* (*as conqueror*), *superior* discedo, *essi, essum, 3*.  
come out, to, excedo, *essi, essum, 3* (followed by *ab. or ab. with prep. de, e, ex*).  
come out to meet, to, obviam eo, *ivi and ii, itum, 4*.  
come to pass, to, fio, factus sum, *3*.  
come upon, to, invado, *vâsi, vâsum, 3*.  
come up to, to, accedo, *essi, essum, 3*.  
command, imperium, *l. n.*; imperatum, *l. n.*; jussum, *l. n.*  
command, to, impero, *âvi, âtum (with dat.), l.*  
commander, imperator, *eris. m.*  
commence, to, incipio, *cepi, ceptum, 3* (*of a battle*), *committo, isti, issum, l.*  
commencement, initium, *l. n.*  
commentary, commentarius, *l. m.* (*also um, l. n.*)  
commissariat, res frumentaria.  
commit, to, = *to do*, *fæcio, fæci, factum, 3*.  
commotions, commotus, *a. um* (*convenient*), *magnus, a. um.*  
common, communis, *e* (*shared with*).  
common-folk, plebs, *plebis, or plebes, ei. f.*; vulgus, *l. m.* and *n.* (*p. 11*).  
commonwealth, civitas, *âtis. f.*; respublica, *republicae, ae. f.*  
commotion, tumultus, *as. m.*  
communicate, to, communico, *âvi, âtum, l.*  
companion, comes, *itis. c.*; socius, *l. m.*; sodalis, *is. m.* (*p. 3*).  
comparo, to, comparo, *âvi, âtum, l.*; conféro, *tali, colatum, 3*.  
comparison, comparatio, *ônis. f.*; collatio, *ônis. f.*  
compassion, misericordia, *ae. f.*  
compassionate, misericordia, *dis.*  
compassionate, to, mibe-

CONSIDERATION.

reor, itus sum (*with gen.*), *3*; misêror, âtus sum (*with acc.*).  
compel, to, cogo, *cogit, cœctum, 3*.  
complain, to, queror, questus sum, *3*.  
complaint, querêla, *ae. f.*  
To make no complaint, nihil queri.  
compose, to, compôno, *pôsui, itum, 3*; *singo, sinxi, itum, 3*; = *to appease*, sêdo, *âvi, âtum, l.*  
comprehend, to, = *to comprehend*, *confinio, ul. entum, 2*; *comprehendo, di. sum, 3*.  
compulsion, by = *being compelled*, cœctus, *a. um.*  
compute, to, nûmêro, *âvi, âtum, l.*  
conceal, to, abdo, *didi, ditum, 3*; *to conceal the moon*, *lânam abdere*; cêlo, *âvi, âtum, l.* (*with double acc.*).  
concealed, to be, = *lie hid*, *lâteo, ul. itum, 2*.  
concerning, *de, prep.* with *ab.*  
concerns, it, interest, *suit* (*impers. with gen.*). *It — me, you, meâ, tuâ, interest.*  
concern, to, mûovo, *môvi, mûotum, 2*.  
condemn, to, condemnô, *dammô, âvi, âtum.*  
condition, conditio, *ônis. f.*  
conduct, to, = *to carry on*, *gêro, gessi, gestum, 3*; = *to lead*, *dûco, xi, etum, 3*.  
confess, to, fateor, *fassus sum, 2*; *confiteor, fessus sum, 2*.  
confine, to, claudio, *si. sum, 3*; *inclûdo, si. sum, 3*.  
confusion, perturbatio, *ônis. f.*  
congratulate, to, grâtulor, *âtus sum, 1*; *grâtor, âtus sum, l.*  
conquer, to, vinco, *vici, victum, 3*; *superô, âvi, âtum, l.*  
conqueror, superior, *eris.*  
consciousness, conscientia, *ae. f.*  
consecrate, to, consecro, *âvi, âtum, 1*; *dedico, âvi, âtum, l.*  
consider, to, dîco, *dixi, dictum, 3*; *pûto, âvi, âtum, l.*; *arbitror, âtus, l.* (*p. 6*); = *to contemplate*, *considerô, âvi, âtum, l.*  
considerable (quantity), aliquantum (*with gen.*).  
consideration, = *repa. a.* respectus, *us. m.* = *reputation*, *fama, ae. f.*; *exaltatio* *ônis. f.*

## CONSIDIUM.

**Considius, Considus, i, m.**  
**consign, to, trādo, idi.**  
*idm, 3; to consign, to, trādo, idi.*  
**consist, to, consisto, stitū,**  
*stium, 3.*  
**consolation, solātium, i, n.**  
**consonant, consonantia, f.**  
**conspiracy, conjuratio,**  
*ōnis, f.; insidiae, ōrum, f.*  
**constant, assiduus, a, um.**  
**construct, to, a, mōd, fō-**  
*sam dūco, xi, ctum, 3.*  
**consul, consul, ōtis, m.**  
**consular, consularis, e.**  
**consulship, consolatū,**  
*ōis, m.*  
**consult, to, consilio, ul,**  
*ultum, 1 (with acc.: with dat. to consider a man's interests).*  
**consultation, consultatio,**  
*ōnis, f.: to hold a consultation, consilio.*  
**consume, to, consumo,**  
*mpst, mptum, 1.*  
**contain, to, continere, ul,**  
*entum, 2; cāpio, cēpi, capt-*  
*um, 3.*  
**content, contentus, a, um**  
*(with abl.).*  
**contention, contentio,**  
*ōnis, f.*  
**contest, to maintain a,**  
*certo, āvi, ātum, 1.*  
**continual, perpetuus, a,**  
*um.*  
**contrary to, contrārius, a,**  
*um; contra, prep. (gov. acc.).*  
**control, to, impēro, āvi,**  
*ātum, 1.*  
**convene, to, indicō, xi,**  
*ctum, 3.*  
**convenient, opportunus, a,**  
*um; convēniens, tis; commō-*  
*dius, a, um.*  
**conversation, sermo, ōnis,**  
*m.; collōquium, i, n.*  
**conver, to, trāficō, fēci,**  
*fectum, 1.*  
**convict, to, arguo, ul, ātum,**  
*3; convincō, vici, victum, 3.*  
**cook, to, cōquo, xi, ctum, 3.  
**cover, to, tēgo, xi, ctum, 3.  
**Cornish, Cornubius, f.**  
**corn, frumentum, i, n.; tri-**  
*ctum, 1, n. (wheat).*  
**corner, angulus, i, m.**  
**correct, to, corrigo, rexi,**  
*rectum, 1.*  
**Corisca, Corisca, ae, f.**  
**cothurnus, cōthurnus,**  
*m.*  
**Cotta, Cotta, ae, m.**  
**council, concilio (shortened**  
*from conventio, con venio),*  
*ōnis, f.*  
**counsel, consilium, i, m.**  
*(p. 46).*****

## CURIO.

**country, = lands, agri,**  
*drum, m.; opp. to town, rus,*  
*rūris, n.; native country, pā-*  
*tria, ae, f. (p. 42), country of*  
*the Veneti (Ex. 15), Veneti,*  
*drum, m.*  
**courage, virtus, ōtis, f.**  
**course, cursus, ōis, m.; iter,**  
*itinēris, n.*  
**courteously, cōmiter, adv.;**  
*urbānē, adv.*  
**covet, to, appetō, ivi and**  
*ii, itum, 3.*  
**covetous, cāpidus, a, um.**  
**craft, i. e. a skilled trade,**  
*ars, tis, f.*  
**cram, to, rēpio, āvi, ātum,**  
*2; impleo, āvi, ātum, 2; rēfē-*  
*cio, si, tum, 4.*  
**Crassus, Crassus, i, m.**  
**create, to, creō, āvi, ātum,**  
*1; ficio, feci, factum, 3.*  
**creature, animans, ntis,**  
*n.; animal, ālis, n.*  
**creep, to, rēpo, psi, ptum,**  
*3; to — upon, or over, obrēpo,*  
*psi, ptum, 3.*  
**Cremona, Crēmōna, ae, f.;**  
*aly. Crēmōnensis; battle of Cre-*  
*mona, proelium Crēmōnense.*  
**crime, flagitium, i, n.**  
**Crispinus, Crispinus, i, m.**  
**cross, to, transco, ii, itum,**  
*4; transcendō, di, sum, 1 = to*  
*conduct over, transdūco, xi,*  
*ctum, 3.*  
**cross-over, to, trans-**  
*gredior, gressus sum, 3.*  
**Crotone, people of, Crō-**  
*tonēnses, tum, m.; Crōtō-*  
*niātae, ōrum, m.*  
**crowd, turba, ae, f.**  
**crown, cōrōna, ae, f.; diā-**  
*dēma, ātis, n.*  
**cruel, crudēlis, e; saevus, a,**  
*um.*  
**cruelly, crudēlīter, adv.**  
**crushty, crudēlitas, ātis, f.;**  
*saevitia, ae, f.*  
**crush, to, obtūro, trivi,**  
*tritum, 3.*  
**cry, to, = to weep, ploro, āvi,**  
*ātum, 1.*  
**cry out, to, clāmo, āvi,**  
*ātum, 1.*  
**cubic, cūbium, i, n.**  
**culprit, reus, i, m. (a person**  
*who is on trial); nocens, tis*  
*(one actually guilty, see p. 3).*  
**cultivate, to, cōlo, ul,**  
*cultum, 1.*  
**cultivation, cultus, ōis, m.**  
**Cumas, Cūmae, ārum, f.**  
**cure, to, mēdeō, 2 (with**  
*dat.); cūro, āvi, ātum (with*  
*acc.: to treat, take care of).*  
**Curio, Cūrio, ōnis, m.**

## DEEP.

**custom, consuetudo, i, m.**  
*f.; mos, mōris, m.*  
**customary, cōsuetus, a, um**  
*cut off, to, interdūdo*  
*si, sum, 1.*  
**Cyrus, Cyrus, i, m.**

## D

**Daedalus, Daedālus, i, m.**  
**daily, q. idie, adv.; tu**  
*dies. Adj. a, nus, a, um;*  
*quōtidianus, a, u.*  
**Damasippus, Dāmāsippus,**  
*i, m.*  
**Damocles, Dāmōcle- is, m.**  
**Damocetus, Dāmōctes, ae, m.**  
**dancer, saltātor, ōris, m.;**  
*saltatrix, idis, f.*  
**danger, pericūlum, i, n.;**  
*discrimen, inis, n.*  
**dangerous, periculōsus, a**  
*um; asper, ēis, ārum (Ex. 31)*  
**Danube, Dānubius, i, m.**  
**dappled, varius, a, um.**  
**dappled skin, variētis**  
*ātis, f. (Ex. 31).*  
**dare, to, audere, sus sum, 2.**  
**Darius, Darius, i, m.**  
**dark, āter, ātra, atrum;**  
*tenebrōsus, a, um.*  
**daughter, filia, ae, f.**  
**dauntless, firmus, a, um.**  
**day, dies, ēi, m. and f.;**  
*in*  
*pl. only m.*  
**day-break, prima lux,**  
*lucis, f.*  
**day, by, interdiu, adv.**  
**dear, cārus, a, um; amicus,**  
*a, um.*  
**death, mors, tis, f. (poet.)**  
*ictum, i, n.; violent, nex, nēcis,*  
*f. (p. 8).*  
**Decemviri, Decemviri,**  
*brui, m.*  
**decide, to, decerno, crēvi,**  
*crētum, 3; iudico, āvi, ātum.*  
*It is decided, placet (Ex. 58).*  
**decisive contest, discer-**  
*men, inis, n.*  
**declare, to, dēclāro, āvi,**  
*ātum, 1; rēnunio, āvi, ātum,*  
*1—a person, a consul, or other*  
*magistrate.*  
**decline, dēirecto, āvi,**  
*ātum, 1.*  
**decree, consultum, i, n**  
**decree, to, decerno, orāvi**  
*crētum, 3.*  
**deed, factum, i, n.; gestum,**  
*i, n.; factus, ōis, n. (a bold*  
*daring—).*  
**deem, to, dāco, xi, ctum, 3.**  
**deep, altus, a, um; profund-**  
*us, a, um.*

DEFEAT.

defeat, *clades, is, f.*; adversa pugna, *ae, f.*  
 defence, praesidium, *i, n.*;  
 defensor, *onis, m.*  
 defend, to, defendi, *di, sum, 3*; tucor, itus sum (*p. 4c*).  
 defender, defensor, *oris, m.*;  
 vindex, *icis, m.*  
 degree, gradus, *us, m.*  
 Delaces, Delices, *is, m.*  
 delay, mora, *ae, f.*  
 delay, to, cunctor, *atus, i*;  
 moror, atus sum, *i.*  
 deliberate, to, consulto, *ul, utum, 3*.  
 deliberation, (often) *perf. part. neut. ol consilii*. See *Ex. 28*.  
 delight, to, delecto, *avi, atum, i*; juvo, *avi, atum, i*.  
 deliver, to, do, *deli, datum, i*; reddo, *idi, datum, 3*;  
*a speech, habeo, ul, utum, 2*.  
 demand, to, posco (*deposco*), *poscei, posciturum, 3*; flagito, *avi, atum, i*; postulo, *avi, atum, i*.  
 Demosthenes, Demosthenes, *is, m.*  
 deny, to, nego, *avi, atum, i*.  
 depart, to, decedo, *cessi, cessum, 3* (*from life, viam, or e vitam, concedo*).  
 departure, decensus, *us, m.*  
 depraved, pravus, *a, um*.  
 deprive, to, privo, *avi, atum, i* (*with abt.*).  
 desert, solitudo, *inis, f.*  
 desert, to, desero, *ul, erum, 3*.  
 deserter, transfuga, *ae, c.*  
 deserve, to, mereor, *meritus sum, 2*; or mereo, *ui, tum, 2*.  
 deserved, meritus, *a, um*, *justus, a, um*.  
 deservedly, merito, *adv.*  
 design, consilium, *i, n.*  
 designedly, prudens, *tis* (*pro video*).  
 desirable, cupidus, *a, um*.  
 desire, cupiditas, *atis, f.*  
 desire, to, = to aim at, *studeo, ul, 2* (*with dat.*); cupio, *ivi and li, tum, 3*; desidero, *avi, atum, i*.  
 desist, to, desisto, *steti, stitum, 3*.  
 despatch, to, = send, mitto, *misit, missum, 3*; dimitto, *isi, isum, 3*.  
 despise, to, sperno, *sprevi, spretnum, 3*; aspernor, *atus sum, i*.  
 destine, to, destino, *avi, atum, i*.  
 destitute of, expers, *dis.*

DISORDER.

destroy, to, diruo, *ul, atum, 3*; delco, *evi, atum, 2*.  
 destruction, exitum, *i, n.*  
 destructive, perniciosus, *a, um*.  
 deter, to, deterreo, *ul, itum, 2*.  
 determine, to, statuo, *ul, itum, 3*.  
 determination, praepositum, *i, n.*; consilium, *i, n.*  
 detestable, detestabilis, *e.*  
 devastate, to, vasto, *avi, atum, i*.  
 Diana, Diana, *ae, f.*  
 dictator, dictator, *oris, m.*  
 die, to, morior, mortuus sum, *3*: for other words, see *Synonyms, p. 27*.  
 difference, distantia, *ae, f.*  
 different, diversus, *a, um*; alius, *a, um*.  
 difficult, difficilis, *e.*  
 difficulty, difficultas, *atis, f.*; labor, *oris, m.*; *with difficulty* (*Ex. 51*). *vix, acri, ante*.  
 dig out, to, effodio, *fodi, fossum, 4*.  
 dignity, honor, *oris, m.*;  
 dignitas, *atis, f.*  
 diligence, diligentia, *ae, f.*  
 diminish, to, minuo, *ui, utum, 3*.  
 dine, to, coeno, *avi and atus sum, atum, i*.  
 Dion, Dion, *onis, m.*  
 Dionysius, Dionysius, *i, m.*  
 dip, to, imbuo, *ui, atum, 3*;  
 tinguo, or tingo, *xi, netum*.  
 direct, to, rego (*dirigo*), *rexi, rectum, 3*.  
 direction, = *quarter*, *regio, onis, f.*; route, iter, *itineris, n.*  
 disagreeable, molestus, *a, um*; ingratus, *a, um*.  
 disaster, clades, *is, f.*; Incommotum, *i, n.*  
 discern, to, cerno (*no perf. in this sense*). *3*; video, *vidi, visum, 2*.  
 discharge, to, fungor, *functus sum, 3* (*gov. abt.*).  
 discipline, disciplina, *ae, f.*  
 discourse, sermo, *onis, m.*  
 discourse, to, discero, *ul, certum, 3*.  
 discover, to, invenio, *veni, ventum, 4*; reperio, *peri, pertum, 4*.  
 disease, morbus, *i, m.*  
 disgraceful, turpis, *e*;  
 factus, *a, um*.  
 dishevelled, solutus, *a, um*.  
 dishonest, fraud, *dis, f.*  
 dislike, to, aveor, *atus, i*.  
 disorder, = *disease* mor-

DRINK.

disparage, to, deträho, *traxi, tractum, 3* (*with de and abt.*).  
 disperse, to, dispergo, *si, sum, 3*; disjicio, *jeci, jectum, 3*.  
 displeasing, ingratus, *a, um*.  
 dispose, to, dispono, *posui, positum, 3*.  
 disposed, to, propensus, *a, um, ad* (*with acc.*)  
 disposition, ingensum, *i, n.*  
 disprove, to, (*Ex. 61*), *tollo, sustuli, sublatum, 3*.  
 dissimble, to, dissimulo, *avi, atum, i*.  
 distance, distantia, *ae, f.*  
 distance, at a, *praecl, adv.*  
 distant, distans, *is, f.*  
 distant, to be, absum, *foi, esse*.  
 distinguish, to, discerno, *crexi, cretum, 3*; distinguo, *mxii, netum, 3*.  
 distinguished, egregius, *a, um*; singularis, *e*; clarus, *a, um*; illustris, *e* (*p. 27*).  
 district, plaga, *ae, f.*; regio, *onis, f.*  
 disturb, to, turbio, *avi, atum, i*; permovo, *movi, motum, 2*.  
 disturbance, motus, *us, m.*; perturbatio, *onis, f.*  
 disturbed, permotus, *a, um*.  
 ditch, fossa, *ae, f.*  
 divide, to, distribuo, *ui, atum, 3*.  
 divinity, numen, *inis, n.*  
 division, divisio, *onis, f.*;  
 distributio, *onis, f.*; *in-three-divisions*, *tripartito, atum, 3*.  
 do, to, facio, *fecit, factum, 3*.  
 doctor, medicus, *i, m.*  
 dog, canis, *is* (*gen. plur. um*), *c.*  
 Dolabella, Dolabella, *ae, m.*  
 dominion, imperium, *i, n.*  
 door-post, postis, *is, m.*  
 door, porta, *ae, f.*  
 doubt, dubitatio, *onis, f.*;  
 without doubt, certe, *adv.*  
 doubt, to, dubito, *avi, atum, i*.  
 doubtful, dubius, *a, um*.  
 dower, dos, *dotis, f.*  
 down, *de, prep. (gov. abt.)*.  
 downfall, ruina, *ae, f.*  
 downwards, praeus, *a, um*.  
 drag, to, traho, *xi, etum, 3*.  
 dread, formido, *inis, f.*  
 dream, somnium, *is, n.*;  
 somnus, *i, m.* (*Ex. 58*).  
 dress, habitus, *us, m.*; cultus, *us, m.* (*p. 60*); ornatus, *us, m.*  
 drink, potio, *onis, f.*; potus, *us, m.* (*p. 55*).

## DRINK.

drink to, bibo, bibi, bibi-  
tum, 1; potō, avi, ātum, 1.  
drive, to, ago, xgi, actum, 1.  
drive away, to, depello,  
pāli, pulsus, 1.  
drive out, to, pello, pē-  
pāli, pulsus, 1.  
drop, gutta, ae, f. sili-  
a, f.  
due, debitus, a, um.  
dumb, mutus, a, um.  
dumnox, dumnox, 1, 1.  
dutry, officium, 1, n.  
dwell, to, habito, avi, ātum  
1; incolō, ui, ultum, 1.

## E

Each, uterque, utrāque,  
utrumque.  
eager, cupidus, a, um.  
eagerly, cupide, ad.  
eagerness, stādium, 1, n.  
eagle, aquila, ae, f.  
early, niānus, a, um; ad.  
ear, auris.  
earnestly, vebementer,  
ad.  
earnestness, stādium, 1,  
n.; ardor, oris, m.; contentio,  
oris, f.  
earth, terra, ae, f.; tellus,  
avis, f.; solus, 1, n.  
easily, facile, ad.  
east, oriens, tis, m.; east-  
wind, Eurus, 1, n.  
easy, facilis, e.  
educate, to, edūco, avi,  
ātum, 1; erudio, vel et, tūm,  
4 (p. 29).  
effect, to, efficio, feci, fec-  
tum, 1.  
effort, cōatus, tis, m.; nis-  
us, as, m.  
egg, ovum, 1, n.  
Egypt, Aegyptus, 1, f.  
Egyptian, Aegyptus, a, um.  
eight, octo (indecl.).  
either . . . or, aut . . . aut,  
conj.; vel . . . vel, conj.  
elapse, to, praeterire, 11,  
tūm, 4; procedo, cessi, ces-  
sum, 1.  
elect, electus, a, um; désig-  
natus, a, um (Ex. 37).  
elect, to, eligo, exi, electum, 1.  
elephant, elephāntus, 1, m.  
election, dictio, oris, f.;  
electio, ae, f.  
elocution-master, elo-  
quentiae magister.  
eloquence, eloquentia, ae,  
f.; facundia, ae, f.  
eloquent, disertus, a, um;  
eloquens, tis.  
else (ad.), aliter

## EQUAL.

elude, to, effugio, fugi, fu-  
gitum, 1; eludo, si, sum, 1;  
fallo, feci, falsum, 1 (p. 18).  
eminent, grāvis, e.  
eminent, to be, emleco,  
ui, 2.  
emperor, Imperator, is, m.;  
princeps, cipis, m.  
empty, vānus, a, um; vā-  
nus, a, um, idle, worthless.  
enact, to, edico, xi, etum,  
1; decerno, crevi, cretum, 1.  
encamp, to, cōsido, edi,  
cessum, 1.  
encourage, to, hortor, ātus  
sum, 1; confirmo, avi, ātum, 1.  
end, exitus, tis, m.  
end, to, finio, vel, tūm, 4;  
conficio, feci, factum, 1.  
endless, perpetuus, a, um.  
endow, to, doto, avi,  
ātum, 1.  
endowed, praefectus, a, um  
(with ad.).  
engage, to, instruo, xi, etum,  
1; orno, avi, ātum, 1.  
endure, to, patior, passus  
sum, 1.  
enduring (adj.), perpetuus,  
a, um.  
enemy, hostis, is, m.; Ini-  
micus 1, m. (p. 21).  
engage, to, congredior, cessum  
(followed by cum), engage  
in battle, committo, misi, mis-  
sum, 1 (with proclium); cā-  
pesso pugnam (Ex. 27).  
engagement, proclium, 1,  
n.; pugna, ae, f.  
enjoin, to, injungo, xi, etum,  
1 (with dat. of person).  
enior, to, fruor, fructus and  
fructus sum, 1 (with ab.).  
enjoyment, voluptas, tis,  
f.; delectatio, oris, f.; gaudi-  
um, 1, n.  
enough, satis, ad.  
entangled, to get, inhac-  
reo, haesi, haesum, 1.  
enter, to, intro, avi, ātum, 1.  
enter on, to, inco, 11,  
tūm, 4.  
enterprise, Inceptum, 1, n.;  
cōnata (neut. pl.) (Ex. 62).  
entire, totus, a, um; integer,  
g, a, grum; universus, a, um.  
entirely, omnino, ad.;  
proptus, ad.  
entrust, to, credo, didi,  
ditum, 1; committo (permitto),  
misi, missum, 1.  
envoy, orator, oris, m.  
Ephesian, Ephesus, a, um.  
Epicurus, Epicurus, 1, m.  
equal, aequalis, e; aequus,  
a, um; par, paris (p. 53).

## EXCEPT.

equip, to, instruo, xi, etum  
1; orno, avi, ātum, 1; armo,  
avi, ātum, 1.  
equites, equites, a, um, m.  
equity, aequitas, tis, f.,  
aequum, 1, n.  
erect, erectus, a, um; sub-  
limis, e.  
erect, to, erigo, texti, rec-  
tum, 1.  
Eretria, Eretria, ae, f.  
escape, exitus, tis, m.  
escapes me, praeterit (im-  
pers.) with acc. (It escapes me,  
me fugit, me fallit).  
escape, to, refugio, fugi,  
fugitum, 1.  
especially, praesertim,  
adv.; praecipue, ad.; with  
superl., unus, a, um (Ex. 14).  
establish, to, instituo  
(statio), ui, ātum, 1; confir-  
mo, avi, ātum; loco, avi,  
ātum, 1.  
esteem, to, cōlo, ui,  
ultum, 1; to esteem highly, in  
magno honore habeo (Ex. 42)  
= to think, existimo, avi,  
ātum, 1.  
estimate, to, aestimo, avi,  
ātum, 1; habeo, ui, tūm, 2;  
dico, xi, etum, 1; existimo,  
avi, ātum, 1.  
Etruria, Etruria, ae, f.  
Eurōtas, Eurōtas, ae, m.  
Euphrates, Euphrates, is,  
m.  
even, etiam, conj.; vel,  
conj.  
evening, vesper, oris and 1,  
m.  
ever, unquam, ad., for ever,  
in aeternum; semper (aliquae),  
ad.  
every, omnis, e; quaque,  
quaque, quodque and quidque.  
everybody, omnis, e; unus-  
quisque.  
everything, omnia, tum,  
n. pl.  
evident, manifestus, a, um;  
clarus, a, um.  
evident, to be, appareo,  
ui, 2; in aperto esse (p. 114).  
evil (subs.), malum, 1, n.;  
(adj.) malus, a, um.  
exactly, often ipse in agree-  
ment with noun.  
exceed, to, excedo, cessi,  
cessum, 1; supero, avi, ātum, 1.  
excellence, praestantia, ae,  
f.; virtus, tis, f.  
excellent, excellentis, tis.  
except, praeter, prep. (gav.  
acc.).  
except, to, excepto, ej, i,  
eptum.

EXCEPTION.

exception, without, ad  
 ex. sum.  
 exchange, to, commūto,  
 avi, ātum, 1; inter se dāre  
 (Ex. 58).  
 excite, to, excitō, avi,  
 ātum, 1; mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2.  
 exclude, to, excludō, si,  
 sum, 3.  
 executioner, carnifex, icis,  
 m.  
 exempt, immūnis, e.  
 exempt, to, eximō, emi,  
 emptum, 3; absolvo, vi,  
 ātum, 3.  
 exercise, to, exerceo, ui,  
 ātum, 2.  
 exhort, to, hortor, ātus  
 sum, 1; cohortor (esp. to exhort  
 troops), ātus sum, 1.  
 exile, exilium, i, n.  
 exist, to, sum, ful, esse;  
 existo, stiti, stitum, 3.  
 expedient, ūtilis; quod  
 expedit.  
 expedient, it is, expedit,  
 ivit (impers.), 4.  
 expedition, expeditio, ōnis,  
 f.  
 expense, sumptus, ūs, m.  
 explanation, explicatio,  
 ōnis, f.; satisfactio, ōnis, f.  
 exploits, res gestae, rerum  
 gestarum, f.  
 expose, to, expōno, pōsi,  
 pōsitum, 3; pātefacio, feci, fac-  
 tum, 3; apērio, ui, ertum, 4.  
 express, to, dēciāro, āvi,  
 ātum, 1; loquor, cūtus sum, 3.  
 extend, to, extendō, di,  
 tum, 3; porrigo, rexi, rectum,  
 3; excedo, cessi, cessum, 3.  
 extraordinary, extrin-  
 ūs, a, um.  
 extravagance, luxūria,  
 ae, f.  
 eye, ōculus, i, m.

F

Fabius, Fabius, i, m.  
 face, facies, ōi, f.; valius,  
 ōs, m. (Ex. 37).  
 face, to, ōbeo, ii, itum, 4.  
 fact, factum, i, n.  
 fail, to, dēsum, ful, esse.  
 fair, (of weather), sērenus, a,  
 um; = just, justus, a, um.  
 faithful, fidēlis, e.  
 fall, to, cado, cecidi, cā-  
 sum, 3.  
 fall down, to, = to col-  
 lapse, ruo, rui, rūtum aui-  
 rūtum, 3; decido, cidi, 3.  
 fall foremost, procumbō,  
 cūbul, cūbulum, 3.

FIFTY.

fall from, to, decido, cidi, 3  
 (followed by de).  
 false, falsus, a, um.  
 falsehood, mendācium, i,  
 n.; vāritas, ātis, f.  
 fame, fama, ae, f.  
 familiar, familiāris, e; to  
 make—with, edūco, ui, etum,  
 2; assuefacio, feci, factum, 3.  
 family, familiā, ae, f.;  
 = tribe, gēnus, ōris, n.  
 famine, fames, is, f.  
 famous, nobilis, e.  
 far, longe (longius, longis-  
 sime), adv. (often followed by  
 genitive); as far as, usque,  
 adv.  
 fate, fatum, i, n.  
 father, pater, tris, m.; (of a  
 family) paterfamilias, patris-  
 familias, m.  
 fatherland, patria, ae, f.  
 fatigue, dōlūragatio, ōnis, f.  
 fault, culpa, ae, f.; peccā-  
 tum, i, n.; vitium, i, n.  
 favour, fāvor, ōris, m.; grā-  
 tia, ae, f.  
 favour, to, fāveo, fāvi, fau-  
 tum, 2 (with dat.).  
 favourable, fēlix, icis;  
 faustus, a, um. Of a wind,  
 faustus, a, um.  
 fear, timor, ōris, m.; mē-  
 tus, ūs, m.; pavor, ōris, m.;  
 terror, ōris, m.; (risk) pēricū-  
 lum, i, n.  
 fear, to, timeo, ui, 2; vē-  
 reor, icus sum, 2; mēto, ui, 3.  
 features, vultus, ūs, m.  
 feeble, imbecilis, e (also  
 imbecillus, a, um); infirmus,  
 a, um; tēnuis, e.  
 feed, to, (trans.) pascō, pāvi,  
 pastum, 3.  
 feed on, to, pascor, pastus  
 sum, 3; vescor, 3 (govern-  
 abl.).  
 feel, to, sentio, si, sum, 4.  
 feeling, sensus, ūs, m.  
 fellow, socius, i, m.  
 fellow-citizen, civis, is, e.  
 female (subs.), tēnina, ae, f.  
 female (adj.), muliebris, e.  
 fetter, vinculum, i, n.  
 few, paucus, a, um; (usually  
 in plural), pauci, ae, 3.  
 fidelity, fides, ōi, f.; fido-  
 clā, ae, f.  
 field, ager, aeris, m.  
 fierce, immēris, e (metr.);  
 temerarius, a, um.  
 fiercely, scilicet, adv.  
 fierceness, iracūdia, ae, f.;  
 ferocitas, ātis, f.  
 fiery, (of fire) igneus, a, um.  
 fifth, quintus, a, um.  
 fifty, quinquaginta, indecl.

FOOD.

fifty-five, quinquaginta  
 quinque.  
 fight, dimicatio, ōnis, f.  
 fight, to, pugno, āvi  
 ātum, 1.  
 Figulus, Figulus, i, m.  
 filial love, pietas, ātis, f.  
 find, to, invēto, vēni, ven-  
 tum, 4; repērio, i, ertum, 3.  
 finish, to, finio, ivi, itum, 4;  
 perfectio, feci, factum, 3.  
 fire, ignis, is, m.; = a con-  
 flagration, incendium, i, n  
 (p. 62).  
 firm, firmus, a, um; stā-  
 bilis, e.  
 firmness, stābilitas, ātis,  
 f.; constantia, ae, f.  
 first, primus, a, um; prin-  
 cepts, ipis (primus, capio).  
 fish, piscis, is, m.  
 five, quinque, indecl.  
 fix, to, figo, xi, xum, 3;  
 (= appoint) constituo, ui  
 ātum, 3.  
 flamen, flāmen, is, m.  
 flank, latus, ōris, n.  
 flattering, blandus, a, um.  
 flattery, adlātio, ōnis, f.  
 assentatio, ōnis, f.  
 flaxen, flāvus, a, um.  
 flav, to, dēgibō, psi, 3.  
 flesh, caro, carnis, f.  
 fight, figa, ae, f.  
 fit about, to, vōlto, āvi  
 ātum, 1.  
 float, to, fluo, ui, ātum, 1.  
 flourish, to, floreo, ui, 2.  
 flow, to, fluo, ui, ātum, 3;  
 labor, lapsus sum, 3.  
 flow beneath, to, subter-  
 labor, lapsus sum, 3 dep.  
 flow by, to, praeterfluo,  
 uxi, uxum, 3.  
 flow round, to, circum-  
 fluo, xi, xum, 3.  
 flower, flos, flōris, m.  
 fly, to, (for refuge), con-  
 fugio, ūgi, itum, 3; figio (trans-  
 itive) ūgi, itum, 3.  
 foam, to, spūmo, āvi,  
 ātum, 1.  
 foe, hostis, is, e.; inimicus,  
 i, m. (p. 21).  
 follow, to, aequor, secūsus  
 sum, 3; asequor, secutus sum  
 3.  
 follow up, to, subsequor  
 secutus sum, 3.  
 following, sequens, ūs  
 posterus, a, um (Ex. 33).  
 foily, stultitia, ae, f.; dō-  
 mentia, ae, f.  
 fond of, amans, ūs; stidi-  
 ōsus, a, um.  
 fondness, stīlūm, i, n.  
 food, victus, ūs, m.

## FOOT.

foot, pes, pēdis, m.  
 footpath, trāmis, f. ; sē-  
 mita, ac, f. (p. 69).  
 for, nam, namque, conj.;  
 enim, conj.; pro, prep. with *abl.*  
 forbid, to, vāto, ul, itum,  
 1; interdicto, xl, etum, 3 (with  
*dat.* and *abl.*).  
 force, vis, vim, vi (not used  
 in *gen. sing.*); f. plur. vires,  
 lum.  
 forces, cōplae, ārum, f.  
 force, to, cingo, cōcēgi, cō-  
 actum, 3; vim adhibeo, 2.  
 force, to be in, vāleo, ul,  
 itum, 2.  
 forced (of a march), magnus,  
 a, um.  
 foreign, ālienū, a, um;  
 peregrinus, a, um.  
 foreigner, externus, a, um.  
 foremost, princeps, ipis,  
 primus, a, um.  
 foresee, to, praevideo, vidi,  
 visum, 2; prospicio, exi, etum,  
 1; prōbeo, vidi, visum, 2.  
 foreseeing, prōvidus, a, um.  
 foresight, prādentia, ac, f.  
 forest, silva, ac, f.; saltus,  
 ās, m. (p. 120).  
 forget, to, obliviscor, litus  
 sum, 3.  
 forgetful, immēmōr, ōris;  
 oblitus, a, um.  
 forgetful, oblitus, a, um,  
 (obliviscor), immēmōr, ōris.  
 form, forma, ac, f.; figurā,  
 ac, f.; spēcies, ōis, f. (p. 63).  
 form, to, fingō, linxi, actum,  
 3. *To form a judgment*, iudico,  
 āvi, ātum, 1; — *a plan*, consi-  
 lum cāpio.  
 former, pristinus, a, um.  
 former (of time), ōlim, adv.  
 formerly, quondam, adv.;  
 ōlim, adv.  
 formidable, formidōlōsus,  
 a, um.  
 foreoath, sāmē, adv.  
 fort, castrum, l, n.; arx,  
 cis, f.; castellum, l, n.  
 forth from, ē, ex, prep.  
 (gov. *abl.*).  
 fortification, mūnitio,  
 ōnis, f.; mūnimentum, l, n.  
 (p. 97).  
 fortify, to, commūno (mū-  
 nio), āvi, ātum, 4.  
 fortitude, fortitudo, ōnis, f.  
 fortress, castellum, l, n.  
 fortune, fortuna, ac, f.  
 fortune, good, felicitas,  
 ātis, f.  
 forty, quadrāginta, indecl.  
 forum, forum, l, n.  
 found, to, condo, didi,  
 ātum, 3.

## GAPE.

foundation, fundāmentum,  
 l, n. *From the foundation of*  
*the city*, ab urbe condita.  
 four, quātor (quat.); quāt-  
 erni (distributive).  
 fourth, quartus, a, um.  
 France, Gallia, ac, f.;  
 fraud, frans, dis, f.; dōlus,  
 l, n.; fallācia, ac, f. (p. 116).  
 free, liber, a, um; sōlitus,  
 a, um; *he was free to, etc.*, el-  
 licuit, foll. by *infin.*  
 free, to, liberō, āvi, ātum,  
 1 (with *acc.* and *abl.*, also with  
*prep.* a or ab, sometimes with  
*ex*); māmūlitto, nīsi, mīssum,  
 3 (to free a slave); solvo, vi,  
 ātum, 3; vindico, āvi, ātum, 1  
 (in libertatem).  
 free from, to be, vāco, āvi,  
 ātum, 1 (with *abl.*).  
 free-born, ingenuus, a, um.  
 freedom, libertas, ātis, f.;  
 (of the city), civitas, ātis, f.  
 freely, libere, adv.; solāte,  
 adv.  
 frequently, saepe, adv.;  
 crebriō, adv.; frequenter, adv.  
 friend, āmicus, l, m.; fām-  
 iliāris, e.  
 friendly, āmicus, a, um. *In*  
*a — manner*, āmice, āmanter.  
 friendship, āmicitia, ac, f.;  
 benevolentia, ac, f.  
 frightful, horrendus, a, um,  
 horribilis, e.  
 fro (to and fro), huc, illuc,  
 adv.  
 from, a, ab, abs, prep. (gov.  
*abl.*); e, ex (out of), prep.  
 (gov. *abl.*).  
 frugality, parsimōnia, ac,  
 f.; frugālitās, ātis, f.  
 fugitive, fugiens, tis.  
 full, plenus, a, um; (of the  
*Senate*), frēquens, tis.  
 Fulvius Flaccus, Fulvius,  
 l, Flaccus, l, m.  
 function, officium, l, n.;  
 mūnus, ōris, n.  
 further, ultra, adv.  
 future, futūrus, a, um;  
 ventūrus, a, um.  
 future, in, — *hereafter*,  
 posthac.

## G

Gabinus, Gābinus, l, m.  
 Gades (Cádiz), Gādes, lum, f.  
 gain, lucrum, l, n.; emolū-  
 mentum, l, n.; fructus, ōis, m.  
 gain, to, ādipiscor, ādēptus,  
 3.  
 Gallie, Galliens, a, um.  
 gamester, ālector, ōris, m.  
 gape, to, dehiſco, 3.

## GO THROUGH.

garb, vestis, ls, f.; vesti-  
 mentum, l, n.  
 garden, hortus, l, m.  
 garrison, praesidium, l, n.  
 gate, porta, ac, f.; janua,  
 ac, f.; fores, lum, f.  
 gather, to, cōgēro, gessi,  
 gestum, 3; accināto, āvi, ātum,  
 1; colligo, lēgi, lectum, 3; carpi  
 (decero), psi, ptum, 3 (to  
 pluck).  
 gather together, to, con-  
 jungo, xl, etum, 3; cōgrēgo,  
 āvi, ātum, 1.  
 Gaul (the country), Gallia,  
 ac, f.  
 Gaul, a native of, Gallus,  
 l, n.  
 Gellius, Gellus, l, m.  
 gem, gemma, ac, f.  
 general, dux, ātis, c.  
 generally, plērumque, adv.  
 generalship, impērium, l,  
 n. (command); schenila rei mī-  
 litaris (skill in war). *Under*  
*his generalship, etc.*, eo dūce.  
 gentle, mollis, e.  
 Gervovia, Gervovia, ac, f.  
 German, a, Germānus, l, m.  
 get, to, acquiro, īvi, īs-  
 tum, 3; cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3;  
 assequor, citius sum, 3.  
 gift, donum, l, n.; mīnus,  
 ōris, n.  
 give, to, cingo, nxi, nctum, 3;  
 accingo, nxi, nctum, 3. (Ex. 14.)  
 give, to, do, dēdi, dātum,  
 1; dono, āvi, ātum, 1; tribuo,  
 ni, ātum, 3 (of what is due);  
 cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3 (to yield  
 up).  
 give up, to, concedo, cessi,  
 cessum, 3.  
 glad, latus, a, um.  
 gladly, luetē, adv.; ostēder  
 a/b, latus, acc St. L. G. § 141.  
 gloom, aegritudo, ōnis, f.;  
 tristitia, ac, f.  
 glory, gloria, ac, f.  
 go, to, vādo, āi, sum, 3; eo,  
 īvi, itum, 4; prōfiscor, sectus  
 sum, 3.  
 go astray, to, abarro, āvi,  
 ātum, 1.  
 go away, to, āleo, āi, itum,  
 4; discedo, cessi, cessum, 3.  
 go down, to, descendō, āi,  
 sum, 3. (Of the sun), ruo, rui,  
 rūtum, 3.  
 go from, to, decēdo, cessi,  
 cessum, 3.  
 go further, to, prōcēdo,  
 cessi, cessum, 3.  
 go over, to, ōbeo, īi, itum,  
 4 (p. 16).  
 go through, to, peruco,  
 āvi, ātum, 1.

GOAT.

goat, capra, prf. m.; hircus, l. m.; capella, ae, f. (*she-goat*).  
 God, Deus, l. m. and f.;  
 plur. Di rather than Iel.  
 gold, aurum, l. n.  
 Gongylus, Gongylus, l. m.  
 good, bonus, a, um; comp. melior; sup. optimus.  
 good breeding, humanitas, atis, f.  
 good fortune, felicitas, atis, f.  
 goodness, bonitas, atis, f.  
 good-will, studium, l. n.  
 Graiocelli, Graiocelli, orum, m.  
 grand, grandis, e; magnus, a, um. To speak grandly, magnam loqui (*poet.*).  
 grapes, uva, ae, f.; racemus, l. m. (a bunch).  
 grappler, corvus, l. m. (See p. 70).  
 gratify, to, delecto, avi, atum, 1; placeo, ul, itum, 2.  
 gratifying, gratus, a, um.  
 great, ingens, tis.  
 greater number (or part), the, pierumque, adu. (with gen.).  
 greatest, summus, a, um.  
 greatly, multum, adu.; magnopere, adu.; valde, adu.; to achieve greatly, magnus in honore habeo.  
 greatness, magnitudo, inis, f.; amplitudo, inis, f.  
 Greece, Graecia, ae, f.  
 greedy, avarus, a, um; avidus, a, um.  
 Greek, Graecus, a, um.  
 grief, dolor, oris, m.  
 grieve, to, dolere, ul, itum, 2.  
 groan, to, gemo, ul, itum, 3.  
 groan, gemitus, is, m.  
 ground, solum, l. n.; terra, ae, f.  
 guard, to, defendo, di, sum, 3; tueor, itus sum, 2; custodio, ivi, itum, 4.  
 guardian, custos, oris, m.  
 guide, ductor, oris, m.; dux, ducis, c.  
 guide, to, ducio, xi, atum, 3.  
 guilt, culpa, ae, f.; scelus, oris, n.  
 guiltless, innocens, tis; innocens, tis; innoxius, a, um.  
 guilty, nocens, tis; noxius, a, um.

H

Hail, grando, inis, f.  
 hair, crinis, is, m.; capillus, m.; coma, ae, f. (p. 11).  
 half, dimidium, l. n.  
 Halicarnassus, Halicar-

HELP.

nassus, l. f.; of —, Halicar-nassensis, e.  
 hand, manus, is, f. On the other hand, contra, adu.; on the right (or left), dextra (laeva) manu.  
 hand, to, trado, idi, itum, 3; in manus do.  
 handsome, formosus, a, um; pulcher, ra, rum.  
 Hannibal, Hannibal, atis, m.  
 happen, to, contingo, tigi, 3.  
 happy, beatus, a, um; felix, icis (p. 21).  
 harangue, oratio, oris, f.; concio, onis, f.  
 harbour, portus, is, m. (dat. and abl. plu., thus and abus).  
 hard, durus, a, um.  
 harp, lyra, ae, f.; testudo, inis, f.  
 harshly, asperè, adu.; duriter, adu.; acerbè, adu.  
 hasten, to, festino, avi, atum, 1; propèro, avi, atum, 2; contendo, di, tum, 3; accellerò, avi, atum, 1.  
 hate, to, odi (defective); abomitor, atus, 1; detestor, atus, 1.  
 hated, invidus, a, um.  
 hateful, odiosus, a, um; detestabilis, e.  
 hatred, odium, l. n.; detestatio, oris, f.  
 have, to, habeo, ul, itum, 2; teneo, ul, tum, 2; often sum, with dat. of person.  
 he, is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud, pron.  
 head, caput, its, m.; vertex, icis, m. (p. 46).  
 heal, to, mèdeor, 2; sano, avi, atum, 1 (p. 45).  
 health, salus, is, f.; valetudo, inis, f.; sanitas, atis, f.  
 health, to be in good, valeo, ul, tum, 2.  
 healthy, sanus, a, um; salubris, e.  
 hear, to, audio, ivi, itum, 4; accipio, cepi, ceptum, 1.  
 heart, cor, dis, n.; pectus, oris, n.  
 heat, calor, oris, m.; aestus, is, m.; ardor, oris, m.  
 heaven, coelum, l. m.  
 heavy, gravis, e.  
 Helen, Helena, ae, f.  
 help, auxilium, l. n.; opes (gen.); acc. opem; abl. ope, f.  
 help, to, adjuvo, avi, atum, 1 (with acc.); auxilior, atus, 1 (dat.); subvenio veni, ventum, 4 (with dat.).

HOUSE.

Helvetian, Helveticus, a, um; Helveticus, a, um.  
 Helvetii, Helvetii, orum, n.  
 Hephæstion, Hephæstion, oris, m.  
 Hercules, Hercules, is, m.  
 Hercynian, Hercynius, a, um.  
 Herdonea, Herdonea, ae, f.  
 here, hic, adu.  
 hero, heros, oris, m.; (often) vir, viri, m.  
 hesitate, to, dubito, avi, atum, 1; with inf. (when it signifies to doubt, it is followed by num and sulg.), 1; euncto, atus, 1.  
 hesitation, dubitatio, oris, f.; conatatio, oris, f.  
 hide, to, cælo, avi, atum, 1; aldo, didi, ditum, 3; conto, didi, ditum, 3; abscondo, di and didi, ditum, 1.  
 hideous, deformis, e; horridus, a, um.  
 high, altus, a, um; at a higher rate, plaris (Ex. 21).  
 highest=eminent, summus, a, um; = greatest, maximus, a, um, m.  
 highly, to esteem highly, magno in honore habeo.  
 high-souled, magnanimus, a, um.  
 bill, collis, is, m.  
 himself, herself, etc., ipse, a, um (agreeing with substantivum), sui.  
 hinder (adj.), posterior, us.  
 hinder, to, impedio, ivi, itum, 4; obsto, isti, itum, 1; prohibeo, ul, tum, 2 (Ex. 28).  
 his-own, suus, a, um.  
 Histiaeus, Histiaeus, l. m.  
 history, historia, ae, f.; annales, tum, m.  
 hither, huc, adu.  
 Ho, eho! interj.  
 hold, to, teneo, ul, tum, 2; habeo, ul, tum, 2.  
 holy, sanctus, a, um; sacer, cra, crum (p. 9).  
 home, domus, is, f.; at home, domi; from home, domo.  
 Homer, Homerus, l. m.  
 honour, honor, oris, m.; = good faith, fides, ei, f.; = renown, amplitudo, inis, f.; = virtue, honestas, atis, f.  
 honourable, decorus, a, um; amplius, e, um.  
 hope, spes, ei, f.  
 hope, to, spero, avi, atum, 1.  
 horn, cornu, is; plur. cornua, n.  
 horse, equus, l. m.; = cavalry, equites, um, m.

## HORSEBACK.

horseback, *on, ex æquo*.  
 horsemanship, *equitandi*,  
*do, dum, ger. of equito, i.*  
 hospitality, *hospitium, i.*  
*n.: hospitālitās, ātis, f.*  
 hostage, *obseas, idis, m. and*  
*f.*  
 hostile, *inimicus, a, um;*  
*iniquus, a, um (p. 18).*  
 Hostilius, *Hostilius, i, m.*  
 hour, *hōra, æ, f.*  
 house, *ædes, tum, f.; dō-*  
*mus, ūs, f.*  
 how, *quemadmodum, conj.*  
 however, *tāmen, conj.*  
 howl, *to, ullo, āvi, ātum, i.*  
 human, *hūmānus, a, um.*  
 human-being, *hōmo, inis,*  
*a.*  
 humanity, *hūmānitās, ātis,*  
*f.*  
 hundred, *centum (indecl.).*  
 Hungary, *Pannōnia, æ, f.*  
 hunger, *fāmes, is, f.*  
 hurl, *to, iācio, iēcī, iectum,*  
*i; proſicō, iēcī, iectum, i.*  
 hurry, *to, hurri-about,*  
*to, trēpido, āvi, ātum, i.*  
 husband, *māritus, i, m.;*  
*vir, i, m. (see p. 17); conjux,*  
*agis, m. also uſe, f.*  
 Hydaspes, *Hydaspes, is, m.*  
 Hytaspes, *Hytaspes, is, m.*

## I

*i, ego, me.*  
 iambic verse, *iambus, i.*  
 ior, *frigidus, a, um; gēli-*  
*dus, a, um.*  
 if, *si.*  
 ignorant, *ignārus, a, um;*  
*inſciens, tis.*  
 ignorant of, *to be.*  
 = *ignore, ignōvo, āvi, ātum, i*  
*(with acc.).*  
 ill, *adſ., = bad, mālus, a,*  
*um; = sick, aeger, gra, grum.*  
 illustrious, *clārus (præ-*  
*clarus), a, um.*  
 image, *imāgo, inis, f.;*  
*simulācrum, i, a.; effigies, ei,*  
*f. (p. 19).*  
 immense, *immensus, a, um.*  
 immortal, *immortālis, e.*  
 impede, *to, impedio, ivi,*  
*itum, 4; prohibeo, in, itum, 2;*  
*impendo, di, 2.*  
 impiet, *impietas, ātis, f.*  
 impious, *impius, a, um.*  
 implement, *instrumentum,*  
*i, n.*  
 importance, *of, grāvis, e;*  
*grāvior, ūs.*

## INJURE

important, *grāvis, e.*  
 importune, *to, laceſco, ivi,*  
*itum, 4.*  
 impose on, *to, impōno,*  
*pōni, pōitum, i; (with dat. and*  
*acc., or dat. only).*  
 impression, *ōpīno, ōnis, f.*  
 impulse, *impulſus, ūs, m.*  
 in, *in prep.: with abl. sig-*  
*nifies in only; with acc. iñto,*  
*against, etc.*  
 in the mean time, *inſer-*  
*im, adu.*  
 inasmuch, *quōliam, conj.;*  
*quum, conj.*  
 incentive, *irritāmentum,*  
*i, n.*  
 incessantly, *aſſiduū, adu;*  
*perpetuo, adu.*  
 incorruptibility, *integ-*  
*ritas, ātis, f.; innocētia, æ, f.*  
 incredible, *incrēdibilis, e.*  
 indeed, *quidem, adu. (en-*  
*clit.).*  
 India, *India, æ, f.*  
 indignation, *indignātia,*  
*ōnis, f.*  
 indolence, *ēdōcia, æ, f.;*  
*dēſidia, æ, f.; inertia, æ, f.*  
 indolent, *sōcors, dis; seg-*  
*nīs, e; ignāvus, a, um (p. 45).*  
 indulgently, *bēnigū, adu;*  
*blandē, adu.*  
 Indus, *Indus, i, m.*  
 industry, *diligētia, æ, f.*  
 infant, *infans, tis, e.*  
 infatry, *pēditātus, ūs, m.;*  
*pēditēs, ūm, m.*  
 infatuated, *dēmens, tis.*  
 infer, *to, colligo, iēgi, leo-*  
*tum, i; conſulō, si, sum, i.*  
 inferior, *inferior, ōris.*  
 infinite, *inſinitus, a, um.*  
 inflame, *to, inſammo, āvi,*  
*ātum, i; exſeio, āvi, ātum;*  
*accendo, si, sum, i.*  
 inflict, *to, (often) afflicto,*  
*ēci, ectum, i; to inflict punish-*  
*ment, poenas ſūmere.*  
 influence, *auctōritas, ātis,*  
*f. (p. 17).*  
 induence, *to, suadeo, si,*  
*sum, 2; mōveo, mōvi, mōtum,*  
*2.*  
 inform, *to, ſiquem certi-*  
*ōrem facio, feci, factum, i.*  
 ingennity, *calliditas, ātis,*  
*f.; ſollertia, æ, f.*  
 inhabitant, *incolā, æ, e.*  
 inhabit, *to, incolō, āvi,*  
*ultum, i; hābitō, āvi, ātum, i.*  
 inhabited, *frēquens, tis*  
*(Ex. 47).*  
 inhuman, *crūdēlis, e; im-*  
*mānis, e; inſitūānus, a, um.*  
 injure, *to, inſedo, si, sum,*  
*i; nuſco, ul, 2.*

## INVITE

injurious, *inſūriōſus, a,*  
*um; perniciōſus, a, um.*  
 injury, *inſūria, æ, f.; noxa,*  
*æ, f.*  
 innocence, *innocētia, æ,*  
*f.; integritas, ātis, f.*  
 innocent, *innocēns, tis; in-*  
*nocens, a, um.*  
 innumerable, *inſimētrā-*  
*bilis, e.*  
 in order that, *ut conj*  
*with ſubj.*  
 in public, *publice, adu.*  
 inquire, *to, quaero, qua-*  
*ſivi, ſitum, i; percontor, qua-*  
*ſum, i.*  
 insignificant, *lēvis, e;*  
*parvus, a, um.*  
 insolence, *inſolētia, æ, f.*  
 insolently, *inſolētar, adu.*  
 instigation, *inſtigatio, ōnis,*  
*f.; at his friend's instigation,*  
*hortante amico.*  
 instruct, *to, ſcifico, āvi,*  
*ātum, i.*  
 intelligent, *ſcītus, a, um;*  
*perſpicax, acta.*  
 intemperance, *intempe-*  
*rantia, æ, f.*  
 intend, *to, cōgiſco, āvi,*  
*ātum, i; ſtātuo, ui, ātum, i*  
*(often expressed by fut. partic-*  
*iple act.).*  
 intense, *strēnuus, a, um;*  
*vēhēmēns, tis.*  
 intention, *propōſitum, i, n.*  
 interest, = *advantage, com-*  
*mōdum, i, n.; = payment for*  
*usufruct, ſēnus, ōris, n.*  
 interior, *intērior, ūs.*  
 interpreter, *interpēs, ōtis,*  
*m. and f.*  
 intervene, *to, intercedo,*  
*ceſſi, ceſsum, i; intervēnio,*  
*vēni, ventum, 4.*  
 interview, *collōquium, i, n.*  
 intestine, *intēſtinus, a,*  
*um.*  
 into, *in prep. (with acc.).*  
 intoxicated, *ēbrius, a, um.*  
 introduces, *to, adhibeo, ui,*  
*itum, 2.*  
 invade, *to, invādō, si, um,*  
*i; irumpo, iſi, uptum, i (with*  
*in and acc.); incurro, ſi, sum,*  
*i (with in and acc.).*  
 in various ways, *varie,*  
*adu.*  
 invest, *to, = to besiege, ob-*  
*ſideo, ſedi, ceſsum, 2; = to put*  
*out money, collocō, āvi, ātum,*  
*i; — with authority, pōſitem*  
*do, dēdi, dātum, i.*  
 investigate, *to, explōro,*  
*āvi, ātum, i.*  
 invite, *to, invitō, āvi,*  
*ātum, i; vōco, āvi, ātum, i*

Iphi  
n.  
Irel  
iron  
iron  
issu  
issu  
issu  
edico  
forth,  
dior, cas  
Italy  
Itha  
Itha

Jew.  
jocos  
ais, ūs  
join.  
to join  
tēra mil  
journ  
via, æ, f.  
journ  
tms sum  
Joy, a  
æ, f.  
joyfu  
judge  
judge  
exist  
judg  
Jugu  
June  
Juno  
Jupit  
just  
justic  
justly  
adu.  
Juver  
f.

Kaler  
keep.  
I.  
keep  
item, 2.  
keep  
kill, i  
intermo  
terficio, i  
kind  
kind f  
æ, f.  
kindn  
f.; elem  
ness, bēnē



## IPHICRATES.

**Iphecrates**, *Iphecrates*, *is*, *n*.  
**Ireland**, *Insularia*, *ae*, *f*.  
**iron**, *ferum*, *i*, *n*.  
**iron** (of iron, or made of iron), *ferreus*, *a*, *um*.  
**Island**, *Insula*, *ae*, *f*.  
**issue**, *exitus*, *us*, *m*; *eventus*, *us*, *m*; *finis*, *is*, *m*.  
**issue**, *to* (a command), *edico*, *xi*, *ctum*, *3*; *= to go forth*, *exeo*, *ii*, *itum*, *4*; *egredior*, *essus*, *3*.  
**Italy**, *Italia*, *ae*, *f*.  
**Ithaca**, *Ithaca*, *ae*, *f*.  
**Ithacan**, *Ithacus*, *a*, *um*.

## J

**Jew**, *Judaus*, *i*, *m*.  
**jocosely**, *jocose*, *adv*; *jocundus*, *is* (see *St. G. 34*).  
**Join**, *to*, *jungo*, *nxi*, *nectum*, *3*; *to join battle*, *proellum* *con* *mittere* *missum*, *3*.  
**Journey**, *iter*, *Itineris*, *n*; *via*, *ae*, *f*.  
**Journey**, *to*, *proficiscor*, *fecissum*, *3*.  
**Joy**, *gaudium*, *i*, *n*; *laetitia*, *ae*, *f*.  
**joyfully**, *libens*, *is*.  
**Judge**, *Judex*, *icis*, *m*.  
**Judge**, *to*, *judico*, *avi*, *atum*, *1*; *existimo*, *avi*, *atum*, *1*.  
**Judgment**, *judicium*, *i*, *n*.  
**Jugurtha**, *Jugurtha*, *ae*, *m*.  
**June**, *Junius*, *i*, *m*.  
**Juno**, *Juno*, *onis*, *f*.  
**Jupiter**, *Jupiter*, *Jovis*, *m*.  
**just**, *aquus*, *a*, *um*.  
**justice**, *Justitia*, *ae*, *f*.  
**justly**, *juste*, *adv*; *merito*, *adv*.  
**Juventas**, *Juventas*, *atis*, *f*.

## K

**Kalends**, *Kalendae*, *arum*, *f*.  
**keep**, *to*, *servo*, *avi*, *atum*, *1*.  
**keep off**, *to*, *arceo*, *ui*, *atum*, *2*.  
**keen**, *acer*, *cris*, *ere*.  
**kill**, *to*, *neco*, *avi*, *atum*, *1*; *interimo*, *emi*, *enptum*, *3*; *interficio*, *fecit*, *rectum*, *3* (p. 3).  
**kind**, *benignus*, *a*, *um*.  
**kind** (*sub*), *genus*, *eris*, *n*.  
**kind feeling**, *benevolentia*, *ae*, *f*.  
**kindness**, *benignitas*, *atis*, *f*; *elementia*, *ae*, *f*; *a kindness*, *beneficentia*, *i*, *n*.

## LAUGHTER.

**king**, *rex*, *regis*, *m*.  
**kingdom**, *regnum*, *i*, *n*.  
**knee**, *genu*, *us*; *plur*, *genua*, *um*, *n*.  
**knight**, *equus*, *itis*, *m*.  
**know**, *to*, *= to be aware of*, *scio*, *ivi*, *itum*, *4*; *= to become acquainted with*, *cognosco*, *ovi*, *itum*, *3*; *= to understand*, *intelligo*, *ext*, *ectum*, *3*.  
**know**, *not to*, *nescio*, *ivi*, *itum*, *4*.  
**known**, *notus*, *a*, *um*.

## L

**Labienus**, *Labienus*, *i*, *m*.  
**labour**, *to*, *laboro*, *avi*, *atum*, *1*; *utor*, *utans* and *nixus* *sum*, *3*.  
**laborious**, *operosus*, *a*, *um*.  
**Lacedaemon**, *Lacedaemon*, *onis*, *f*; *Sparta*, *ae*, *f*.  
**Lacedaemonians**, *Lacedaemonii*, *orum*, *m*.  
**Lade**, *to*, *onero*, *avi*, *atum*, *1*.  
**Laden**, *onustus*, *a*, *um*.  
**Laelius**, *Laelius*, *i*, *m*.  
**Laenas**, *Laenas*, *atis*, *m*.  
**Laevinus**, *Laevinus*, *i*, *m*.  
**Lagus**, *Lagus*, *i*, *m*.  
**lake**, *lacus*, *us*, *m*.  
**lamentation**, *lamentum*, *i*, *n* (usually *plur*); *ploratus*, *us*, *m*.  
**lamentation**, *to make*, *lamentor*, *atus* *sum*, *1*.  
**Lamia**, *Lamia*, *ae*, *m*.  
**Lampsacus**, *Lampsacens*, *i*, *f*. (*of Lampsacus*, *Lampsacenus*, *a*, *um*).  
**land**, *ager*, *grt*, *m*; *patria*, *ae*, *f*. (*native land*); *terra*, *ae*, *f*. (*a country*).  
**land**, *to*, (*intrans*), *egredior*, *gressus* *sum*, *3* (with *abl*); (*trans*), *expono*, *pōsul*, *pōstum*, *3*.  
**large**, *magnus*, *a*, *um*; *largus*, *a*, *um*; *grandis*, *e*.  
**Lartius**, *Lartius*, *i*, *m*.  
**last**, *ultimus*, *a*, *um*; *= immediately preceding*, *proximus*, *a*, *um*.  
**lastly**, *denique*, *adv*; *postremo*, *adv*; *ad extremum* (*used adverbially*).  
**late**, *serus*, *a*, *um*; *= recent*, *recens*, *is*.  
**Latin**, *Latina*, *a*, *um*.  
**latter**, *posterior*, *us*; *the former*—*the latter*, *ille*—*hic*.  
**laugh**, *to*, *ridere*, *si*, *sum*, *2*; *to laugh at*, *irideo*, *2*; *derideo*, *2*.  
**laughter**, *risus*, *us*, *m*; *= derision*, *irrisus*, *us*, *m*.

## LIBERALITY.

**law**, *lex*, *legis*, *f*; *ius*, *jura*, *n* (p. 42).  
**lawful**, *justus*, *a*, *um*; *legitimus*, *a*, *um*. *It is lawful*, *licet*, *ult*, *2* (with *dat* of person and *infin*).  
**lay**, *to*, *= to place*, *pōno*, *pōsul*, *pōstum*, *3*; *lōco*, *avi*, *atum*, *1*.  
**lay before**, *to*, *prōpono*, *pōsul*, *pōstum*, *3*.  
**lay aside**, *to*, *dēpono*, *pōsul*, *itum*, *3*; *sepono*, *pōsul*, *itum*, *3*; *= to strip off*, *exuo*, *ui*, *atum*, *3*.  
**lead**, *to*, *dūco*, *xi*, *ctum*, *3*.  
**lead forth** or *out*, *to*, *edūco*, *xi*, *ctum*, *3*.  
**lead over**, *to*, *transdūco*, *xi*, *ctum*, *3*.  
**lead round**, *to*, *circumdūco*, *xi*, *ctum*, *3*.  
**leader**, *dux*, *icis*, *c*; *ductor*, *oris*, *m*.  
**leap**, *to*, *sālio*, *ii* or *ui*, *sautum*, *4*.  
**leap down**, *to*, *dēsilio*, *si*, *lul*, or *ivi*, *sultum*, *4*.  
**learn**, *to*, *disco*, *didici*, *3*.  
**learned**, *doctus*, *a*, *um*.  
**leave**, or *leave behind*, *to*, *linquo*, *more* *freg*, *relinquo*, *liqui*, *lictum*, *3*.  
**left**, *= remaining*, *relinquo*, *a*, *um*; *of the hands*, *laevus*, *a*, *um*.  
**legion**, *lēgio*, *onis*, *f*.  
**leisure**, *otium*, *i*, *n*.  
**leisurely** (*adv*), *otiose*, *adv*; *lenic*, *adv*; *adv*, *lentus*, *a*, *um*.  
**Lemnos**, *Lemnos*, *i*, *f*.  
**length** (of time), *diuturnitas*, *atis*, *f*; *longinquitas*, *atis*, *f*.  
**length at**, *tandem*, *adv*; *dēnum*, *adv*.  
**lengthen**, *to*, *prōdūco*, *xi*, *ctum*, *3*; *extendo*, *di*, *tum*, *3*.  
**lenient**, *clementis*, *is*; *lenis*, *e*; *mitis*, *e*.  
**less** (*adv*), *minor*, *us*. *At a less price*, *minoris*.  
**less** (*adv*), *minus*, *adv*.  
**lesson**, *praeceptum*, *i*, *n*.  
**exemplum**, *i*, *m*; *dicamentum*, *i*, *n*.  
**let**, *to*, *permitto*, *misit*, *missum*, *3*; *sino*, *ivi*, *itum*, *3*; *concedo*, *cessi*, *cessum*, *3*.  
**let go**, *to*, *emitto*, *misit*, *missum*, *3*.  
**letter**, *littera*, *ae*, *f*. (*of alphabet*); *litterae*, *arum*, or *epistola*, *ae*, *f*. (*an epistle*).  
**levy**, *delectus*, *us*, *m*.  
**liberal**, *liberalis*, *e*.  
**liberality**, *liberalitas*, *atis*, *f*.

## LIBERTY.

liberty, libertas, *âlis, f.*  
 library, bibliotheca, *ae, f.*  
 licentiousness, libido, *inis, f.*  
 licivius, *ae, f.*  
 Licinius Calvus, Licinius, *i.*  
 lictor, lictor, *âris, m.*  
 lieutenant, legatus, *i, m.*  
 life, vita, *ae, f.*; aetas, *âris, f.*; ævum, *i, n.* (p. 19); (*Ex.* 26) *Antia, ae, f.*  
 lifeless, mortuus, *a, um*; exanimis, *e* (and *us, a, um*).  
 light (*subs.*), lux, *lucis, f.*  
 light (*adj.*), levis, *e.*  
 lightning, fulgur, *âris, n.*  
 like, similis, *e* (with *gen. or dat.*).  
 limb, membrum, *i, n.*; artus, *us, m.*  
 line, linea, *ae, f.*; (*of battle*) *Acies, si, f.*  
 line, to, subterno, stravi, stratum, *i, n.*  
 Lingones, Lingones, *um, m.*  
 lion, leo, *onis, m.*  
 Liscus, Liscus, *i, m.*  
 Litavicus, Litavicus, *i, m.*  
 little, parvus, *a, um*; *to care little*, parvi pendere.  
 live, to, vivo, *xi, ctum, 3*; dego, *gi, 3*.  
 living-creature, animans, *antis, m. and n.*  
 Livius, Livius, *i, m.*  
 lo, en! ecce! *interj.*  
 load, to, onero, *âvi, âtum, i.*  
 Loire, Ligoris, *is, m.*  
 long (*adj.*), longinquus, *a, um*; distans (the latter of time only).  
 long (*adv.*), diu, *compar.*, diutius.  
 long for, to, ardeo, *si, sum, 2*.  
 long, to, âveo, *2*.  
 longing, a, desiderium, *i, n.*  
 look, to, conspicio, *exi, ectum, 3*.  
 look down upon, to, despicio, *specti, spectrum, 3*.  
 look for, to, quaero, *quæsi, quæsitum, 3*.  
 lose, to, amitto, *mis, misum, 3*; perdo, *did, ditum, 3* (p. 74).  
 loss, damnus, *i, n.*; jactura, *ae, f.*  
 lot, sors, *tis, f.*; fortuna, *ae, f.*  
 love, amor, *âris, m.*; caritas, *âris, f.* (p. 47).  
 love, to, âmo, *âvi, âtum, i*.  
 dilgo, *lexi, lectum, 3*.  
 lovely, amoenus, *a, um*.  
 low, inferus, *a, um* (inferior,

## MANIFEST.

infimus, or imus); *of birth*, natus, *a, um*; *a man of low birth*, mâlo gênere natus.  
 lowest (man), infimus, *a, um*.  
 lowly, humilis, *e.*  
 Lucan, Lucan, *ârum, m.*  
 Lucania, Lucania, *ae, f.*  
 Lucania, Lucania, *ae, f.*  
 Lucilius, Lucilius, *i, m.*  
 Lucius Catilina, Lucius, *i, Catilina, ac, m.*  
 luckless, infelix, *icis*; infansus, *a, um*.  
 Luppia or Lippe (river), Luppia, *ae*.  
 lust, libido, *inis, f.*  
 Lycurgus, Lycurgus, *i, m.*  
 Lysander, Lysander, *ri, m.*  
 Lysimachus, Lysimachus, *i, m.*

## M

Macedonian (*subs.*), Macedo, *ânis, m.*; (*adj.*), Mædonicus, *a, um*.  
 Magaeus, Magaeus, *i, m.*  
 magistrate, magistratus, *âs, m.*  
 magnificent, æperbus, *a, um*.  
 maintain, *to, æ, hold up*, sustineo, *ul, uter, 3*; *to, ul, tum, 3* = *to sustain*.  
 majority, plures, *tum, m.*; major pars, *f.*  
 make, to, facio, feci, factum, *3*; efficio, feci, factum, *3*; fabrico, *âvi, âtum, i*; creo, *âvi, âtum, i* (*to appoint a magistrate*).  
 make away with, to, = kill, vitâ privare (*Ex. 61*).  
 make familiar with, to, assuefacio, *léc, factum, 3*.  
 make for, to, pello, *ivi and ii, ctum, 3*.  
 make laws, to, (*Ex. 22*), instituo, *ui, âtum, 3*.  
 make off, to, âbeo, *ii, ctum, 4*.  
 make a stand, to, coeliato, *sisti, 3*.  
 make war upon, to, belum infero, *thii, âtum, ferre, 3*.  
 male, *subst. and adj.*, mas, *mius, m.*; *adj.*, masculus, *a, um*; virilis, *e.*  
 man, homo, *inis, c.*; vir, *vir, m.* (p. 17); *man by man*, viritum, *adv.*  
 manage, to, administro, *âvi, âtum, i*.  
 management, administratio, *ânis, f.*  
 manifest, manifestus, *a, um*; æpertus, *a, um*.

## MERIT.

mankind, homines, *um, c.*  
 Manlius, Manlius, *i, m.*  
 manner, modus, *i, m.*; *in the manner of*, ritu, *with gen.*  
 many, multi, *ae, a.*  
 Marcellus, Marcellus, *i, m.*  
 march, iter, itinêris, *n.*  
 march, to, (*intrans.*) proficiscor, *fectus sum, 3*; incedo, *cessi, cessum, 3*; (*trans.*) dūco, *xi, ctum, 3*.  
 march, to be on, in agmine, itinêre, *ac, ess.*  
 Marcus, Marcus, *i, m.*  
 Marcomanni, Marcomanni, *ârum, m.*  
 Mardonius, Mardonius, *i, m.*  
 Marius, Marius, *i, m.*  
 mark, nota, *ae, f.*; signum, *i, n.*  
 marry, to, (*of the man*) dūco, *xi, ctum, 3*; (*of the woman*) nūbo, *psi, ptum, 3* (*with dat.*).  
 Marseilles, Messalia, *ae, f.*  
 marvellous, mirus, *a, um*; mirabilis, *e*; mirificus, *a, um*.  
 massacre, caedes, *is, f.*  
 master, (*who teaches*) magister, *ri, m.*; (*who owns*) dominus, *i, m.*  
 matron, mætrina, *ae, f.*  
 matter, res, *ei, f.*  
 Mausolus, Mausolus, *i, m.*  
 may, I, licet, *ut*, and *utrum est* (followed by *dat.* of person).  
 mean, turpis, *e*; sordidus, *a, um*.  
 mean, to, vâlo, *ul, velle* (*irreg.*); *usu with dat. of prom. refl.*  
 means of, by, per, *prep.* (*govs. acc.*).  
 meantime, interim, *adv.*; intêres, *adv.*  
 measure, mensura, *ae, f.*; *measure (of corn)*, modius, *ii, m.*; = *a plan*, consilium, *i, n.*; *ratio*, *ânis, f.*  
 measure, to, mælor, *mælor sum, 4*; *emêtor*, *4*; mæto, *âvi, âtum, i*.  
 mechanician, mæchanicus, *i, m.*; artifex, *icis, m.*; mæchanator, *âris, m.*  
 Media, Mædia, *ârum, n.*  
 Megara, Mægara, *ârum, n.*  
 pl.; also *ae, f.*  
 Megarian, Mægarensis, *e*.  
 Mægareus, *a, um*.  
 memory, mêmoria, *ae, f.*  
 merchant, mercator, *âris, m.*  
 mere, mærus, *a, um*; ipse, *a, um* (*Ex. 43*).  
 merely, tantum, *adv.*  
 merit, virtus, *âvis, f.*  
 merit, *i, m.*

mer  
 mer  
 mes  
 met  
 Met  
 Mic  
 mid  
 mid  
 mis  
 vires, *f.*  
 all one  
 mile  
 sum.  
 Mile  
 mili  
 milit  
 au.  
 milk  
 Milit  
 mind  
 mus, *i, n.*  
 mind  
 Mine  
 Minu  
 mira  
 misb  
 uit, 2 (*id.*)  
 and *inf.*  
 mien  
 èrum; *n.*  
 misto  
 aus, *f.*  
 missi  
 Mithr  
 is, *m.*  
 most  
 moder  
 modestus  
 moderat  
 moder  
 as, *f.*; *m*  
 of moder  
 modes  
 (moder  
 (dash/ul)  
 modes  
 modest  
 modes  
 modes  
 mous  
 monas  
 month  
 moon  
 moral  
 rats, *m.*  
 more  
 pl. *plures*  
 more,  
 mortal  
 most;  
 the most,  
 most  
 aequè, *âqu*  
 mother  
 mount  
 mount  
 i, *m.*

MERIT.

merit, to, mēro, ul, itum;  
meritor, itus sum, 2.  
messenger, nuntius, i, m.  
metal, metallum, i, n.  
Metellus, Metellus, i, m.  
Micipsa, Micipsa, ae, m.  
midst, in, mēlus, a, um.  
midway, mediū, a, um.  
might, vis, vim, vi; pl.  
vires, f.; robur, ōris, n.; with  
all one's might, summā vi or ōpe.  
mile, mille passus or pas-  
sum.

Miletus, Miletus, i, f.  
military, militaris, e.  
military-service, milita-

re,   
milk, lac, lactis, n.  
Miliades, Miliades, is, m.  
mind, mens, tis, f.; ani-  
mus, i, m. (p. 8).  
mindful, mēmor, ōris.  
Minerva, Minerva, ae, f.  
Mnucius, Mnucius, i, m.  
miracle, miraculum, i, n.  
misbecomes, it, dedecet,  
ult, 2 (impers. verb. with acc.  
and inf.).

miserable, miser, ōra,  
erum; miserabilis, e.  
misfortune, cālāmitas,  
tis, f.; nāvus, i, n.  
missile, telum, i, n.  
Mithridates, Mithridates,  
is, m.

moat, fossa, ae, f.  
moderate, modicus, a, um;  
modestus, a, um; mediocris, e.  
moderately, modicē, ade.;  
moderate, ada.

moderation, temperantia,  
ae, f.; modestia, ae, f.; bounds  
of moderation, mōdus, i, m.  
modest, modestus, a, um  
(moderate); vērecundus, a, um  
(bashful).

modestly, vērecundē, ade.;  
modestū, ade.

modesty, pudor, ōris, m.  
money, pecūnia, ae, f.;

munus, i, m.  
month, mensis, is, m.  
moon, luna, ae, f.  
moral, sanctus, a, um; mo-  
rals, mōres, um, m.; mo-

more (adv.), plus, plūris;  
pl. plūres, a.

more, amplius, ada.  
mortal, mortalis, e.  
most, plurimus, a, um; al-  
the most, ad eumdem.

most persons, plerique,  
aeque, aequē.

mother, māter, tris, f.  
mountain, mons, tis, m.  
mountaineer, montānus,  
i, m.

NEARNESS.

mourn, to, {lāgeo, xl,  
mourn for, to, {ctum, 2;  
doleo, ul, itum, 2; plango, xxi,  
ctum, 3.

mournful, moestus, a, um;  
lūgubris, e.

mourning, luctus, tis, m.  
mouth, os, ōris, n.; fauces,  
tum, f. (plur.).

move, to, mōveo, mōvi,  
mōtum, 2; commōveo, mōvi,  
mōtum, 2.

much, multum, adv. (with  
gen.); too much, nimis, ade.

murder, caedes, is, f.; hō-  
cidium, i, n.

murder, to, occido, idi,  
isum, 3; interficio, feci, feci-  
tum, 3 (p. 1).

murderer, homicida, ae, c.;  
scīarius, i, m.; Interfector,  
ōris, m.

multitude, multitudo, inis,  
f.; the multitude, vulgus, i,  
m. and n.

muses, Māsa, ōrum, f.  
musician, mūsica, i, m.  
must (u), necesse est.

myrtle, myrtus, i, f.  
myself, egomet; ipse, is,

agreeing with ego expressed or  
understood.

N

Naked, nudus, a, um.  
name, nōmen, inis, n.; in  
the name of, prob. with acc.  
(Ex. 13).

named, cui nōmen erat.  
narration, narratio, ōnis,  
f.; in narration, in narrando  
(Ex. 62).

narrow, angustus, a, um;  
arctus, a, um.

nation, gens, tis, f.  
natural, naturālis, e.

naturally, naturāliter, or  
abl. of natura.

nature, nātūra, ae, f.; =  
disposition, indōles, is, f.; in-  
gēnium, i, n.

naught, nihil: see "No-  
thing."

naval, nāvālis, e.  
Neapolis, Neāpolis, is, f.

near (adv.), propinquus, a,  
um; comp. propior, sup. proxi-  
mus.

near (adv.), propē, juxta.  
near (prep.), propē ad  
(with acc.).

neatly, paene, adv.; propē,  
adv. = ferme adv.

nearness, propinquitas,  
tis, f.

NOVELTY.

necessarily, necesse, ne-  
cessario, adv.

necessary, to be, ōpus esse  
(see p. 54. § 308), (followed by  
dat. of person and abl. of thing).

necessity, necessitas, tis, f.  
need, egestas, tis, f.; in-  
ōpia, ae, f. (p. 139).

need, to, egeo (indigeo), ul  
2 (followed by gen.).

needy, egeus, tis.  
nefarious, nefandus,  
um; nefarius, a, um.

neglect, to, nēgligo, exi,  
ectum, 3; ōmitto, mīa, mis-  
sum, 3.

negligence, negligentia,  
ae, f.

negligent, negligens, tis.  
neighbouring, vicinus, a,  
um; propinquus, a, um; finit-  
imus, a, um; proximus, a, um.

neither (pron.), neuter,  
ra, rum.

neither (conj.), nec, nēque.  
Neocles, Neocles, is, m.

nerve, = vigor, nervi, ōrum  
m.; vigor, ōris, m.

nest, nidus, i, m.  
net, rēte, is, n. (p. 91).

never, nunquam, adv.  
nevertheless, nihilominus,  
adv.; tamen, adv.

new, novus, a, um; recens,  
tis (p. 81).

night, nox, ctis, f.  
night, by, noctu; used ad-  
verbally.

night-watches, excubiae,  
arum, f.

Ninus, Ninus, i, m.  
no or no-one (pron.), nul-  
lus, a, um; or nemo (for the  
gen., nullus is used).

noble, nōbilis, e; clārus, a,  
um; splendidus, a, um; noble  
thing, decōrum, p. 2.

nobody, nemo, inis, e. (the  
gen. and abl. rarely used).

none, see "No," above.  
nor, nēa.

note, to, nōto, āvi, ātum,  
i; animadverto, ti, sum, 3.

noted, insignis, e; nōtus, a,  
um.

nothing, nihil (adj.) or ni-  
hilum, i, n.

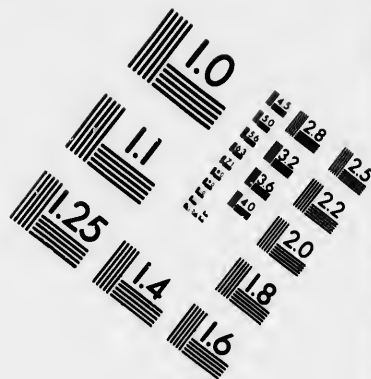
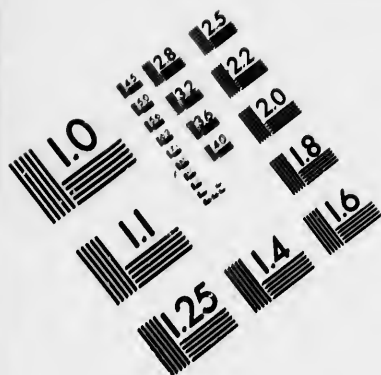
not, non, adv.; hand, adv.  
After verbs of forbidding, de-  
noting a purpose, &c., nē, with  
subj.; not a whit, nihil admod-  
um.

nourish, to, nūtrio, ivi,  
itum, 4; alio, ul, tum, 3.

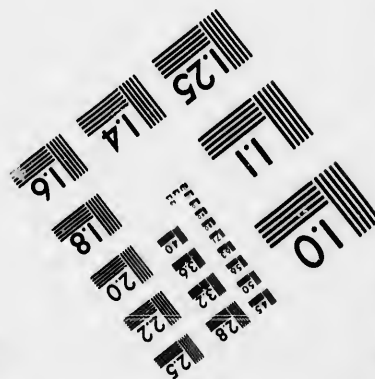
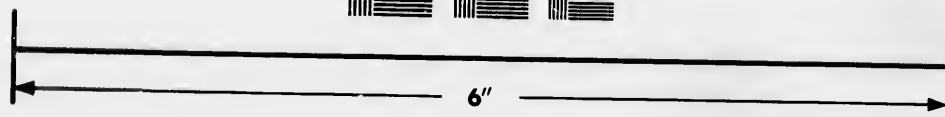
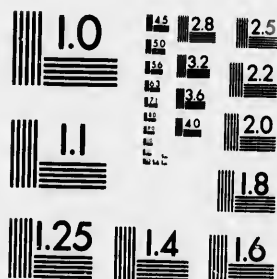
novel, novus, a, um; inō-  
strus, a, um.

novelty, novitas, tis, f.





# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14590  
(716) 872-4503

10  
1.6  
1.8  
2.0  
2.2  
2.5  
2.8  
3.2  
3.6  
4.0  
4.5  
5.0  
5.6  
6.3  
7.1  
8.0  
9.0  
10.0

10  
0.1  
0.2  
0.3  
0.5  
0.7  
1.0  
1.5  
2.0  
3.0  
5.0  
10.0

NOW.	OVERTAKE.	PECULIAR.
<p><b>now</b>, <i>nunc, adv.</i>; <i>jam, adv.</i>  <i>nowhere, nusquam, adv.</i>  <b>Numantia</b>, <i>Nūmantia, ae, f.</i>  <i>numerous, creber, a, rum.</i>  <b>number</b>, <i>nūmerus, i, m.</i>  <b>Numidia</b>, <i>Nūmidia, ae, f.</i></p>	<p><b>Olympiad</b>, <i>Ōlympias, ādis, f.</i>  <b>on</b>, <i>super, prep. (gov. acc. and abl.).</i>  <b>on account of</b>, <i>propter, prep. with acc.</i>  <b>once</b>, <i>sēmel, adv.</i>; <i>olim, adv.</i>; <i>quondam, adv.</i>  <b>once</b>, <i>at, extemplo, adv.</i>  <b>on foot</b>, <i>pēdibus.</i>  <b>one</b>, <i>ūnus, a, um</i>; <i>quidam, quaedam, quoddam = a certain one, alter, ēra, ōrum = one of two.</i>  <b>only</b>, <i>solum, adv.</i>; <i>tantum, adv.</i>; <i>tantummodo, adv.</i>  <b>open</b>, <i>āpertus, a, um.</i>  <b>open</b>, <i>to, āperio, ul, ertum, 4</i>; <i>pando, di, nsuam, 3.</i>  <b>openly</b>, <i>āpērtē, adv.</i>; <i>pālam, adv.</i>; <i>most openly (Ex. 4), simplicissime, adv.</i>  <b>opinion</b>, <i>sententia, ac, f.</i>; <i>ōpinio, ōnis, f.</i>  <b>opportunity</b>, <i>occiō, ōnis, f.</i>; <i>opportunitas, ātis, f.</i>  <b>oppose</b>, <i>to, obisto, stili, stitum, 3 (with dat.)</i>; <i>oppōno, pōsul, pōstūm, 3</i>; <i>objicio, fēc, lectum, 3.</i>  <b>oppress</b>, <i>to, opprimo, pressi, pressum, 3</i>; <i>vexo, āvi, ātum, 1.</i>  <b>oppressive</b>, <i>iniquus, a, um.</i>  <b>or</b>, <i>aut, vel, conj.</i>  <b>orator</b>, <i>ōrator, ōris, m.</i>; <i>rhētor, ōris, m. (p. 149).</i>  <b>orchard</b>, <i>pōmārium, i, n.</i>  <b>order</b>, <i>sēries, ōi, f.</i>; <i>ordo, ōnis, m.</i>; <i>in—that, ut with subj.</i>  <b>order</b>, <i>to, = to command, jūbeo, āsi, āsum, 2 (with acc. and inf.)</i>; <i>impēro, āvi, ātum, 1 (with dat.)</i>; <i>= to arrange, ordino, āvi, ātum, 1</i>; <i>compōno, pōsul, pōstūm, 3.</i>  <b>ornament</b>, <i>ornāmentum, i, n.</i>; <i>dēcus, ōris, n.</i>  <b>Orodes</b>, <i>Ōrōdes, is, m.</i>  <b>other</b>, <i>ālius, a, ud.</i> <i>Of two, alior, ēra, ōrum.</i>  <b>ought</b>, <i>dēbeo, ul, itum, 2</i>; <i>oportet, ult, 2 (impers.).</i>  <b>our</b>, <i>noster, a, rum.</i>  <b>out</b>, <i>8 or ex, prep. (gov. abl.).</i>  <b>outshine</b>, <i>to, praeſcēo, xl, 2</i>; <i>praeſcēo, ul, 2.</i>  <b>outstretch</b>, <i>to, praetendo, di, tum, 3.</i>  <b>over</b>, <i>= beyond, trans, prep. (with acc.).</i>  <b>overcome</b>, <i>to, vinco, vici, victum, 3</i>; <i>superō, āvi, ātum, 1</i>; <i>frango, ēgi, actum, 3.</i>  <b>overtake</b>, <i>to, assēquor, cūsus, 3</i>; <i>consequor, cūsus, 3.</i></p>	<p><b>overthrow</b>, <i>to, disſicō, ſeci, cctum, 3.</i>  <b>own (one's)</b>, <i>prōprius, a, um.</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>P</b></p> <p><b>Pain</b>, <i>dōlor, ōris, m.</i>  <b>pain</b>, <i>to, dōlore afficio, ſeci, ſectum, 3.</i>  <b>paint</b>, <i>to, pingo, xxi, ctum, 3.</i>  <b>painter</b>, <i>picior, ōris, m.</i>  <b>palisade</b>, <i>vallum, i, n.</i>  <b>Pan</b>, <i>Pan, ānis, acc. Pāna, m.</i>  <b>Panopion</b>, <i>Panōpion, ōnis, m.</i>  <b>papyrus</b>, <i>pāpyrus, i, m.</i>  <b>and p.</b>; <i>pāpyrum, i, n.</i>  <b>pardon</b>, <i>to, ignosco, ōvi, ōtum, 3 (with dat. of pers.)</i>; <i>acc. of uel. pron. only</i>; <i>condōno, āvi, ātum, 1.</i>  <b>parent</b>, <i>pārens, tis, m.</i>  <b>and p.</b>  <b>Farmenio</b>, <i>Farmēnio, ōnis, m.</i>  <b>part</b>, <i>pars, tis, f.</i>; <i>portio, ōnis, f.</i>  <b>part</b>, <i>to, = to separate, āpāro, āvi, ātum, 1</i>; <i>sejūngo, xxi, nctum, 3</i>; <i>= to go away, dis- cōdo, cessi, cessum, 3</i>; <i>digredior, gressus sum, 3.</i>  <b>partaker</b>, <i>particeps, ipis, c.</i>  <b>Parthian</b>, <i>Parthus, i, m.</i>  <b>particularly</b>, <i>magis, pēre, adv.</i>  <b>party</b>, <i>partes, tum, f.</i>; <i>factio, ōnis, f.</i>  <b>pass</b>, <i>to, praetereo, ii, itum, 4</i>; <i>traneo, ii, itum, 4</i>; <i>to pass away, labor, lapsus sum, 3</i>; <i>fu- gio, ēgi, ēgitum, 4</i>; <i>to pass by (trans.)</i>, <i>praetereo, ii, itum, 4</i>; <i>praetervolo, āvi, ātum, 1.</i>  <b>passage</b>, <i>via, ae, f.</i>; <i>trans- itus, ōis, m.</i>; <i>trājectus, ōis, m.</i>; <i>a narrow passage, fauces, tum, f.</i>  <b>past</b>, <i>praeteritus, a, um</i>; <i>praeterita, ōrum, n.</i> <i>the past</i>, <i>patrician, patricius, a, um</i>; <i>suls, patriciani, patricii, ōrum, m.</i>  <b>patron</b>, <i>patrōnis, i, m.</i>  <b>Paulus Aemilius</b>, <i>Paulus, i, Aemilius, i, m.</i>  <b>Pausanias</b>, <i>Pausānias, ae, m.</i>  <b>pay</b>, <i>merces, ēdis, f.</i>; <i>su- pendium, i, n.</i>  <b>pay</b>, <i>to, solvo (exsolvo), vi, ctum, 3.</i>  <b>peace</b>, <i>pax, pācis, f.</i>; <i>tran- quillitas, ātis, f.</i>  <b>peculiar</b>, <i>prōprius, a, um</i>  <b>peculiaria</b>, <i>e.</i></p>

PEDIUS.

**Pedius**, **Pēdius**, *i. m.*  
**Pelopidas**, **Pēlopīdās**, *ae. m.*  
**Peloponnesian**, **Pēlopōn-  
 nesiensis**, *a. um.*  
**people**, **pōpulus**, *i. m.; the  
 common people*, **plebs**, *f.;*  
**plēbes**, *cl. f.;* **hōmīnēs**, *um. m.*  
**perceive**, *to*, **cernō** (no  
*perf. or sup. in this sense*). *3;*  
**percipio**, **cēpi**, **ceptum**, *3.*  
**perchance**, *fortasse*, *ade.*;  
**forte**, *ade.*;  
**forstān**, *ade.*  
**perfect**, **perfectus**, *a. um;*  
**absolūtus**, *a. um.*  
**perfect**, *to*, **perficio**, **feci**,  
**fectum**, *3;* **absolvō**, *vi. ātūm*, *3.*  
**perform**, *to*, **facio**, **feci**,  
**factum**, *3;* **conficio**, **feci**, **fectum**,  
*3;* **praesto**, *iti. ātūm*, *3;* **fungor**,  
**functus sum**, *3 (with abl.)*.  
**perhaps**. See **PERCHANCE**.  
**Pericles**, **Pēriclēs**, *is. m.*  
**peril**, **pēriculū**, *i. n.;* **dis-**  
**critum**, *uis. m.*  
**perish**, *to*, **pereo**, *ii. ātūm*, *4.*  
*irr.*; **mōrīor**, *tus sum*, *3.*  
**permission**, **vēnit**, *ae. f.*  
**Perō**, **Pēro**, *ōnis. f.*  
**Perseus**, **Pērsēus**, *cl. m.*  
**Persia**, **Pērsis**, *idis. f.*  
**Persian**, *adj.* **Pērsicus**, *a.*  
*um;* *subs.* *the Persians*, **Pērsae**,  
*ārum.*  
**person**, **persōna**, *ae. f.;*  
*some person*, **āliquis**.  
**perspicuous**, **illustis**, *e.*  
**persuade**, *to*, **persuadeo**,  
*si sum*, *2 (with dat.)*.  
**pestilential**, **pestifer**, *ēra*,  
*rum;* **gravis**, *e;* **pestilens**, *tis.*  
**Petereus**, **Pētrēus**, *i. m.*  
**Phaëthon**, **Phaëthōn**, *tis. m.*  
**Pharos**, **Phāros**, *i. f.*  
**Phalerum**, **Phalērum**, *i. n.*  
**Philip**, **Philippus**, *i. m.*  
**philosopher**, **philosophus**,  
*i. m.*  
**philosophy**, **philosophia**,  
*ae. f.*  
**Phocion**, **Phōcīon**, *ōnis. m.*  
**Phocubus**, **Phocubus**, *i. m.*  
**Phoenician**, *subs.* **Phoenix**,  
*icis. m.; adj.* **Phoenicius**, *a. um.*  
**picture**, **picōra**, *ae. f.;*  
*tabula*, *ae. f.*  
**piety**, **pīetas**, *ātis. f.*  
**pine**, **pinus**, *ui et i. f.*  
**pine away**, *t.*, **tābesco**, *3.*  
**pipe** (musical), **fistula**, *ae. f.;*  
*libia*, *ae. f.;* **arundo**, *ilis. f.*  
**Pisistratus**, **Pisistrātus**, *i.*  
*m.*  
**Piso**, **Pisō**, *ōnis. m.*  
**pitch**, *to*, *i. e. to form* (a  
*camp*), **facio**, **feci**, **factum**, *3.*  
**pity**, *to*, **misereor**, *ult.*, *3 (with*  
*acc. of subject and gen. of ob-*

POSSESS. TO.

**ject**); **misereor**, **eritus sum**, *3*  
*(with gen.)*; **misēor**, **ātus sum**,  
*1 (with acc.)*.  
**place**, **locus**, *i. m. (plur.*  
*lōca and lōci)*.  
**place**, *to*, **pōno**, **pōnui**, **situm**,  
*3;* **colloco**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *1;* **stātuo**,  
*ul. ātūm*, *3.*  
**place on**, *to*, **impono**, **pō-**  
**sui**, **pōsitum**, *3.*  
**plan**, **rātio**, *ōnis. f.*; **con-**  
**siliūm**, *i. n.*; **prōpōsitum**, *i. n.*  
**plan**, *to*, **prōpono**, **pōsui**,  
*itum*, *1.*  
**plant**, *to*, **sēro** (**arsēro**),  
**ēgvi**, **ātum**, *3.*  
**Plato**, **Plātō**, *ōnis. m.*  
**plead**, *to*, **oro**, **āvī**, **ātum**,  
*1;* **āgo**, **ēgi**, **actum**, *3.*  
**pleasant**, **jucundus**, *a. um;*  
**grātus**, *a. um;* **dulcis**, *e. (p. 6).*  
**please**, *to*, **plāceo**, *ui. ātūm*,  
*2 (with dat.)*; **oblecto**, **āvī**,  
*ātum*, *1 (with acc.)*. *1 please*,  
*libet*, *libuit*, and *libitum est*.  
**pleasing**. See **PLEASANT**.  
**pleasure**, **jucunditas**, *ātis. f.*  
**plebs**, **plebs**, **plebis**, **plēbes**,  
*cl. f.*  
**plot**, **consiliūm**, *i. n.*; **con-**  
**juratio**, *ōnis. f.*; **insidiae**, *ārum*,  
*pl. f.*  
**plough**, **ārātum**, *i. n.*;  
*vomer* and *vōmis*, *ēris. m.*  
*(plough-share)*.  
**plunder**, **praeda**, *ae. f.*  
**plunder**, *to*, **rapio**, *cl.*  
*tum*, *3;* **diripio**, *ui. ēptum*, *3.*  
**Po**, **Pādus**, *i. m.*  
**poet**, **poēta**, *ae. m. and f.*  
**poison**, **vēnēnum**, *i. n.*;  
*virus*, *i. n.*  
**point**, **mācro**, *ōnis. m.*;  
*cuspis*, *idis. f.*  
**point out**, *to*, **indico**, **āvī**,  
*ātum*, *1;* **designo**, **āvī**, **ātum**,  
*1;* **ostendo**, *cl. tum*, *3;* **moni-**  
**stro**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *1.*  
**political**, **politicus**, *a. um;*  
*political change*, **novae res**.  
**Pollis**, **Pollus**, *ōnis. m.*  
**Pollux**, **Pollus**, *icis. m.*  
**Pompey**, **Pompius**, *i. m.*  
**Pontifex** or **Pontif**, **pon-**  
**tifex**, *icis. m.*  
**populous**, **cēlēstis**, *bris*,  
*bre;* **frēquens**, *tis.*  
**Porcius**, **Pōrcius**, *is. m.*  
**port**, **portus**, *ās. m.*  
**portion**, **pars**, *tis. f.*; **portio**,  
*ōnis. f.* = *dowry*, *dos*, *ōtis. f.*  
**portrait**, **imāgo**, *inis. f.*  
**position**, **stātus**, *ās. m.*;  
*stus*, *us. m.*; **locus**, *i. m.* and  
*in pl. also n.*  
**possess**, *to*, **possideo**, **ēdi**,  
*esum*, *2;* **habeo**, *ui. ātūm*, *2.*

PREVAIL.

**possession**, *to take*, **ce-**  
**do**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *1;* *to gain*  
*possession*, **pōnor**, **itū**, *sum*, *4.*  
*with gen. or abl.*  
**possession**, **possessio**, *ōnis. f.*  
*in plur.*, **res**, **rērum**, *f.*;  
*bōna*, *ōrum. n.*  
**possible**, *qui. quāe*, *quod*  
*ferri pōtēst*. See **ABLE**, *to be.*  
**possibly**, **fortān**. *It may*  
*possibly happen*, **ferri pōtēst ut**.  
**post**, **postis**, *is. m.*, *military*  
*post*, **stātio**, *ōnis. f.*  
**postpone**, *to*, **différo**, **di-**  
**stūll**, **diātum**, *3.*  
**pound**, **libra**, *ae. f.*  
**pounds**, **pōndo**, *indecl.*  
**poverty**, **paupertas**, *ātis. f.*,  
*ēgestas*, *ātis. f. (p. 139).*  
**power**, **vires**, *lumi. f.*  
**powerful**, **pōtēns**, *tis;* **effi-**  
**cax**, *acis.*  
**praetor**, **praetor**, *ōris. m.*  
**praise**, **laus**, *dis. f.*; *the act*  
*of praising*, **laudādo**, *ōnis. f.*  
**praise**, *to*, **laudo**, **āvī**, **ātum**,  
*1;* **efféro**, **extūll**, **ātum**, *3.*  
**praiseworthy**, **laudābilis**,  
*e;* **commendābilis**, *e.*  
**pray**, *to*, **precor**, **ātus sum**,  
*1;* **oro**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *1 (p. 48).*  
**prayer**, **prēcis**, *em. c. f.* (no  
*nominative in use*); **pl. prēces**,  
*um.*  
**predominance**, **pōtēntia**,  
*ae. f.*  
**prefer**, *to*, **praeféro**, **tūll**,  
*ātum*, *3.*  
**prepare**, *to*, **pāro**, **āvī**,  
*ātum*, *1.*  
**prescribe**, *to*, **praescribo**,  
**psī**, **ptum**, *3;* **praecipio**, **cēpi**,  
**ceptum**, *3.*  
**presence**, **praesentia**, *ae. f.*;  
*in one's presence*, **praesens**, *ntis.*  
**presence of**, **in**, **cōram**,  
*prep. (gov. abt.)*.  
**present**, *to be*, **intersum**,  
*ful. esse*.  
**present**, **praesens**, *tis.*  
**present**, *to*, **donō**, **āvī**,  
*ātum*, *1.* (with *acc. of person*  
*and abl. of gift*).  
**preserve**, *to*, **servo**, **āvī**,  
*ātum*, *1;* **tueor**, **itū**, *sum*, *2*  
*(p. 40).*  
**preside**, *to*, **praesum**, **ful**,  
*esse*.  
**press**, *to*, **prēmo**, **esī**, **esum**,  
*3;* **comprimō**, **esī**, **esum**, *3.*  
**press hard on**, *to*, **prēmo**  
*3.* See **THUS**.  
**profound**, *to*, **simūlo**, **āvī**,  
*ātum*, *1;* **dissimūlo**, **āvī**, **ātum**,  
*1 (p. 17).*  
**prevail**, *to*, **vāleo**, *ui. ātūm*  
*2;* **vīnco**, **vici**, **victum**, *3.*



PREVENT.	PTIUS.	REAR.
<p>prevent, to, prōhibeo, ul, itum, 2; impēdo, lvi, itum, 4.</p> <p>previously, ante, antea, ade; prius, ade.</p> <p>Prīam, prīamus, l, m.</p> <p>price, pretium, l, n.; at a high price, magis.</p> <p>princely, imperātorius, a, um.</p> <p>private, privātus, a, um; = secret, arcānus, a, um; secretus, a, um.</p> <p>proceed, to, prōcedo, cessi, cessum, 3; progredior, gressus sum, 3; to go up, pervenio, eni, entum, 4, followed by in with acc., pergo, perrexi, perrectum, 3.</p> <p>proclaim, to, edico, xl, etum, 3; prōclāmo, āvi, ātum, l.</p> <p>proclamation, edictum, l, n.; to issue a proclamation, edico, xl, etum, 3.</p> <p>procure, to, pāro, āvi, ātum, 1; acquiro, sivi, itum, 3.</p> <p>prodigy, monstrum, l, n.; prodigium, l, n.</p> <p>produce, to, pāro, pēperi, partum, 3; gigno, gēnui, gēnitum, 3; to be produced, nascor, nātus sum, 3.</p> <p>promise, to, promitto, misi, mēsum, 3; polliceor, itus sum, 2.</p> <p>prompt, celer, ēris, ēre; promptus, a, um.</p> <p>proof, documentum, l, n.; experimentum, l, n.; testimoniū, l, n.</p> <p>propagate, to, prōpāgo, āvi, ātum, 1; vulgo, āvi, ātum, l.</p> <p>proper, proprius, a, um (belonging to); rectus, a, um (right); aptus, a, um (suitable).</p> <p>property, censura, lis, m. (income); proprium, l, n. (attribution, peculiarity); bona, erum, n. (goods).</p> <p>propitiate, to, placō, āvi, ātum, l.</p> <p>propose, to, prōpono, pōsul, itum, 3.</p> <p>propraetor, prēpraetor, ēris, m.</p> <p>proscribe, proscibo, ipel, pium, 3.</p> <p>proscribed, proscriptus, l, m.</p> <p>prosperous, secundus, a, um; dicens, tis; beatus, a, um.</p> <p>protection, praesidium, l, n.; tutela, ae, f.</p> <p>proud, superbus, a, um; arrogant, tis (p. 59).</p>	<p>prove, to, l. e. to turn out to be, often, sum, ful, esse (with double dat.).</p> <p>provide, to, prōvideō, vidi, visum, 2; praebeo, ul, itum, 2 (to supply); pāro, āvi, ātum, 1 (to get); procuro, āvi, ātum, 1.</p> <p>province, provincia, ae, f.</p> <p>provision, to make, prōvideō, vidi, visum, 2.</p> <p>provisions, victus, lis, m.; pēnus, lis, and l, e., and ēris, n.; res frumentaria, f. (of an army).</p> <p>provoke, to, laceo, lvi, itum, 3.</p> <p>prow (Ex. 34), corvus, l, m.</p> <p>prudence, prudentia, ae, f.; consilium, l, n.</p> <p>prudent, prudens, tis; providus, a, um.</p> <p>Ptolemy, Ptolēmaeus, l, m.</p> <p>public, publicus, e, um; communis, e; in public, publicē, ade.</p> <p>publish, to, vulgo, āvi, ātum, 1; (to issue a book), edo, didi, ditum, 3; to publish a decree, edico, dixi, dictum, 3.</p> <p>Punic, Pūnicus, a, um.</p> <p>punish, to, pūnio, lvi, itum, 4; animadverto, l, sum, 3, followed by in with acc.</p> <p>punishment, poena, ae, f.; supplicium, l, n. (p. 159).</p> <p>purchase, to, ēno, emi, emptum, 3; mercor, ātus sum.</p> <p>pursue, to, sequor, cūsus sum; sector, ātus sum, 1.</p> <p>purpose, prōpositum, l, n.; consilium, l, n.</p> <p>pure, purus, a, um; mērus, a, um (unmixed); castus, a, um (chaste).</p> <p>purify, to, purgo, āvi, ātum, 1; abluo, ul, ātum, 3.</p> <p>pursue, to, sequor, cūsus sum, 3.</p> <p>pursuer, pres. part. of sequor. See "Pursue, to."</p> <p>pursuit, studium, l, n. (favourite pursuit).</p> <p>push, to, trūdo, si, sum, 3; impello, āvi, ātum, 3.</p> <p>put, to, pōno, pōsul, itum, 3.</p> <p>put-to-death, to, neco, āvi, ātum, l.</p> <p>put off, to, of clothes, exuo, ul, ātum, 3; = to postpone; differo, distuli, dilatum, 3.</p> <p>put on, to (of clothes), induo, ul, ātum, 3.</p> <p>put upon, to, impōno, pōsul, pōsum, 3.</p> <p>Pythagoras, Pythagōras, ae, m.</p> <p>Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, l, m.</p> <p>Pythius, Pythius, a, um.</p>	<p>Q</p> <p>Quadruped, quadrupes, edis, m.</p> <p>quaestor, quaestor, ēris, m</p> <p>quantity, vis, vim, vi, f.; copia, ae, f. (plenty).</p> <p>quarrel, to, dissentio, al, sum, 3.</p> <p>quarters, hiberna, ōrum, n. (winter quarters; castra understood); aestiva, ōrum, n. (summer quarters).</p> <p>queen, regina, ae, f.</p> <p>quell, to, opprimo, pressi, pressum, 3.</p> <p>quick, citus, a, um; rapidus, a, um; velox, āvis, m.</p> <p>quickly, prōpere, ade.</p> <p>Quinctius, Quinctius, l, m.</p> <p>Quirinus, Quirinus, l, m.</p> <p>Quirites, Quirites, ium, m.</p> <p>quite, omnino, ade.; prorsus, ade.; quite-disturbed, perturbatus, a, um.</p> <p>R</p> <p>Race, = family, gēnus, ēris, n.; stirps, lis, f.; = course, cursus, lis, m.</p> <p>Rage, to, saevio, li, itum, 4; irro, 3.</p> <p>Raise, to, tollō, sustuli, sublātum, 3; erigo, exi, ectum, 3; = to levy, conscibo, psi, ptum, 3.</p> <p>rally, to, restituo, ul, ātum, 3.</p> <p>rampart, munitio, ōnis, f.</p> <p>rapid, velox, āvis, m.; rapidus, a, um; celer, ēris, ēre.</p> <p>rare, rarus, a, um.</p> <p>rarely, raro, ade.; very rarely, perraro.</p> <p>rash, temerarius, a, um.</p> <p>rate = price, pretium, l, n., at a high rate, magni.</p> <p>rather, potius, ade.; I had rather, mālo, ul, male, irr.</p> <p>ravage, to, vasto, āvi, ātum, 1; depopulo, ātus sum, 3.</p> <p>reach, to, pervenio, eni, entum, 4.</p> <p>read, to, lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3; recito, āvi, ātum, 1.</p> <p>ready, parātus, a, um.</p> <p>reality, res, āi, f.; in reality, re liqā, used adverbially; reversā, ade.</p> <p>reap, to, mēto, senti, sum, 3.</p> <p>rear, extrēmum or novissimum agmen, inia, e.</p>

REASON.

reason, *râtiô, ônis, f.*  
*mens, tis, f. (the faculty of reason).*  
 recall, to, *rêvocô, âvi, âtum, 1; reddô, xl, âtum, 1.*  
 receive, to, *accipio, cêpi, ceptum, 3; capio, cêpi, captura, 1.*  
 reckon, to, *ascilmo, âvi, âtum, 1; dico, xl, âtum, 3; computo, âvi, âtum, 1; nûméro, âvi, âtum, 1.*  
 recognise, to, *agnosco, nôvi, âtum, 1.*  
 recollection, *mêmôria, ac, f.*  
 record, *mônstramentum, 1, n.*  
 record, to, *narro, âvi, âtum, 1; mêmôro, âvi, âtum, 1.*  
 recover, to, *rêcûpero, âvi, âtum, 1; rêcipio, cêpi, ceptum, 3; to recover from a disease, convalesco, ul, 2.*  
 refer, to, *refêro, rettâli, rêlâtum, 1.*  
 refinement, *humânitas, âtis, f.; cultus, ôs, m.*  
 reflection, *considêrâtio, ônis, f.; cûgîtâtio, ônis, f.*  
 refuse, to, *abnuo, ul, âtum, 3; rêcûso, âvi, âtum, 1.*  
 regard, to, *respicio, spexi, spectum, 3; = to love, dilige, lxi, lectum, 3; = to think, existimo, âvi, âtum, 1; pûto, âvi, âtum, 1.*  
 region, *rêgio, ônis, f.; tractus, ôs, m.*  
 regret, *dêsidêrium, 1, n.; dolor, ôris, n.; aggritudo, înis, f.*  
 reign, to, *regno, âvi, âtum, 1.*  
 rejoice, to, *gaudeo, gâvisus sum, 2; læto, âtus sum, 1 (p. 59).*  
 relate, to, *narro, âvi, âtum, 1; refêro, tâli, âtum, 3.*  
 relationship, *propinquitas, âtis, f.; affinitas, âtis, f. (p. 42).*  
 relatives, *cognâti, ôrum; propinquî, ôrum.*  
 reliant, *frêtus, a, um (with ab); fidens, tis; confidens, tis.*  
 religion, *religio, ônis, f.*  
 religious, *religiôsus, a, um.*  
 reluctantly, *invitus, a, um, ad; recusans (Ex. 37, 8).*  
 rely, to, *nitôr (vibitor), nitus and nitus sum, 1.*  
 r living on, *frêtus, a, um (followed by ab); subnixus, a, um.*  
 remain, to, *commôro, âtus sum.*  
 remaining, *relîquus, a, um, remansit; relîquus, a, um,*

RESOLVE.

remarkable, *singulâris, e; insignis, e.*  
 remember, to, *mêmîni, perf. with sense of present; recordor, âtus sum, 1; rêminiscor, 3.*  
 remind, to, *môneo, ul, âtum, 2; commôneo, ul, 1.*  
 remote, *longinqua, a, um; rêmôtus, a, um.*  
 remove, to, *trans. môveo (rêmôveo), ôvi, âtum, 2; trans. migro, âvi, âtum, 1 (p. 28).*  
 render, to, *reddo, didi, ditum, 3; tribuo, ul, âtum, 3; fero (refêro), tâli, âtum, 3.*  
 renew, to, *restituo, ul, âtum, 3; rênovô, âvi, âtum, 1.*  
 renown, *fama, ac, f.; laus, dis, f.; gloria, ac, f.*  
 repair, to, *relicio, fêci, fecitum, 3.*  
 repeat, to, *Phr.: to repeat one's sin, bis peccare (Ex. 10).*  
 repent, to, *poenitet, nit, impers. 2 (with acc. of subject, and gen. of object).*  
 reply, to, *respondeo, di, sum, 2.*  
 report, *suba, rumor, ôris, m.; fama, ac, f.*  
 report, to, *refêro, tâli, âtum, 3; nûntio, âvi, âtum, 1; urâdo, didi, ditum, 3.*  
 repose, *quies, êtis, f.*  
 republic, *republica, rêpublice, f.*  
 repulse, *repulsa, ac, f.*  
 repulse, to, *repello, pûli, pulsus, 3; prôpulsio, âvi, âtum, 1.*  
 reputation, *existimâtio, ônis, f.*  
 request, *rôgatus, ôs, m.; at your request, to rôgante or tuo rôgâtû (Ex. 37).*  
 request, to, *rôgo, âvi, âtum, 1; pëto, lvi, âtum, 3 (p. 5).*  
 require, to, *exigo, xgi, actum, 3; posco, pôposci, poscitur, 3; = to need, êgeo, ul, 2 (with gen. or abl.).*  
 resentment, *dôlor, ôris, m.*  
 reserve, to, *reservo, âvi, âtum, 1.*  
 resist, to, *resisto, stiti, stitum, 3; repugno, âvi, âtum (with dat.).*  
 resolution, *firmities, constantia, ac, f.; = a determination, sententia, ac, f.; dêcrêtum, 1, n.*  
 resolve, to, *dêcerno, crâvi, crêtum, 3.*

RIGHT.

resources, *facilitâtes, um, f.; opes, um, f.*  
 respect, *vênerâtio, ônis, f.; rêverentia, ac, f.*  
 response, *responsum, 1, n.*  
 rest, *quies, êtis, f.; rêquies, êti, f.*  
 rest, the, *ceteri, ôrum; rêliqui, ôrum (p. 36).*  
 rest, to, *quiesco, âvi, âtum, 3; = to lean on, nitôr, nitus and nitus, 1; to rest one's hopes on, spes pôsitas in (with abl.) habêre.*  
 restore, to, *reparo, âvi, âtum, 1; restituo, ul, âtum, 3.*  
 restrain, to, *confineo (fêlîneo), ul, enum, 2; cohibeo, ul, âtum, 2; coerceo, ul, âtum, 2.*  
 retain, to, *retîneo (têneo), ul, tenum, 2; confineo, ul, tentum, 2.*  
 retire, to, *cêdo, ul, âsum, 3; ac rêcipio, cêpi, ceptum, 3 (Ex. 40).*  
 retreat, (the act), *receptus, us, m.; (the place), rêceptaculum, 1, n.*  
 retreat, to, *reçipio, cêpi, ceptum, 1 (with acc. of person).*  
 retribution, *Phr.: to inflict retribution, vindicâo, âvi, âtum, 1.*  
 return, to, *redô, li, âtum, 4; rêvertor, ratus sum, 3 (p. 67).*  
 retire, *reçipio, cêpi, ceptum (with acc. of person).*  
 reveal, to, *= to fess, cômîssor, âtus, 1; = to exult, exulto, âvi, âtum, 1.*  
 revenue, *vectigal, âtis, n.; fructus, us, m.*  
 reverence, *vênerâtio, ônis, f.; rêverentia, ac, f.*  
 reverence, to, *vêreor, litus sum, 2; cêlo, ul, cultum, 3.*  
 review, to, *repêto, lvi and li, âtum, 3; to take a short review of the past, paucâ supra repêtere.*  
 reward, *præmîum, 1, n.; merces, êtis, f. (âtis).*  
 Rhine, *Rhenus, 1, m.*  
 Rhodes, *Rhodus or -os, 1, f.*  
 to, *Rhodia, a, um.*  
 Rhone, *Rhodanus, 1, m.*  
 rich, *dives, tis; locuples, âtis (locus pleo).*  
 riches, *divites, ârum, f.*  
 ride through, to, *pôrtingo, âvi, âtum, 1.*  
 ridiculous, *ridiculus, a, um; absurdus, a, um.*  
 right (adj.), *rectus, a, um; probus, a, um; right hand, dexter, lera, tertium.*

## RIGHT.

right (*ults*), *ius, iuris, n.*  
 rightly, *rectè, adv.*; *bene, v.*  
 rigidly, *intensè, adv.*  
 ring, *annulus, l. m.*  
 rise, to, *surgere, surrexi, surrectum, 3.*  
 rival, *rivalis, l. m.*; *acmulus, l. m.* (p. 107)  
 river, *fluvius, l. m.*; *flumen, l. m.* (p. 6)  
 road, *via, ac, f.*; *iter, itin-*  
*eris, n.* (p. 69)  
 robe, *vestis, l. f.*  
 rock, *rupes, l. m.*; *saxum, l. n.*  
 rod, *virga, ac, f.*  
 Roman, *Romanus, a, um.*  
 Rome, *Roma, ac, f.*; *of Rome* may often be translated by the *adj.*: as *the young men of Rome, Romanæ juventutis.*  
 Romulus, *Romulus, l. m.*  
 room, = *space, locus, l. m.* (10 pl.) *m.* and *n.* = *chamber, conclave, l. n.*  
 round, *circum, circa, prep.* (gov. acc.)  
 rout, to, *fugere, avi, atum, 1.*  
 ruffian, *profligo, avi, atum, 1.*  
 route, *via, ac, f.*; *iter, itineris, n.*  
 rower, *remex, l. g. m.*: *the whole crew of rowers, remigium, l. n.*  
 royal, *regius, a, um*; *regalis, e.*  
 rugged, *asper, æm, frum*; *durus, a, um*; *prærupus, a, um.*  
 ruin, *ruina, ac, f.*; *exitium, l. n.*  
 ruinous, *exiliosus, a, um*; *exilis, e.*  
 rule, to, *regere, xi, ctum, 3.*  
 run, to, *currere, avi, atum, 1.* (with *dat.*); *dolitor, atus sum, 1.*  
 run, to, *currere, avi, atum, 1.*  
 run to and fro, to, *concursare, avi, atum, 1.*  
 rush, to, *currere, avi, atum, 1.* (p. 15); *me profecto, feci, ctum, 1.*  
 rustic, *rusticus, a, um*; *agrestis, e* (p. 4).

## S

Sacred, *sacer, cra, crum*; *sacrus, a, um* (p. 9).  
 sacrifice, *sacrificium, l. n.*; *sacra, orum, n.*  
 sad, *tristis, e.*  
 sadness, *tristitia, ac, f.*  
 sail, *avis, l. m.*; *luctus, l. m.*

## SEMIRAMIS.

safety, *salus, utis, f.*; *in safety, incolomis, e*; *salvus, a, um.*  
 sagacious, *acutus, a, um*; *sagax, acis.*  
 Saguntine, *Saguntinus, a, um.*  
 Saguntum, *Saguntum, l. n.* and *Saguntus, l. f.*  
 sail, to, *navigare, avi, atum, 1.*  
*To sail by, praeterchor, vectus sum, 3.*  
 sailor, *navia, ac, m.*; *navita, ac, m.*  
 sake: *P. h. r.*: *for the sake of, gratia, causa, with gen.*  
 same, *idem, eadem, idem.*  
 same number, *utidem, ad.*  
 save, = *except, praeter, prep.* with *acc.*  
 save, to, *servare, avi, atum, 1.*  
 saving, *dictum, l. n.*; *as the saying is, ut aiunt.*  
 say, to, *dicere, xi, ctum, 3.*  
 = *report, fero, tuli, latum.*  
 scanty, *parvus, a, um*; *exiguus, a, um.*  
 Scipio, *Scipio, onis, m.*  
 scorch, to, *torcere, ui, totum, 2.*  
 = *burn, ustum, 1.*  
 scripture, *scriptura, ac, f.*  
 Scriptures, the, *Scriptura, drum, n.*  
 scruple (religious), *religio, onis, f.*  
 Scythian, *Scythes, ac, m.*  
 sea, *mare, l. n.*; *aequor, oris, n.*  
 sea, of or belonging to, *maritimus, a, um.*  
 sea-coast, *ora maritima, f.*  
 seat, *subsellium, l. n.*  
 seat, to, *considere, edi, esum, 3.*  
 second, *secundus, a, um.*  
 second time, *iterum, adv.*  
 secret, *arcanus, a, um*; *occultus, a, um*; *secretus, a, um.*  
 seditious, *seditiosus, a, um.*  
 see, to, *videre, vidi, visum, 3.*  
 seek, to, *quaerere, quaesivi, situm, 3.*  
 seek for, to, *expetere, ivi, itum, 4.*  
 seem, to, *videor, visus sum, 2.*  
 seer, *vates, l. n.* and *f.*  
 seize, to, *rapere* (arripere), *ul, ptum, 3.*  
 = *capere, cepi, captum, 3.*  
 seldom, *raro, adv.*  
 self, *ipse, a, um.*  
 sell, to, *vendere, dixi, ditum*; *venditum, dixi, ditum, 1.*  
 Semiramis, *Semiramis, idis, f.*

## SHADE.

Sempronius, *Sempronius, l. m.*  
 senate, *senatus, l. m.*; *senate House, curia, ac, f.*  
 senator, *senator, oris, m.*  
 send, to, *mittere, misi, missum, 3.*  
 = *as ambassador, lego, avi, atum, 1.*  
 send ahead, to, *praemittere, misi, missum, 3.*  
 send down, to, *demittere, misi, missum, 3.*  
 send for, to, *arcesso, tei, itum, 3.*  
 send forth, to, *emitte, misi, missum, 3.*  
 separate, to, *segrego, avi, atum, 1.*  
 sepulchre, *sepulcrum, l. n.*  
 serious, *gravis, e*; *serius, a, um.*  
 seriously, *graviter, adv.*  
 serpent, *draco, onis, m.*  
 servant, minister, *tri, m.*; *(female) famula, f.*; *ancilla, ac, f.* (p. 40).  
 serve, to, *servire, ivi and li, itum, 4.*  
 = *to be of service, prosum, fui, prodesset.*  
 service: *P. h. r.*: *to be of service to, prodesset, with dat.*; *on (military) service, militine.*  
 serviceable, *utilis, e*; *idoneus, a, um.*  
 Servius, *Servius, l. m.*  
 set, to, = *to place, ponere, posui, itum, 3.*  
 = *as the sun, occidit, cecidit, ctum, 3.*  
 set fire, to, *incendere, di, sum, 3.*  
 = *accendo, di, sum, 3.* (p. 21).  
 set out, to, *procedere, fecurus sum, 3.*  
 settle, to, *trans, constituere, ul, atum, 3.*  
 = *intrare, considere, edi, esum, 3.*  
 settlement, *sedes, l. f.*  
 seven, septem, *num. aug. indec.*  
 seventh, *septimus, a, um.*  
 sever, to, *separare, avi, atum, 1.*  
 = *sejungo, nxi, ctum, 3.*  
 = *to cut off, abscidit, idi, isum, 3.*  
 several, *complices, a.*  
 = *Alii quod, indec.*  
 severe, *gravis, e*; *severus, a, um*; *durus, a, um*; *acer, cris, ere.*  
 severely, *severè, adv.*  
 Severus, *Severus, l. m.*  
 sex, *sextus, l. m.*; *seculus, neut. indec.*  
 shade, *umbra, ac, f.*  
 shade, to, *umbro, avi, atum, 1.*

SHAKE, TO.

shake, to, *trama*, *agito*, *avi*, *atum*, *i*; *intrans*, *tramo*, *ul*, *i*.  
 shape, forma, *ae*, *f*.; *figura*, *ac*, *f*.  
 shatter, to, *quasso*, *quassi*, *quassum*, *i*; *frango*, *frangi*, *fractum*, *i*.; *of enemies*, *profligo*, *avi*, *atum*, *i*.  
 shattered, *quassus*, *a*, *um*; *shattered ships*, *quassae naves*; *fractus*, *a*, *um*; *afflictus*, *a*, *um*.  
 shear, to, *tondeo*, *tōndi*, *tonsum*, *2*.  
 shed, to, (*as dogs do their horns*) *exuo*, *ul*, *utum*, *i*.  
 sheep, *ovis*, *is*, *f*.; *videns*, *tis*, *f*.  
 shepherd, pastor, *eris*, *m*.  
 shepherd, of or belonging to, *pastoralis*, *e*.  
 shield, *scutum*, *i*, *n*.; *clipeus*, *i*, *m*. (p. 73).  
 shift, to, = to move, *trans*, *moveo*, *movi*, *motum*, *2*.  
 ship, *navigium*, *i*, *n*.; *navis*, *is*, *f*.; *puppis*, *is*, *f*. (poet.).  
 ship-captain, *nāvarchus*, *i*, *m*.  
 short, *bravīs*, *e*; *parvus*, *a*, *um*; (*scanty*) *exiguus*, *a*, *um*.  
 shortly, = by and by, *mox*, *ad*.; = *briefly*, *brevis*, *adv*.  
 shoulder, *humerus*, *i*, *m*.  
 shout, to, *clamo*, *avi*, *atum*, *i*.  
 shout out together, to, *cauciamo*, *avi*, *atum*, *i*.  
 shouting, *clamor*, *eris*, *m*.  
 show, to, *ostendo*, *di*, *tum*, *i*; *monstro*, *avi*, *atum*, *i*; *iudico*, *avi*, *atum*, *i*.  
 shrine, *adytum*, *i*, *n*.; *dēlabrum*, *i*, *n*.  
 shudder at, to, *horreo*, *ul*, *i*; *horresco*, *ul*, *i*.  
 shut, shut-up, to, *intercludo*, *si*, *sum*, *i*.  
 shut-in, to, *claudio*, *si*, *sum*, *i*.  
 3.  
 Sichaens, *Sichaens*, *i*, *m*.  
 Sicilian, *Sicilius*, *a*, *um*.  
 Sicily, *Sicilia*, *ae*, *f*.  
 sick, *aeger*, *gra*, *grum*; *aegrotus*, *a*, *um*.  
 side, *latus*, *eris*, *n*.; = *party*, *pars*, *tis*, *f*. (often *pt*).  
 Sidorian, *Sidorius*, *a*, *um*.  
 siego, *obsideo*, *onis*, *f*.  
 signal, *signum*, *i*, *n*.  
 signify, to (Ex. 18), *sēno*, *ul*, *itum*, *i*.; = to announce, *edico*, *xi*, *ctum*, *3*.  
 silence, *silentium*, *i*, *n*.; *the habit of silence*, *taeturnitas*, *stia*, *f*. *in silence*, *tāctus*, *a*, *um*.

SOFTEN, TO.

silver, *argentum*, *i*, *n*.; *of silver*, *argentus*, *a*, *um*.  
 similar, *similis*, *e*.  
 Simonides, *Simōnides*, *is*, *m*.  
 sin, to, *pecco*, *avi*, *atum*, *i*.  
 sin, *peccatum*, *i*, *n*.  
 since, *post*, *prep*. (gov. *acc*.); *postea*, *adv*.  
 sinew, *nervus*, *i*, *m*.; *in fig. sense*, *plur*.  
 sing, to, *cāno*, *cēcini*, *cantum*, *3*; *canto*, *avi*, *atum*, *i*.  
 single, *ūnus*, *a*, *um*; *singuli*, *ae*, *a*, *adj*.  
 singly, *singulātum*, *adv*.; *singuli*, *ae*, *a*, *adj*.  
 sink, to, *trans*, *cubmergo*, *si*, *sum*, *i*; *intrans*, *sido* (*subido*), *idi*, *3*.  
 sister, *soror*, *eris*, *f*.  
 Sisyphus, *Sisyphus*, *i*, *m*.  
 Sisyphus, of or belonging to, *Sisyphus*, *a*, *um*.  
 situated, *pōitus*, *a*, *um*; *altus*, *a*, *um*.  
 six, *sex*, *num*. *adj*. *index*.  
 sixteen, *sexdecim*, *index*.  
 sixteen, *sexdecimus*, *a*, *um*.  
 sixty, *sexaginta*, *index*.  
 size, *magnitudo*, *inis*, *f*.  
 skilful, *skilled*, *pertus*, *a*, *um*; *sciens*, *tis* (p. 36); *both with gen*.  
 skin, *cutis*, *is*, *f*.; *pellis*, *is*, *f*.; *corium*, *i*, *n*. (p. 67).  
 sky, *coelum*, *i*, *n*.  
 slaughter, *caedes*, *is*, *f*.; *strages*, *is*, *f*.  
 slaughter, to, *caedo*, *cēdi*, *caesum*, *3*; *trūcido*, *avi*, *atum*, *i* (p. 3).  
 slave, *servus*, *i*, *m*.; *mancipium*, *i*, *n*. (p. 40).  
 slave, to be *a*, *servio*, *ivi* and *itum*, *4* (*with dat.*).  
 slavery, *servitus*, *utis*, *f*.  
 slay, to, *interimo*, *emi*, *emptum*, *3*; *jūgulo*, *avi*, *atum*, *i*; *neco*, *avi*, *atum*, *i*.  
 sleep, *somnus*, *i*, *m*.; *sōpor*, *eris*, *m*.  
 sleep, to, *dormio*, *ivi*, *itum*, *4*.  
 small, *parvus*, *a*, *um*.  
 small, very, *parvulus*, *a*, *um*.  
 smoke, *fūmus*, *i*, *m*.  
 snare, *insidiae*, *arum*, *f*.  
 snatch, to, *rāpio*, *ul*, *raptum*, *3*; *to snatch from*, *eripio*, *ul*, *reptum*, *3*.  
 so, *sic*, *ita*, *tam*, *adv*.  
 so many, *ita*, *index*.  
 Socrates, *Socrates*, *is*, *m*.  
 soften, to, *mollio*, *ivi*, *itum*, *4*; *lenio*, *ivi*, *itum*, *4*.

SPEND, TO.

softly, *leniter*, *adv*.; *molliter*, *adv*.  
 soil, *solum*, *i*, *n*.  
 soldier, *miles*, *itis*, *m*. and *f*.  
 Solon, *Solon*, *onis*, *m*.  
 some, *nonnulli*, *ae*, *a*; *et quot*, *index*.; *some one*, *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam*; *aliquis* *que*, *quod* or *quid*.  
 somehow, *quodammodo*, *adv*.  
 sometimes, *aliquando*, *adv*.; *interdum*, *adv*.; *nonnunquam*, *adv*. (p. 15).  
 somewhat (as *adv*), *aliquanto*, *aliquantum*.  
 son, *filius*, *i*, *m*.; *voc*. *fill*; *natus*, *i*, *m*.  
 song, *carmen*, *inis*, *n*.; *cantus*, *us*, *m*.  
 soon, *mox*, *adv*.; *cito*, *adv*.  
 soothsayer, *hāruspes*, *icis*, *m*.; *auspex*, *icis*, *m*.  
 Sophocles, *Sophocles*, *is*, *m*.  
 sorrow, *dolor*, *eris*, *m*.; *luctus*, *us*, *m*.  
 sorrow, to, *doleo*, *ul*, *itum*, *2*; *lūgeo*, *xi*, *ctum*, *2*; *moereo*, *ul*, *i*.  
 sorrowing, *moestus*, *a*, *um*.  
 sorrowfully (Ex. 37), *dolens*, *tis*.  
 sort, *genus*, *eris*, *n*.  
 soul, *ānima*, *i*, *m*. (p. 8).  
 sovereign, *rex*, *rēgis*, *m*.  
 sovereignty, *regnum*, *i*, *n*.  
 sovereign-power, *impērium*, *il*, *n*.  
 sow, to, *sēro*, *sēvi*, *ātum*, *3*; *spargo*, *si*, *sum*, *i*.  
 space, *spātium*, *i*, *n*.; *locus*, *i*, *m*.; *space of two, three days*, *biduum*, *triduum*, *i*, *n*.  
 Spain, *Hispānia*, *ae*, *f*.  
 Spaniard, *Hispānus*, *i*, *m*.  
 Spanish, *Hispānicus*, *a*, *um*.  
 spare, to, *parco*, *pāperi*, *paritum* and *parsum*, *3* (*with dat.*).  
 Sparta, *Sparta*, *ae*, *f*.; *Lacedaemon*, *onis*, *f*.  
 Spartan, *Spartānus*, *a*, *um*; *Laco*, *onis*, *m*.  
 speak, to, *loquor*, *locūtus sum*; *faci*, *factus* (p. 6).  
 spear, *hasta*, *ae*, *f*.; *hastile*, *is*, *n*.; *cuspis*, *ilis*, *f*. (point).  
 species, *genus*, *eris*, *n*.  
 speech, *oratio*, *onis*, *f*.; = *a saying*, *vox*, *voceis*, *f*.  
 speed, *celeritas*, *utis*, *f*.; *velocitas*, *utis*, *f*.  
 speedily, *celeriter*, *adv*.; *cito*, *adv*.; *mox*, *adv*.  
 spend, to, *impendo*, *di*, *sum*, *3*; *consumo*, *impulsum*, *3*; (*of time*) *ago*, *egit*, *actum*, *3*.

SPIDER.	SUPERBUS.	TACKLING.
<p>spider, <i>aranea</i>, ae, f.; <i>aranea</i>, ae, f.</p> <p>spirit, <i>spirits</i>, <i>animas</i>, i, m. (p. 8).</p> <p>spoils, <i>spolia</i>, <i>orum</i>, n.; <i>exuviae</i>, <i>orum</i>, f.</p> <p>spoil, to, <i>praedor</i>, <i>atus sum</i>, i; <i>spolio</i>, <i>avi</i>, <i>atum</i>, i; <i>diripio</i>, <i>ul</i>, <i>reptum</i>, 3.</p> <p>spot, = <i>place</i>, <i>locus</i>, i, m. (pl. <i>loci</i> and <i>loca</i>). = <i>a mark</i>, <i>macula</i>, ae, f.</p> <p>spotless, <i>purus</i>, a, um.</p> <p>spring, <i>ver</i>, <i>veris</i>, n.</p> <p>spring (of water), <i>fons</i>, <i>fons</i>, m.</p> <p>spring, to, <i>sailo</i>, <i>ul</i>, <i>sultum</i>, i.</p> <p>spring from, to, <i>orior</i>, <i>atus sum</i>, 4 <i>dep</i>.</p> <p>sprinkle, to, <i>aspergo</i>, <i>ei</i>, <i>sum</i>, 3; <i>aspergo</i>, <i>si</i>, <i>sum</i>, 3.</p> <p>sprung from, <i>ortus</i>, a, um (orior, —followed by <i>abl.</i>).</p> <p>stake, to be at, <i>pass</i>, of <i>ago</i>, <i>egi</i>, <i>actum</i>, 3 (with <i>de</i>).</p> <p>stand, to, <i>sto</i>, <i>steti</i>, <i>statum</i>, i.</p> <p>stand round, to, = <i>surround</i>: <i>circumsto</i>, <i>steti</i>, <i>statum</i>, i; <i>circumvenio</i>, <i>eni</i>, <i>entum</i>, 4.</p> <p>standard, <i>signum</i>, i, n.</p> <p>state, = <i>commonwealth</i>, <i>civitas</i>, <i>utis</i>, f.; = <i>condition</i>, <i>status</i>, <i>us</i>, m.</p> <p>state, to, <i>dico</i>, <i>xi</i>, <i>tum</i>, 3.</p> <p>Statilius, <i>Statilius</i>, i, n.</p> <p>station, to, <i>pone</i>, <i>ponei</i>, <i>positum</i>, 3; <i>loco</i>, <i>avi</i>, <i>atum</i>, i.</p> <p>statue, <i>statua</i>, ae, f.; <i>signum</i>, i, n.; <i>simulacrum</i>, i, n.</p> <p>stay, to, <i>intrane</i>, <i>maneo</i>, <i>ei</i>, <i>sum</i>, 2; <i>moror</i> (commoror), <i>atus sum</i>, i; <i>trans</i>, <i>sisto</i>, <i>steti</i>, <i>statum</i>, 3.</p> <p>steadiness, <i>constantia</i>, ae, f.; <i>stabilitas</i>, <i>utis</i>, f.</p> <p>steady, <i>constans</i>, <i>utis</i>.</p> <p>step, <i>gradus</i>, <i>us</i>, m.; <i>gressus</i>, <i>us</i>, m.</p> <p>stern, <i>adj.</i>, <i>durus</i>, a, um.</p> <p>stern, <i>subis</i>, <i>puppis</i>, <i>is</i>, f.</p> <p>still, <i>adhuc</i>, <i>adv.</i></p> <p>stir up, to, <i>moveo</i>, <i>ovi</i>, <i>otum</i>, 2; <i>solicito</i>, <i>ovi</i>, <i>atum</i>, i.</p> <p>stone, <i>lapide</i>, <i>idis</i>, m.; <i>saxum</i>, i, n.</p> <p>storey, <i>tabulatum</i>, i, n.</p> <p>stormy, <i>fractus</i>, a, um (lit. <i>angry</i>).</p> <p>straggle, to, <i>pallor</i>, <i>atus sum</i>, i; <i>erro</i>, <i>avi</i>, <i>atum</i>, i; <i>dilabor</i>, <i>lapsus sum</i>, 3.</p> <p>straight, <i>rectus</i>, a, um; <i>directus</i>, a, um.</p> <p>strategy, <i>consilium</i>, i, n. (plan).</p> <p>straw: <i>Phr.</i>: <i>to value at a</i></p>	<p>straw, <i>flocci</i>, <i>nauci</i>, <i>hujus aestimare</i>.</p> <p>stream, <i>rivus</i>, i, m.</p> <p>strength, <i>vires</i>, <i>lum</i>, pl. f.; <i>robur</i>, <i>oris</i>, n.</p> <p>strengthen, to, <i>firmo</i> (confirmo), <i>avi</i>, <i>atum</i>, i.</p> <p>stretch, to, <i>tendo</i>, <i>tatendi</i>, <i>tensum</i> and <i>tum</i>, 3; <i>porrigo</i>, <i>rexi</i>, <i>rectum</i>, 3; <i>pertrahere</i>, <i>ul</i>, <i>trahum</i>, 2 (Ex. 34).</p> <p>strike, to (of lightning), <i>taugo</i>, <i>idi</i>, <i>iditum</i>, 3.</p> <p>strive, to, <i>certo</i>, <i>avi</i>, <i>atum</i>, i; <i>contor</i>, <i>nisus</i> and <i>nixus</i>, 3.</p> <p>strong, <i>firmus</i>, a, um; <i>fortis</i>, e; <i>validus</i>, a, um.</p> <p>struggle, <i>certamen</i>, <i>inis</i>, n.</p> <p>study, <i>studium</i>, i, n.</p> <p>style, <i>dictio</i>, <i>onis</i>, f.</p> <p>subdue, to, <i>paco</i>, <i>avi</i>, <i>atum</i>, i; <i>vinco</i>, <i>vici</i>, <i>ctum</i>, 3; <i>domo</i>, <i>ul</i>, <i>atum</i>, i; <i>subigo</i>, <i>egi</i>, <i>actum</i>, 3.</p> <p>subject: <i>Phr.</i>: <i>by his subjects</i>, a <i>subis</i>.</p> <p>submit, to, = <i>to obey</i>, <i>pareo</i>, <i>ul</i>, <i>atum</i>, 2 = <i>to undergo</i>, <i>pator</i>, <i>passus sum</i>, 3.</p> <p>subtle, <i>callidus</i>, a, um; <i>subtilis</i>, e.</p> <p>succeed, to, <i>succedo</i>, <i>cessi</i>, <i>cessum</i>, 3 (with <i>dat.</i> of person).</p> <p>success, <i>successus</i>, <i>us</i>, m.; <i>res bene gesta</i>.</p> <p>successful, <i>felix</i>, <i>icis</i>; <i>fortunatus</i>, a, um.</p> <p>succour, to, <i>succorro</i>, <i>rri</i>, <i>sum</i>, 3; <i>subvenio</i>, <i>veni</i>, <i>ventum</i>, 4; <i>auxilio</i>, <i>atus sum</i>, i (all with <i>dat.</i>).</p> <p>such, <i>talis</i>, e (of such a kind); <i>tantus</i>, a, um (so great).</p> <p>sudden, <i>sabitus</i>, a, um; <i>repentinus</i>, a, um.</p> <p>suddenly, <i>sabito</i>, <i>adv.</i>; <i>repente</i>, <i>adv.</i></p> <p>Suessiones, <i>Suessiones</i>, <i>um</i>, m.</p> <p>suffer, to, <i>pator</i>, <i>passus sum</i>, 3; <i>fero</i>, <i>idi</i>, <i>iditum</i>, 3 (p. 57).</p> <p>sufficient } <i>satis</i>, <i>adv.</i> (often sufficiently } with <i>partitive</i> gen.).</p> <p>suitable, <i>utilis</i>, e; <i>opportunus</i>, a, um.</p> <p>Sulla, <i>Sulla</i>, ae, m.</p> <p>Sulpicius, <i>Sulpicius</i>, i, m.</p> <p>sum, <i>summa</i>, ae, f.</p> <p>summer, <i>aestas</i>, <i>utis</i>, f.</p> <p>summit, <i>cacumen</i>, <i>inis</i>, n.; <i>vertex</i>, <i>icis</i>, m.; <i>the summit of the hill</i>, <i>summus mons</i>.</p> <p>summon, <i>voco</i> (of a number, <i>convoco</i>), <i>avi</i>, <i>atum</i>, i.</p> <p>sun, <i>sol</i>, <i>solis</i>, m.; (poet.) <i>Phoebeus</i>, i, m.</p> <p>Superbus, <i>Saperbus</i>, i, m.</p>	<p>superior, <i>superior</i>, <i>us</i>; <i>maior</i>, <i>na</i>.</p> <p>superior, to be, <i>valio</i>, <i>ul</i>, <i>atum</i>, 2.</p> <p>superstition, <i>superstitio</i>, <i>onis</i>, f. (Ex. 28); <i>religio</i>, <i>onis</i>, f.</p> <p>supper, <i>coena</i>, ae, f.</p> <p>supplication, <i>supplicatio</i>, <i>onis</i>, f.; <i>prece</i>, <i>precenti</i>, <i>prece</i>; <i>pk. preces</i>, f.</p> <p>supply, <i>copia</i>, ae, f. (of food); <i>commercatus</i>, <i>us</i>, m.</p> <p>supply, to, <i>praebeo</i>, <i>ul</i>, <i>atum</i>, 2; <i>sufficio</i>, <i>feci</i>, <i>factum</i>, 3.</p> <p>support, to, <i>sustineo</i>, <i>ul</i>, <i>entum</i>, 2 = <i>to nourish</i>, <i>alio</i>, <i>ul</i>, <i>altum</i> and <i>atum</i>, 3.</p> <p>suppose, to, <i>puto</i>, <i>avi</i>, <i>atum</i>, 1; <i>opinor</i>, <i>atus sum</i>, i; <i>credo</i>, <i>idi</i>, <i>iditum</i>, 3; <i>arbitror</i>, <i>atus sum</i>.</p> <p>supremacy, <i>dominatio</i>, <i>onis</i>, f.; <i>imperium</i>, i, n.</p> <p>supreme, <i>supremus</i> (ar. <i>summus</i>), a, um.</p> <p>surname, to, <i>appello</i>, <i>avi</i>, <i>atum</i>, i.</p> <p>surname, <i>cognomen</i>, <i>inis</i>, n.</p> <p>surpass, to, <i>antecedo</i>, <i>cessi</i>, <i>cessum</i>, 3; <i>superio</i>, <i>avi</i>, <i>atum</i>, 1; <i>praesto</i>, <i>sisti</i>, <i>statum</i>, i; <i>supra esse</i> (Ex. 49).</p> <p>surprise, to, = <i>to meet suddenly</i>, <i>excipio</i>, <i>cepi</i>, <i>ceptum</i>, 3.</p> <p>surrender, <i>dedditio</i>, <i>onis</i>, f.</p> <p>surrender, to, <i>dedo</i>, <i>dedidi</i>, <i>deditum</i>, 3; <i>trado</i>, <i>diditum</i>, 3.</p> <p>surround, to, <i>circumsto</i>, <i>steti</i>, <i>statum</i>, i; <i>circumdo</i>, <i>dedi</i>, <i>datum</i>, 3 = <i>to put something around another thing</i>.</p> <p>survive, to, <i>supersum</i>, <i>fui</i>, <i>esse</i> (with <i>dat.</i>).</p> <p>suspect, to, <i>auspicio</i>, <i>atus sum</i>, i.</p> <p>suspected, <i>suspectus</i>, a, um.</p> <p>suspicion, <i>suspicio</i>, <i>onis</i>, f.</p> <p>sustain, to, <i>sustineo</i>, <i>ul</i>, <i>entum</i>, 2.</p> <p>swallow, <i>hirundo</i>, <i>inis</i>, f.</p> <p>sweet, <i>dulcis</i>, e; <i>suaavis</i>, e (p. 6).</p> <p>sword, <i>gladius</i>, i, m.; <i>ferum</i>, i, n.</p> <p>Syracuse, <i>Syracusae</i>, <i>arvae</i>, f.</p> <p>Syria, <i>Syria</i>, ae, f.</p> <p>Syrian, <i>Syrius</i>, a, um. <i>itylacus</i>, a, um.</p>

TACTICS.

tactics (military), militiæ, *m.*  
 take, to, capio, cēpi, cap-  
 tum, 3; sumo, p̄si, p̄sum, 3;  
 prehendo, di, sum, 3; = to con-  
 duct; deduco, duxi, ductum, 3.  
 take away, to, abripio, ui,  
 eptum, 3; eripio, ui, eptum, 3.  
 take care, to, curo, avi,  
 ctum, 1.  
 take from, to, eximo  
 (admo), emi, emptum, 3; de-  
 traho, xi, ctum, 3.  
 take up, to, sumo, p̄si,  
 ptum, 3; tollo, sustuli, -abla-  
 rum, 3; to take up arms, arma  
 capere.  
 talent, a, talentum, l, n.;  
 = ability, ingenium, l, n.; la-  
 culas, ātis, *f.*  
 tall, procerus, a, um; in-  
 gens, tis.  
 tamarisk, myrica, *f.*  
 Tarentine, Tarentinus, a,  
 um.  
 Tarentum, Tarentum, l, n.  
 Tarpeian, Tarpēus, a, um.  
 Tarquin or Tarquinius,  
 Tarquinus, l, m.  
 Tarragona, Tarraco, ōnis,  
 f.  
 tarry, to, moror (com-  
 moror), ātus sum, 3; cunctor,  
 ātus sum, 1.  
 task, opus, ōris, n.; pen-  
 sum, l, n.  
 taste, to, gusto (dēgusto),  
 āvi, ātum, 1.  
 teach, to, doceo, ui, ctum,  
 2; ōrdo, lvi, itum, 4; prae-  
 cipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3.  
 teacher, magister, ri, m.  
 tear, lacrima, ae, *f.*  
 tear, to, dilanio, āvi, ātum,  
 1; lacerō, āvi, ātum, 2; scindo,  
 cecidi, actum, 3.  
 tell, to, dico, xi, ctum, 3;  
 rēfiro, tūi, ātum, 3; narro,  
 āvi, ātum.  
 temperance, mōderatio,  
 ōnis, *f.*; temperantia, ae, *f.*  
 temperate, mōdicus, a,  
 nm; temperans, tis; abstinentia,  
 tis.  
 temple, aedes, is (in the  
 sing.); fānum, l, n.; dēlābrum,  
 l, n. (p. 42); temples (of the  
 head), tempora, ōrum, n. pl.  
 ten, decem, indec. num.  
 ady. (distributive) dēni, ae, a.  
 tenacious, tēnax, ācis.  
 tenth, decimus, a, um.  
 Terentius Varro, Tēren-  
 tius, l; Varro, ōnis, m.  
 terminate, to, finio, lvi,  
 num, 4; conficio, feci, fec-  
 tum, 3.

THROUGH.

termination, finis, is, m.;  
 ēventus, ūs, m.  
 Terminus, Tērius, l, m.  
 terrible, terribilis, e; ti-  
 mendus, a, um.  
 terrify, to, terreo, ui,  
 itum, 2.  
 territory, rēgio, ōnis, *f.*;  
 ager, āvi, m.; finis, ium, m. pl.  
 Terrors, terror, ōris, m.  
 Teutons, Teutōnes, um, m.  
 than, quam, conj.  
 thanks, grātia, ārum, *f.*  
 that (pron.), ille, illa, illud;  
 is, ea, id; iste, a, ut = in order  
 that, so that, ut, conj.  
 theatre, theatrum, l, n.  
 Theban, Thēbanus, a, um.  
 Thebes, Thēbae, ārum, m.  
 theft, furtum, l, n.; latro-  
 cinium, l (robbery).  
 Themistocles, Thēmistō-  
 cles, is, n.  
 themselves, p̄ of ipse,  
 a, um.  
 then, tum, tunc, adv.; eo  
 tempore, at that time.  
 thence, inde, adv.; illinc,  
 adv.; istinc, adv.  
 Theophrastus, Theophras-  
 tus, l, m.  
 there, ibi, adv.; illic, adv.;  
 istic, adv.  
 therefore, igitur, conj.  
 thereupon, inde, adv.  
 thing, res, ei, *f.*; nēgotium,  
 l, n.  
 think, to, p̄tō, āvi, ātum,  
 1; censeo, ui, itum, 2; opinor,  
 ātus sum, 1; aestimo, āvi,  
 ātum 1; habeo, ui, itum, 2  
 (lit. hold); cogito, āvi, ātum,  
 1.  
 third, tertius, a, um.  
 thirst, sitis, is, *f.*  
 thirsty, sitiens, tis; (poet.)  
 āridus, a, um.  
 thirty, triginta, indec.  
 thirty-eight, duo-de-quad-  
 rāginta, indec.  
 this, hic, hanc, hoc.  
 thither, eo, adv.; illuc,  
 adv.; istuc, adv.  
 Thos, Thos,antis, m.  
 though, quamvis, conj.;  
 etsi, conj.  
 thought, cōgētiō, ōnis, *f.*;  
 anxious thought, cura, ae, *f.*  
 thoroughly, prorsus, adv.;  
 p̄nitus, adv.; omnino, adv.  
 thousand, mille (indec. in  
 sing.); p̄ter, millia, ium.  
 threat, minas, ārum, *f.*  
 three, tres, tria.  
 through, per, prep. (with  
 acc.); = on account of, propter,  
 prep. (with acc.).

TREDIA.

throughout, p̄r, prep.  
 (with acc.).  
 throw, to, jacio, feci, jac-  
 tum, 3; to throw on the ground,  
 algere hūm (Ex. 30).  
 throw away, to, profligo  
 (abjicio), feci, fecum, 3; to  
 throw away an opportunity,  
 amittere occasiōnem.  
 throw down, dējicio, feci,  
 ectum, 3.  
 thunderbolt, fulmen, in-  
 i, n.  
 thus, sic, adv.; ita, adv.  
 Tiberius, Tiberius, l, m.  
 tidings, nuntius, l, m.  
 Tigris, Tigris, Idis, or is, m  
 and *f.*  
 time, tempus, ōris, n.;  
 actus, ātis, *f.*  
 timidly, timide, adv.  
 Timoleon, Timoleon, tis, m.  
 Titurius, Titurius, l, m.  
 to, at, prep. (with acc.).  
 to-day, hodie, adv.  
 together, una, adv.; simul,  
 adv.  
 toil, labor, ōris, m.  
 toilsome, laboriosus, a, um.  
 tongue, lingua, ae, *f.*  
 too, = also, etiam, adv.  
 too much, nimis, adv.  
 Torquatus, Torquātus, l,  
 m.  
 toss, to, jacto, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 touch, to,ango, tetigi,  
 tactum, 3.  
 towards, erga, or in, with  
 acc.  
 tower, turris, is, *f.*; arx,  
 eis, *f.*  
 town, oppidum, l, n.; urbs,  
 is, *f.*  
 Trajan, Trājanus, l, m.  
 transact, to, āgo, ēgi, ac-  
 tum, 3.  
 transparent, pellucidus  
 (perl.), a, um.  
 transport, to, transv̄ho,  
 vexi, vectum, 3; transporto,  
 āvi, ātum, 1.  
 Trasimenus, Trāsimēnus,  
 l, m.  
 traverse, to, transeo, fi,  
 itum, 4; transgredior, cessus,  
 3.  
 treachery, proditio, ōnis, *f.*  
 tread, to, calco, āvi, ātum,  
 1; to tread the stage, nitor,  
 sus, and xus, 3 (Ex. 31).  
 treasury (Ex. 44), publi-  
 cum, l, n.  
 treat, to, tracto, āvi, ātum,  
 1; ātor, ōsus sum, 3; = to  
 negotiate, āgo, ēgi, actum, 3.  
 Trebatius, Trēbatius, l, m.  
 Trebia, Trēbia, ae, *f.*

## TREBONIUS.

Trebonius, Trēbonius, i, m.  
tree, arbor, ōris, f.  
tremble, to, tremo, ul, 3.  
Treviri, Trēviri, ōrum, m.  
trial, periculum, i, n.; ex-  
perimentum, i, m.  
tribune, tribunus, i, m.  
tribuneship, tribunatus,  
i, s, m.

tribunition, tribunitionis, a,  
um.

trident, tridens, tis; (lit.  
point), cuspis, idis, f.

trifling, lēvis, e; parvus,  
a, um; very trifling, misminus,  
a, um (p. 94).

triumph, triumphus, i, m.

triumvir, triumviri, ōrum, m.

Trojan, Trōjānus, a, um.

Trojan women, illādes,  
um, f.

troop, turba, ae, f.; turma,  
ae, f. (of cavalry).

trophy, trōpaeum, i, n.

trouble, labor, ōris, m. (an-  
noyance); dolor, ōris, m. (sor-  
row); cura, ae, f. (anxiety).

Troy, Trōja, ae, f.

truce, indūctae, arum, f.

true, verus, a, um.

trust, to, fido (confido),  
tisus sum, 3; credo, didi, di-  
tum, 3 (both usu. with dat.).

trusty, fidelis, e; fidus, a,  
um; certus, a, um.

truth, vēritas, atis, f.

try, to, tento, āvi, ātum, 1  
(= to prove); expōior, certus  
sum, 3 (= to endeavour).

Tullius, Tullius, i, m.

Tullus, Tullus, i, m.

tumult, tālmultus, ōs, m.

turn out, to, = to become,  
ēvādo, si, sum, 3; fio, factus  
sum, 3.

Tuscan, Tuscus, a, um.

twelve, duodēcim.

twenty, viginti; viciēti, ae,  
a (distrib.).

twice, bis, adv.

two, duo, ae, o (distrib.).

tyrant, tyrannus, i, m.

tyrant, tyrannus, i, m.  
(p. 1).

## U

Ulysses, Ūlysses, i, m.

unacquainted, inasciens,  
tis; ignārus, a, um (with g-n).

unavenged, inultus, a, um.

uncertain, incertus, a, um.

## UNWORTHY.

uncongenial, aliēnus, a,  
um.

unconquered, invictus, a,  
um.

uncover, to, dētēgo, xi,  
ctum, 3.

undaunted, impāvidus, a,  
um.

under, sub, prep. (gov. acc.  
and abl.).

undergo, to, subeo, H, ūum,  
4; perfēro, ūli, ūum, 3.

understand, to, intelligo,  
lexi, lectum, 3.

undertake, to, suscipio,  
cepi, ceptum, 3; = to promise,  
rācipio, cepi, ceptum.

undertaking, inceptum, i,  
n.; coeptum, i, n.; opus, ōris,  
n.

undeserved, immēritus, a,  
um; poet. non dignus, literally,  
not worthy.

undeservedly, immērito,  
adv.

unequal, dispar, ōris.

unexpected, insperātus, a,  
um; nēcōpiātus, a, um.

unfavourable, adversus, a,  
um.

unfit, incommōdus, a, um.

unfriendly, inimicus, a,  
um; aliēnus, a, um.

unfortunate, miser, a, um.

ungrateful, ingrātus, a,  
um.

unhappy, miser, ōra, ōrum.

unhealthiness, aegritudo,  
inis, f. (of climate); grāvitās,  
atis, f.

unhurt, salvus, a, um; in-  
cōlūis, e (p. 5).

uninterruptedly, conti-  
nenter, adv.

unjust, inīustus, a, um.

unjustly, inīuste, adv.

unknown, ignōtus, a, um.

unless, nisi, or nī, conj.

unlike, dissimilis, e; dis-  
par, ōris.

unlucky, infelix, icis; in-  
faustus, a, um.

unmerciful, inīmis, e;  
inhūmānus, a, um.

unmountable, insup-  
erābilis, e.

until, donēc, adv.; dum,  
adv.

unusual, inīstātus, a, um;  
inīsolitus, a, um.

unwilling, invitus, a,  
um; (see St. Gr. § 341).

unwittingly, inīprudens,  
tis.

unworthy, indignus, a, um.

## VERY SMALL.

uplift, to, tollō, sustollō  
sublātum, 3.

uplifted, elātus, a, um.

upon, super, prep. (gov.  
acc. and abl.).

upper, superior, us.

upright, directus, a, um  
(dirigo).

uprightness, integritas,  
atis, f.

upwards, sursum, adv.

urge, to, insto, still, al-  
tum, 3.

use, usus, ōs, m.; consue-  
tudo, inis, f.

use, to, ūtor, ausus sum, 3  
(with abl.); to use force, vim  
addibere.

useful, ūtilis, e.

useless, inūtilis, e.

usual, solitus, a, um; des-  
titus, a, um.

usually, sēre, adv.; ple-  
rumque, adv.

Utica, Ūtica, ae, f.

utmost, summus, a, um.

## V

Vacate, to, vācūfācio  
feci, factum, 3.

vacant, vācuus, a, um

vacans, tis.

vain, vānus, a, um; inū-  
tilis, e; in vān, nēquidquam,  
adv.

Valerius, Vālerius, i, m.

valour, virtus, atis, f.

valutudo, inis, f.

value, prādum, i, n.

value, to, pendo, pēpendi,  
pensum, 3; to value highly,  
magis dūcere, fācere; to value  
at a low rate, parvi pendere.

vanity, vānitas, atis, f.;

inūtilitas, atis, f.

vanquish, to, vinco, vici,  
vicum, 3; dōmo, ul, ūum, 1.

varied, varius, a, um; di-  
various, versus, a, um; in-  
various ways, vārie, adv.

Varro, Varro, ōnis, m.

Varus, Varus, i, m.

Vell, Vell, ōrum, m.; the  
people-of, Vell, Vellentes, ōrum, m.

Vēneti, Vēneti, ōrum, m.

venture, to, audeo, ausus  
sum, 2.

Vercingetorix, Vercingē-  
torix, igis, m.

Verona, Vērōna, ae, f.

versatile, versutus, a, um.

very, admodum, adv.; valde,  
adv.; magnopere, adv.

very small, parvulus, a,  
um.

VESPASIAN.

Vespasian, Vespasianus, i, m.  
vessel, vas, vasis, n.; vasculum, i, n.  
vestal, vestalis, a.  
veteran, veterānus, a, um.  
vex, to, augo, xl, 3; vexo, avi, atum, i.  
vexed at, to be, taedet, *impers.* (with acc.)  
vice, vitium, i, n.  
viceroy, praefectus, i, m.  
victorious, victor, oris, m.; victrix, icis, f.  
victory, victōria, ae, f.  
view, visus, us, m.  
vigorously, strēmūs, adv.; vīrosē, adv.  
vigour, vis, acc. vim, abl. vi, f.  
vine, vīlis, is, f.; palmea, is, m.  
vineyard, vinea, ae, f.; vinetum, i, n.  
violate, to, violō, avi, um, i.  
violated, violātus, a, um.  
violent, violentus, a, um.  
virgin, virgo, inis, f.  
virtue, virtus, ūtis, f.  
virtuous, sanctus, a, um; iustus, a, um.  
voice, vox, vōcis, f.  
Volsci, Volsci, ōrum, m.  
Volsinii, Volsinii, ōrum, n.  
volume, liber, bri, m.; vōlūmen, inis, n.  
vowel, vōcālis, is, f.  
Vulcan, Vulcanus, i, m.  
vulture, vulturius, i, m.

W

Wage, to, (of war) gero, gerere, gessum, 3.  
wait, to, mōneo, si, sum, 2; *to wait for*, praestolor, ūtus sum, i; expecto, avi, atum, i.  
walk, to, ambulo, avi, um, i.  
wall, mūrus, i, m.; pāries, is, m. (p. 1).  
wander, to, erro, avi, atum, i; pālor, ūtus sum, i; *to wander about*, vāgor, ūtus sum, i.  
wandering, a, discursus, us, m.  
want, Egestas, ūtis, f.; Inopia, ae, f.  
want, to, cāreo, ul, itum (gov. abl.); 2; Egeo, ul (gov. abl. and gen.); *to be wanting*, Esum, fui, esse.  
wanting (= deprived of), c. bus, a, um.

WHICHEVER.

war, bellum, i, n.  
ward off, to, arceo, ul, itum, 2; defendo, di, sum, 3; propulso, avi, atum, i.  
warlike, bellicosus, a, um; ferox, ōcis.  
warn, to, mōneo (admōneo), ul, itum, 2.  
waste, to, consūmo, psi, ptum, 3; profundo, di, ūsum, 3; amitto, misi, missum (of time, to lose).  
watch, to, observo, avi, atum.  
watch-fire, ignis, is, m.  
watchful, vigil, ille; vigilans, tis.  
watchful, to be, vigilo, avi, atum, i.  
water, aqua, ae, f.  
wave, unda, ae, f.; fluctus, us, m.  
way, via, ae, f.; iter, itinēris, n.  
we, nos, tri, pron.  
weakness, infirmitas, ūtis, f.; imbecillitas, ūtis, f.  
wealth, divitiae, ūrum, f.; opes, um, f.  
wealthy, dives, itis; ite-cuples, ūtis; opulentus, a, um.  
wear, to, tēro (attero), trivi, tritum, 3.  
wear away, to, consūmo, psi, ptum.  
weary, lassus, a, um; fessus, a, um; fatigatus, a, um. *I am weary of*, taedet me (with gen.).  
weary, to, fātigo, avi, atum, i; lasso, avi, atum, i.  
weave, to, texo, xui, xum, 3.  
weep, to, lacrimo, avi, atum, i; fleo, evi, atum, 2.  
weight, grāvis, ūtis, f.  
weighty, grāvis, e.  
welcome, grātus, a, um; iacundus, a, um.  
well, bēne, adv.; prōbe, adv.  
well-known, cognitus, a, um; nōtus, a, um.  
what, *interrog.*, quis, quae, quid, or quod.  
whatever, quidvis, quicunque, conj.  
when, quum, conj.; quando, conj.  
whence, unde, conj.  
where, ubi, āblam, conj.  
wherefore, quāobrem, conj.; quāpropter, conj.  
wherever, ubique, adv.; āblis.  
whether, utrum, conj.; sive, conj.  
which, qui, quae, quod.  
whichever, quicunque, quacunque, quodcunque, acc.

WITHIN.

while, dum, conj.; quamdiu, conj.  
whit, (= just to little) tantillum, i, n.; not a whit, nihil admōdum.  
whither, quo, conj.  
whithersoever, quocunque, adv.  
who, qui, quae, quod.  
whole, tētus, a, um; omnia, e; universus, a, um; cunctus, a, um.  
whosoever, quicunque quacunque, quodcunque.  
why, cur, conj.; quārē, conj.; quāobrem, conj.  
wicked, nequam; comp. nequior; sup. nequissimus.  
wide, lātus, a, um; spātiosus, a, um.  
widely, lātē, adv.; prōcul, adv.; *far and wide*, longe lateque.  
wife, uxor, ōris, f.; conjux, ūgis, f.  
wild, ferus, a, um; agrestis, e.  
wilderness, solitudo, inis, f.; desertum, i, n.  
will, vōluntas, ūtis, f.  
will, testāmentum, i, n.  
will, to, vōlo, vōlui, velle.  
willing, vōlens, tis; libens, tis.  
willingly, libenter, adv.; ultro, adv.  
win, to, pāro, avi, atum, i; adipiscor, adeptus sum, 3.  
wind, ventus, i, m.  
wine, vinum, i, n.; mērum, i, n. (p. 35).  
wing, āla, ae, f.  
winter, hiems, ūtis, f.; *aut.* (as winter months), hibernus, a, um.  
winter quarters, hiberna, ōrum, n.  
wintry, hibernus, a, um.  
wisdom, sapiētia, ae, f.; prudentia, ae, f.; consilium, i, n. (p. 55).  
wise, sapiēns, tis, prudēns, tis.  
wise, to be, sapiō, ivi or ii, 3.  
wish, vōtum, i, n.; vōluntas, ūtis, f.; *according to one's wish*, ex sententia.  
wish, to, vōlo, vōlui, velle; opto, avi, atum, i; cūpio, ivi and ii, itum, 3.  
with, cum, prep. (gov. abl.).  
withdraw, to, (intrans.) discedo (secēdo), cessi, cessum, 3; (trans.) detrahō, xi, ctum, 3.  
within, intra, prep. (gov. acc.).



## WITHOUT.

without, sine, *prep.* (gov. *abl.*); = outside of, extra, *prep.* (gov. *acc.*).

withstand, to, sustineo, ui, tentum, 2.

witness, testis, is, c.

witness, to call to, testor, atus sum, 1.

wittingly, sciens, tis, prudens, tis (see St. L. G. § 143).

woe is (me), ah, *interj.* (with *acc.*); hei, *interj.* (with *dat.*).

wolf, lūpus, i, m.; lūpa, ac, f. (the wolf).

woman, mūlier, ēris, f.

wonder, admiratio, ōnis, f.

wonder, to, miror (admiror), atus sum, 1.

wont, to be, solleo, litus sum, 2; consueco, ēvi, ctum, 3.

wood, lignum, i, n.

wood, a, silva, ac, f.

wooden, made of wood, ligneus, a, um.

word, verbum, i, n.; vox, vōcis, f.; dictum, i, n. = a promise, promissum, i, n.; fides, ēi, f.

work, labor, ōris, m.; nēgō-tum, i, n.

## WRONG, TO.

work, to, labōro, āvi, ctum, 1; oporor, atus sum, 1.

workman, artifex, icis, m.

workmanship, opus, ēris, n.

workshop, fabrica, ac, f.

world, mundus, i, m.; orbis, is, m. terrarum.

worship, to, cōto, ul, ultum, 3; vānēor, atus sum, 1.

worst, pessimus, a, um; all the worst characters, pessimus quisque.

worth, prētium, i, n.

worthless, vilis, e; nē-quam, indecl.; comp. nēquior; sup. nēquissimus.

worthy, dignus, a, um (gov. *abl.*).

wound, to, vulnēro, āvi, ctum, 1.

wounded, sauciūs, a, um.

wreck, to, frango, frēgi, fractum, 3.

write, vō, scribo, psi, ptum, 3; perscribo, to write a full account.

wrong, (adj.) mātus, a, um; (subs.) injūria, ac, f.

wrong, to, nōceo, ul, 2 (with *dat.*); laedo, si, sum, 3 (with *acc.*).

## ZEALOUSLY.

## X

Xerxes, Xerxes, is, m.

## Y

year, annus, i, m.

yet, adhuc, adv. = nevertheless, tamen, adv.

yield, to, cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.

York, Ēborācum, i, n.

you, tu, tui; plur. vos, vesiri, pron.

young, jāvēnis, is (comp. jūnior); adolescens, tis, m.; young men, jāventus, tūtis, f.

use the sing.

your, tuus, a, um (of one person); vester, ra, rum (of more than one).

youth, jāvēnis, is, m.; adole-scent, entis, m.

## Z

Zama, Zāma, ac, f.

zeal, stādium, i, n.

zealous, stādious, a, um; strenuus, a, um; ācer, or acris, etc.

zealously, stādious, adv.

LY.

e, is, m.

m.

= never-

, cessal, ces-

m. i, n.

plur. vor,

, is (comp)

is, tis, m. ;

tus, tūlis, f.

um (of one

ra, rumi (of

is, m. ; holo

, f.

, n.

us, a. um :

cer, or acle

uōē, aī.

